

SPOKEN AND WRITTEN HINDI

PREFACE

This book is intended for those beginning the study of Hindi.

Hindi is the major language of the states of Bihar, Madhya Pradesh, Panjab, Rajasthan and Uttar Pradesh. According to the census of 1961, out of a population of approximately 440,000,000 for the whole of India, about 130,000,000 have indicated Hindi as their native language, and close to another 9,000,000 have indicated Hindi as a second language.

Hindi is similar to Urdu, another language spoken in India. The two languages differ in writing system, Urdu using the Arabic script, and Hindi using the Devanagari script. They also differ in their inclinations for borrowing learned words, Urdu borrowing more from Persian and Arabic, and Hindi borrowing more from Sanskrit. In their basic structure, however, the languages are essentially identical, and hence their spoken forms, if not too literary, are mutually intelligible. According to the 1961 census, almost 25,000,000 listed Urdu as their native language.

Hindi belongs to a group of related languages in north India usually called the Indo-Aryan languages. Besides Hindi, this group includes Assamese, Bengali, Oriya, Marathi, Gujarati, Rajasthani, Panjabi, Kashmiri, and Sindhi, as well as Sinhalese, which is spoken in Ceylon. This group of languages is a subgroup of the Indo-European family of languages, which means that Hindi is ultimately related to such languages as English and Russian. The relationship is, however, too distant to aid the student in learning Hindi. In addition to the languages mentioned above, there are four major languages spoken in south India: Telugu, Tamil, Malayalam, and Kannada. These are members of a language family called Dravidian and are unrelated to the Indo-Aryan languages.

The text is composed of twenty-four lessons plus six review lessons. Each lesson is composed of three sections: conversation, grammar, and drills. The conversation should be drilled until it can be said at normal speed and with a pronunciation that is acceptable to a native speaker of Hindi. Each lesson introduces from thirty to forty new vocabulary items, enough to give the student practice in familiarizing himself with new forms, but not so many that vocabulary learning becomes a burden. The grammar of each lesson presents the forms and syntax of the material in the conversational

section. It is meant to enable the student to make the analogies that are necessary in order to construct new sentences in Hindi, and should be read and studied not as an end in itself but as the means for making these analogies. The drill section requires the student to construct new sentences on the analogy of those he has learned in the conversational section. This practice will develop fluency in the manipulation of the forms and syntax of Hindi within the vocabulary introduced in the text.

The main body of the text is preceded by a section on pronunciation. It is recommended that the student start immediately with Lesson I rather than with the pronunciation section. During the course of studying the first six lessons, he should spend five to ten minutes per day going over the words in the pronunciation section in order to overcome particular difficulties that he may have.

In the early lessons, all the Hindi material is presented in a phonemic transcription. The student is not expected to learn to write this transcription. Since all the work is to be done orally, the transcription is meant to give the student something to look at which will draw his attention to distinctions in the spoken language that he might otherwise overlook. Beginning with Lesson V, the Hindi writing system is gradually introduced. Once the script is introduced the student should spend a few minutes per day practicing writing, and the drill sections will give him some practice at reading the script. In Lessons IX, X, XI, and XII, the texts of all the conversational sections are presented in Hindi script at the rate of three texts per lesson. From Lesson XIII on, all new material is presented in the Hindi script, and the student should be prepared to do all his reading and writing in this script. All work should be done orally only, and the student should not be required to do any writing until he has learned the Hindi script, that is, until after Lesson XII. From then on most of the time should still be devoted to oral work, but part of the time should be spent on reading and writing the Hindi script. It is recommended that, after doing all the exercises of a particular lesson orally, one or two of the exercises be assigned for writing practice.

An appendix gives the inflected forms of Hindi for ready reference. Following this there is a Hindi-English and an English-Hindi glossary of the words that occur in the text. The Hindi is presented only in Hindi script, since presumably the glossary will be more useful and necessary in the latter part of the course than in the earlier part.

The text has been used in mimeographed form for the last three years by our students at Cornell, and our thanks are due to them for helping to suggest improvements and corrections which have been incorporated into this version. We owe special thanks to Mrs. Ruth Sønderhausen for typing the English parts of the text for photographing.

G. H. Fairbanks
B. G. Misra

Ithaca, New York
October, 1965

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface	v
Pronunciation	xxv
Lesson I	1
Conversation	1
Grammar	3
1. Article	3
2. Word Order	3
3. Interrogative Particle, <u>kyaa</u> , "what"	3
4. Postpositions	4
Exercises	4
Lesson II	7
Conversation	7
Grammar	8
1. Personal Pronouns	8
2. Demonstratives	9
3. Verbs	9
3.1 Verb <u>hoonaa</u> , "to be"	9
3.2 Infinitive and Verb Stem	10
3.3 Imperfect Form	10
3.4 Present Imperfect	10
4. Postpositions	11
Exercises	11
Lesson III	15
Conversation	15
Grammar	17
1. Nouns	17

1.1 Gender of Nouns	17
1.2 Plural of Nouns	18
2. New Verbs	18
3. Verb <u>hoonaa</u> , "to be"	19
4. Imperatives	19
5. Adjectives	20
Exercises	21
Lesson IV	26
Conversation	26
Grammar	28
1. New Nouns	28
2. New Verbs	29
3. <u>caahiye</u> , "to want"	30
4. Compound Verbs	30
4.1 Verbal Compounds	30
4.2 Nonverbal Compound Verbs	31
5. Postposition <u>kaa</u> , "of"	31
6. Emphatic Particle <u>hi</u>	32
7. Numerals	32
Exercises	33
Review I	37
Lesson V	48
Conversation	48
Grammar	50
1. New Nouns	50
2. New Verbs	50
2.1 New Compound Verbs	50

3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	50
4. Oblique Case	50
4.1 Use of Cases	52
5. Verb <u>saknaa</u> , "to be able"	52
6. <u>kyaa</u>	52
7. Writing System	53
Exercises	53
Lesson VI	58
Conversation	58
Grammar	61
1. New Nouns	61
2. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	61
3. New Postpositions	61
4. Pronouns	61
4.1 Person Pronouns	61
4.2 Interrogative Pronoun <u>kaun</u> , "who"	62
5. Indefinite Adjectives <u>kooi</u> , <u>kuch</u>	62
6. Use of Dative Case and Postposition <u>ko</u> , "to, for"	63
7. Use of Oblique Case of Pronouns	64
8. Oblique Case of Adjectives	64
9. Demonstrative Adjectives	65
10. Emphatic Particles <u>hi</u> and <u>bhi</u>	66
11. Writing System	66
Exercises	67
Lesson VII	72
Conversation	72
Grammar	74

1. New Nouns	74
2. New Verbs	74
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	75
4. Pronominal Adjectives	75
5. Postpositions	75
6. Optative	77
7. Future Tense	78
8. Telling Time	79
9. Use of <u>na</u>	79
10. Interrogative <u>kaun</u>	80
11. Writing System	80
Exercises	81
Lesson VIII	87
Conversation	87
Grammar	89
1. New Nouns	89
2. New Verbs	89
2.1 New Compound Verbs	89
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	90
4. New Postpositions	90
5. Present Progressive	90
6. Infinitive	91
7. The Verb <u>milnaa</u>	92
8. "To have work"	92
9. Emphatic Forms with <u>hii</u>	92
10. Polite Forms	93
11. Use of <u>apnaa</u>	93

12. Use of Oblique	94
13. Writing System	94
13.1 Vowels	94
13.2 Nasalization	95
13.3 Consonant Clusters	95
Exercises	96
Review II	101
Lesson IX	109
Conversation	109
Grammar	111
1. New Nouns	111
2. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	112
3. Vocabulary Notes	112
3.1 Brother and Sister	112
3.2 Mother and Father	112
3.3 Husband and Wife	113
3.4 Family	113
3.5 Greeting	113
3.6 Leave-taking	113
3.7 <u>jii</u>	113
4. The Verb "to have"	114
5. <u>caahiye</u>	114
6. Writing System	115
6.1 The Consonant <u>r</u>	115
6.2 Consonant Combinations	116
6.3 Initial <u>s</u> Plus Consonant	117
6.4 Nasal Consonant Plus a Consonant	117

6.5 The Combination <u>-iyee</u>	117
6.6 The Demonstratives <u>yee</u> , <u>woo</u>	118
6.7 Irregular Spellings	118
6.8 Hindi Numerals	118
Exercises	118
Lesson X	126
Conversation	126
Grammar	128
1. New Nouns	128
2. New Compound Verbs	128
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	129
4. Vocabulary Notes	129
4.1 <u>DaakTar</u>	129
4.2 <u>dawaaxaanaa</u>	129
4.3 Time Expressions	129
5. Optative	129
6. Verb "to have"	130
7. "Since" or "for"	131
8. Writing System	131
8.1 Consonant Combinations	131
8.2 Irregular Spellings	132
Exercises	132
Lesson XI	139
Conversation	139
Grammar	143
1. New Nouns	143
2. New Verbs	143

2.1 New Compound Verbs	143
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	143
4. New Postpositions	143
5. Negative	143
6. Use of Optative	145
7. The Verb "to try"	145
8. "Whether ... or not"	146
9. Direct Object	146
10. <u>tiisree pahar</u>	146
11. Writing System	147
11.1 New Consonant Combinations	147
11.2 Special Consonant Combinations	147
11.3 Irregular Spellings	147
Exercises	147
Lesson XII	155
Conversation	155
Grammar	159
1. New Nouns	159
2. New Verbs	159
2.1 New Compound Verbs	159
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	159
4. Verb <u>rahnaa</u>	159
5. Emphatic Forms	160
6. Relative Pronoun	160
7. Repetition	162
8. Postposition <u>see</u>	162
9. Postposition <u>mēē</u>	163

10. Comparative	163
11. Writing System	164
11.1 Consonant Combinations	164
11.2 Irregular Spellings	164
11.3 New Symbol	164
Exercises	165
Review III	173
Lesson XIII	184
Conversation	184
Grammar	188
1. New Nouns	188
2. New Verbs	188
2.1 New Compound Verbs	188
3. New Postpositions	188
4. Numerical Fractions	188
5. Terms of Address	189
6. पढ़ना	190
7. इंतज़ार करना	191
8. Infinitive	191
9. Conditional Sentence	192
10. Writing System	193
10.1 Consonant Combinations	193
10.2 New Consonant Combinations	193
10.3 Irregular Spellings	193
10.4 Postpositions	193
Exercises	194
Lesson XIV	200

Conversation	200
Grammar	203
1. New Nouns	203
2. New Verbs	203
2.1 New Compound Verbs	204
3. New Postpositions	204
4. Form of the Perfect	204
5. Perfect Tense	205
6. Present Perfect Tense	206
7. Simple Past of the Verb होना "to be"	206
8. "To be to," "to be supposed to"	207
9. मालूम	209
10. इरादा	209
11. "Four or five"	209
12. और	210
13. प्रतीक्षा करना	210
14. Writing System	211
14.1 Consonant Combinations	211
14.2 Irregular Spellings	211
Exercises	211
Lesson XV	218
Conversation	218
Grammar	221
1. New Nouns	221
2. New Verbs	222
2.1 New Compound Verbs	222
3. New Adjectives in -aa	222

4. Past Imperfect Tense	222
5. Causative Verbs	223
6. Ordinal Numerals	225
7. विचार	226
8. जानकारी	227
9. "Must"	227
10. Agreement	227
11. Superlative Construction	228
12. लोग	228
13. Writing System	229
13.1 Irregular Spellings	229
Exercises	229
Lesson XVI	236
Conversation	236
Grammar	240
1. New Nouns	240
2. New Verbs	240
2.1 New Compound Verbs	241
3. Past Perfect Tense	241
4. Past Progressive Tense	242
5. Verb Review	242
6. "When" Clause	243
7. वाला	244
8. पाना	246
9. "To rain"	247
10. से	247
11. Irregular Spellings	247

Exercises	247
Review IV	254
Lesson XVII	265
Conversation	265
Grammar	269
1. New Nouns	269
2. New Verbs	269
2.1 New Compound Verbs	269
3. ने Construction	269
4. वाला	272
5. इच्छा	272
Exercises	273
Lesson XVIII	279
Conversation	279
Grammar	282
1. New Nouns	282
2. New Verbs	283
2.1 New Compound Verbs	283
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	283
4. Compound Verbs	283
5. शायद	285
6. "Since"	286
Exercises	286
Lesson XIX	293
Conversation	293
Grammar	297
1. New Nouns	297

2. New Verbs	298
2.1 New Compound Verbs	298
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	298
4. Compound Verbs	298
5. Time Expressions	300
6. "Necessity"	301
7. "Thing"	302
Exercises	302
Lesson XX	310
Conversation	310
Grammar	314
1. New Nouns	314
2. New Verbs	315
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	315
4. Compound Postpositions	315
5. Seasons	315
6. "To keep on"	316
7. "As ... as"	317
8. Time Expressions	318
Exercises	319
Review V	325
Lesson XXI	335
Conversation	335
Grammar	337
1. New Nouns	337
2. New Verbs	337
2.1 New Compound Verbs	338

3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	338
4. Passive	338
5. Past Participle	342
6. होली	343
7. मुहूर्त	343
Exercises	344
Lesson XXII	349
Conversation	349
Grammar	352
1. New Nouns	352
2. New Verbs	353
2.1 New Compound Verbs	353
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	353
4. Perfect Participle	354
5. "Oneself"	355
6. "Not only ... but also"	356
7. Color Terms	356
8. "To enjoy"	357
Exercises	358
Lesson XXIII	365
Conversation	365
Grammar	371
1. New Nouns	371
2. New Verbs	371
3. New Adjectives in <u>-aa</u>	371
4. Causative Verbs	372
4.1 Forms of Causatives	372

4.2 Use of Causatives	375
4.3 Compound Causatives	381
5. चुकना	381
6. अधिक	382
7. "Near" and "far"	383
8. विश्वास	383
9. उचित	384
10. सलाह	384
11. "To hire, to rent"	385
Exercises	385
Lesson XXIV	392
Conversation	392
Grammar	397
1. New Nouns	397
2. New Verbs	398
2.1 New Compound Verbs	398
3. Future	399
4. Vocabulary	400
4.1 विश्वविद्यालय	400
4.2 ज़ाम and ख़ास	400
5. Adjective Formation	401
6. Verbs with होना	401
7. Professional Names	402
8. Abbreviations	403
Exercises	405
Review VI	412
Appendix	423

Vocabulary	432
Hindi-English	433
English-Hindi	451

PRONUNCIATION

Vowels

There are 10 vowels in Hindi which are represented in this text by the following transcription: a aa i ii u uu ee oo ai au.

1. The vowel a is a mid, central, unrounded vowel, similar to the u in English but:

ab	now
kab	when
das	ten
bas	bus
taraf	to
darjan	dozen

There is one consistent exception to this pronunciation, namely, when a is followed by h plus another consonant, then it is pronounced like e in English bet.

kahnaa	to say
rahnaa	to stay, live

2. The vowel aa is a low, central, unrounded vowel, similar to the a in English father:

kaa	of
naam	name
kyaa	what
jaanaa	to go
daam	price

3. The vowel i is a rather high, front, unrounded vowel, similar to the i in English bit:

mil	get
kitnaa	how much
likhnaa	to write

4. The vowel ii is a high, front, unrounded vowel, similar to the ee in English meet, but without the off-glide that occurs in English.

miil	mile
kii	of
tiin	three
xariidnaa	to buy
kamiiz	shirt
jaldii	soon

5. The vowel u is a rather high, back, rounded vowel, similar to the u in English put:

tum	you
dukaan	shop
ruknaa	to stop
sunnaa	to hear

6. The vowel uu is a high, back, rounded vowel, similar to the oo in boot but without the off-glide that occurs in English.

duur	far
naagpuur	Nagpur
mašhuur	famous

7. The vowel ee is a high-mid, front, unrounded vowel, similar to the ai in English bait but without the final off-glide:

kee	of
leenaa	to take
leetee	take!
santaree	oranges
yee	this, these
aaiyee	come!

8. The vowel oo is a high-mid, back, rounded vowel, similar to the oa in English boat but without the final off-glide:

doo	two
karoo	do!
jaaoo	go!
hooTal	hotel
woo	this
hooanaa	to be
moozaa	sock

9. The vowel ai is a low, front, unrounded vowel, similar to the a in English bat. This is the pronunciation of the western Hindi-speaking area. In other areas it may have a diphthongal pronunciation approaching the pronunciation of the i in English bite. Imitate your teacher.

hai	is
chai	six
kaisaa	how
paisaa	pice

10. The vowel au is a low, back, rounded vowel in the

western Hindi-speaking area like the ou in English bought. In the eastern area it may have a diphthongal pronunciation approaching that of the ow of English now. Imitate your teacher.

nau	nine
kaun	who, which
aur	and
sau	hundred

11. The above vowels may be subdivided into two groups, one group of long vowels (each represented by two letters), aa ii uu ee oo ai au, and one group of short vowels (each represented by one letter), a i u. The long vowels may all occur with nasalization, represented by writing a tilde (~) over the vowel.

11.1 Of these nasalized vowels, while ee is similar to the ai of English bait, the ēē is more similar to the e of English bet, but with nasalization.

mēē	in
dukaanēē	shops
basēē	buses
kamiizēē	shirts
jaaēē	may go
karēē	may do

11.2 The other nasalized vowels are pronounced as they are when not nasalized but with nasalization.

āā	jii hāā	yes
	yahāā	there
	kahāā	where
	pāāc	five
	patniyāā	wives
īī	daaīī	right
	jaatīī	go
	wahīī	right there
	yahīī	right here
	nahīī	not
ūū	hūū	am
	jaaūū	I may go
	karūū	I may do
	dūūgaa	I will give
ōō	hooTalōō	hotels (oblique)
	dukaanōō	shops (oblique)
	santarōō	oranges (oblique)
	doonōō	both

5. The vowel u is a rather high, back, rounded vowel, similar to the u in English put:

tum	you
dukaan	shop
ruknaa	to stop
sunnaa	to hear

6. The vowel uu is a high, back, rounded vowel, similar to the oo in boot but without the off-glide that occurs in English.

duur	far
naagpuur	Nagpur
mašhuur	famous

7. The vowel ee is a high-mid, front, unrounded vowel, similar to the ai in English bait but without the final off-glide:

kee	of
leenaa	to take
leetee	take!
santaree	oranges
yee	this, these
aaiyee	come!

8. The vowel oo is a high-mid, back, rounded vowel, similar to the oa in English boat but without the final off-glide:

doo	two
karoo	do!
jaaoo	go!
hooTal	hotel
woo	this
hooanaa	to be
moozaa	sock

9. The vowel ai is a low, front, unrounded vowel, similar to the a in English bat. This is the pronunciation of the western Hindi-speaking area. In other areas it may have a diphthongal pronunciation approaching the pronunciation of the i in English bite. Imitate your teacher.

hai	is
chai	six
kaisaa	how
paisaa	pice

10. The vowel au is a low, back, rounded vowel in the

western Hindi-speaking area like the ou in English bought. In the eastern area it may have a diphthongal pronunciation approaching that of the ow of English now. Imitate your teacher.

nau	nine
kaun	who, which
aur	and
sau	hundred

11. The above vowels may be subdivided into two groups, one group of long vowels (each represented by two letters), aa ii uu ee oo ai au, and one group of short vowels (each represented by one letter), a i u. The long vowels may all occur with nasalization, represented by writing a tilde (~) over the vowel.

11.1 Of these nasalized vowels, while ee is similar to the ai of English bait, the ēē is more similar to the e of English bet, but with nasalization.

mēē	in
dukaanēē	shops
basēē	buses
kamiizēē	shirts
jaaēē	may go
karēē	may do

11.2 The other nasalized vowels are pronounced as they are when not nasalized but with nasalization.

āā	jii hāā	yes
	yahāā	there
	kahāā	where
	pāāc	five
	patniyāā	wives
īī	daaīī	right
	jaatīī	go
	wahīī	right there
	yahīī	right here
	nahīī	not
ūū	hūū	am
	jaaūū	I may go
	karūū	I may do
	dūūgaa	I will give
ōō	hooTalōō	hotels (oblique)
	dukaanōō	shops (oblique)
	santarōō	oranges (oblique)
	doonōō	both

āi	māi hāi pāiNT	I are pants
āū	cāūtiis	thirty-four

Consonants

1. Hindi has a set of voiceless, unaspirated consonants, p t T k c, which are similar to the English p t k ch in pin, tin, kin and chin. There is one major difference: in English these consonants are pronounced with a release of breath, called aspiration, but in Hindi there is no puff of breath.

1.1 p is similar to English p in pin, but with no aspiration:

aap	you
pāāc	five
patniī	wife
paisaa	pice
par	on, at

1.2 t is similar to English t in tin, but with two differences. English t is pronounced with the tip of the tongue against the ridge behind the upper teeth, but the Hindi t is pronounced with the tongue against the upper teeth. Also there is no aspiration.

taraf	towards
tum	you
jaataa	go
tiin	three
saat	seven

1.3 T is similar to English t in tin, but with two differences. English t is pronounced as mentioned above, but in Hindi T is pronounced with the tongue-tip bent back and touching the roof of the mouth slightly farther back than in English. Also there is no aspiration in Hindi. Hindi speakers hear the English t as closer to Hindi T than to Hindi t.

hooTal	hotel
isTaap	stop
TikaT	stamp
chuuTnaa	to leave
chooTaa	small

1.4 k is similar to English k in kin, but with no aspiration:

dukaan	shop
kaun	who
kaa	of
kahāā	where
kaam	work
kamiiz	shirt

1.5 c is similar to English ch in chin, but with no aspiration:

caahnaa	to want
caar	four
caahiyeē	need
haalcaal	welfare
calnaa	to go

2. Hindi has a set of voiceless, aspirated consonants, ph th Th kh ch, parallel to the previous set, but these are all pronounced with the same aspiration that occurs in English. This means that ph kh ch are the same as p k ch in English pin, kin, chin. Hindi th, like t, is pronounced with the tongue against the teeth, but with aspiration. Hindi Th, like T, is pronounced with the tongue retracted, but with aspiration.

ph	phal phir	fruit again
th	naath keesaath cauthaa thaa thooRaa	Nath (name) with fourth was little
Th	miiThee aaTh Thahrnaa Thiik aThaaraa	sweet eight to wait good eighteen
kh	deekh likh khaa khulaa siikh	see write eat open learn
ch	chai kuch chuuTnaa chooTaa pichlaa	six something to leave small last

3. Hindi has a set of voiced, unaspirated stops paralleling the two previous sets, b d D j g. Of these b j and g are pronounced like English b j and g in bet, jet and get. The d is pronounced like English d in do, but with the tongue tip against the upper teeth, and D is pronounced with the tongue tip farther back in the mouth than for English d

b	bas ab sab baahar baaraa	bus now all outside twelve
d	deenaa deekhaa dukaan daam duur	to give to see shop price far
D	kaarD maniaarDar DaakTar Diksharii ThaNdaa	card money order doctor dictionary cold
j	jaanaa kiijiyee jii bajaa darjaa	to go do! particle of respect o'clock class
g	aglaa aagraa gaa gyaaraa nagar	next Agra future particle eleven city

4. Hindi has a set of voiced, aspirated consonants paralleling the previous sets, bh dh Dh jh gh. English has nothing similar to these. They are all pronounced like the previous voiced set but with the release of breath called aspiration.

bh	abhii sabhii bhii bhaaai	right away all also brother
dh	dhoobii suvidhaa dhanyavaad andheeraa	washerman convenience thanks darkness

Dh	Dhaaai	two and a half
jh	mujhee samajhnaa samjhaa	to me to understand understood
gh	ghaNtaa ghar jaghaa ghuumnaa durghaTnaa	hour house place to walk accident

5. Hindi has a series of nasal consonants, m n N and ṅ. The m is pronounced like English m in met. The n is pronounced like English n in net, but with the tongue against the upper teeth. The N is pronounced with the tongue pulled back as for T Th D and Dh, but it is produced by a quick flap of the tongue when not followed by another consonant. The ṅ is pronounced like English ng in sing, but it is relatively rare.

m	naam ham maai daam moozaa	name we I price sock
n	naam jaanaa karnaa tiin nau	name to go to do three nine
N	ghaNtaa kaaraN ThaNdaa	hour reason cold
D	agreezii maagna	English to ask

6. Hindi has a series of semi-consonants, y r l w. The y is pronounced like y in English yet. The w is like v in English vat but with less friction, which may make it sound like English w in wet sometimes, although the back of the tongue is not retracted as in English. The r is a tongue trill unlike any sound in English. The l is like English l in let, not like English ll in all.

y	yee yahaa aayaa	this here came
---	-----------------------	----------------------

	deekhiyee	see!
	nayaa	new
r	taraf	towards
	duur	far
	baaraa	twelve
	rooz	day
	par	on
l	leenaa	to take
	phal	fruit
	miil	mile
	xaalii	vacant
	laanaa	to bring
w	woo	he
	wahāā	there
	waxt	time
	pariwaar	family
	dawaa	medicine

7. Hindi has two sibilant sounds, s and ṣ. The s is pronounced like English s in sin, and the ṣ like English sh in shin.

s	see	from
	kaisaa	how
	das	ten
	saahab	sir
	saknaa	to be able
ṣ	maṣhuur	famous
	isTeeṣan	station
	ṣaam	evening
	aaṣaa	hope
	kooṣiṣ	attempt

8. Hindi has three spirants, f, z and x. The f is pronounced like English f in fat and the z like English z in zinc. The x is pronounced like the German ch in ach or Scottish ch in loch. It does not occur in English. These sounds occur mainly in words borrowed from English, Persian and Arabic, and many speakers of Hindi substitute ph for f, j for z, and kh for x in these words.

f	lifaafaa	envelope
	afsoos	sorrow
	daftar	office
	Teeliifoon	telephone
	haftaa	week
z	bazaar	bazaar

	moozaa	sock
	kamiiz	shirt
	rooz	day
	zaruur	certain
x	xariidnaa	to buy
	xaalii	vacant
	buxaar	fever
	kuṣii	pleasure

9. Hindi has a glottal spirant, h, pronounced like English h in hat.

h	kaḥāā	where
	hooṭal	hotel
	paḥlaa	first
	caahnaa	to want
	caahiyee	need

10. Hindi has two types of flaps, represented by R and Rh, unlike anything that occurs in English. The R is produced by a flap of the tongue against the roof of the mouth touching the same position that is used in pronouncing T, Th, D and Dh. The Rh is pronounced the same way but with the release of breath called aspiration.

R	kapRaa	cloth
	baRaa	big
	thooRaa	little
	gaaRii	train
	khiRkii	window
	laRkaa	boy
Rh	paRhnaa	to read
	paRhaa	read
	saaRhee	plus one half
	DeeRh	one and a half
	paRhaaii	study

Exercises in contrast

1. Hindi has a series of voiceless, unaspirated consonants p, t, T, k, c, which contrast with a series of voiceless, aspirated consonants, ph, th, Th, kh, ch. Remember not to aspirate the first series.

p	ph	par	on	phal	fruit
t	th	tiin	three	thii	was
		jaataa	go	cauthaa	fourth

		saat	seven	saath	along
T	Th	TikaT chooTaa chuuT	stamp small leave	Thiik miiThaa aaTh	fine sweet eight
k	kh	kaa tak dukaan	of until shop	khaa siikh deekhaa	eat learn saw
c	ch	caar bacnaa caahaa	four to be saved wanted	chai pichlaa chooTaa	six last small

2. Hindi has a series of voiced, unaspirated consonants, b d D g j R, which contrast with a series of voiced, aspirated consonants, bh dh Dh gh jh Rh. Imitate your teacher to get the aspirated consonants right.

b	bh	ab baaraa beecnaa	now twelve to buy	abhi bhaai bheejnaa	rightaway brother to send
d	dh	doo andar dukaandaar	two in shopkeeper	dhoobii andheeraa suwidhaa	washer darkness convenience
D	Dh	DaakTar	doctor	Dhaaii	two and a half
g	gh	gaa nagar guru	future particle city teacher	ghar jaghaa ghuumnaa	house place to walk
j	jh	darjaa bajaa aaj	class o'clock today	samjhaa mujhee samajh	understood to me understand
R	Rh	paRaa paRnaa gaaRii	had to to have to train	paRhaa paRhnaa saaRhee	read to read plus one half

3. Hindi has a series of dental consonants pronounced with the tongue touching the upper teeth, t th d dh n, which contrast with a retroflex series pronounced with the tip of the tongue bent back and touching the roof of the mouth, T Th D Dh N. Remember to put your tongue against the upper teeth for the first series.

t	T	hootaa tak saat	be until seven	hooTal TikaT chuuT	hotel stamp leave
th	Th	saath thii cauthaa	along was fourth	aaTh Thiik miiThaa	eight fine sweet
d	D	daam andar baad	price in after	DaakTar ThaNDaa rooD	doctor cold road
dh	Dh	dhoobii	washer	Dhaaii	two and a half
n	N	andar jaantaa moohan	in know Mohan	ThaNDaa ghaNTaa kaaraN	cold hour reason

LESSON I

Conversation -- Asking Directions

JOHN

suniyee	please listen
māi	I
hooTal	hotel
janaa	to go
caahtaa hūū	(I) want
hūū	(I) am
suniyee, māi hooTal jaanaa caahtaa hūū.	Pardon me, I want to go to a hotel.
kahāā	where
hai	is
hooTal kahāā hai?	Where is the hotel?

RAM NATH

aap	you (polite)
yahāā	here
see	from
siidhee	straight
jaaiyee	please go
aap yahāā see siidhee jaaiyee,	Go straight ahead from here,
aur	and
phir	then
daaif	right
taraf	direction
daaif taraf	to the right

aur phir daaif taraf. and then to the right.
 wahif there (emphatic)
 eek one
 wahif eek hooTal hai. There is a hotel there.

JOHN

kaa of
 naam name
 kyaa what
 hooTal kaa naam kyaa hai? What's the name of the hotel?

RAM NATH

ajmeerii hooTal Ajmer Hotel
 hooTal kaa naam ajmeerii hooTal hai. The hotel's name is Ajmer Hotel.

JOHN

kyaa (interrogative particle)
 yee this
 acchaa good
 kyaa yee hooTal acchaa hai? Is it a good hotel?

RAM NATH

jii hää yes
 bahut very
 mašhuur famous
 jii hää, yee hooTal bahut mašhuur hai. Yes, sir, it's a very famous hotel.

JOHN

dhanyawaad thanks
 bahut acchaa, dhanyawaad. Very well, thanks.

GRAMMAR

1. Article

Hindi has no equivalent of the English definite article "the."

hooTal kahää hai? Where is the hotel?
 hooTal kaa naam kyaa hai? What is the name of the hotel?

Normally Hindi does not make use of any equivalent of the English indefinite article "a" or "an," although occasionally the Hindi numeral eek, "one," is used this way.

māi hooTal jaanaa caahtaa hū. I want to go to a hotel.
 wahif eek hooTal hai. There is a hotel there.

2. Word Order

In Hindi the verb or the verbal phrase usually occurs at the end of the construction to which it belongs.

hooTal kahää hai? Where is the hotel?
 māi hooTal jaanaa caahtaa hū. I want to go to the hotel.

An interrogative word such as "who," "where," "why," or "what" will occur immediately before the verbal phrase.

hooTal kahää hai? Where is the hotel?
 hooTal kaa naam kyaa hai? What is the name of the hotel?

3. Interrogative Particle, kyaa, "what"

The Hindi form kyaa, "what," has two different usages.

It may be the equivalent of the English interrogative particle "what," in which case it occurs immediately before the verbal phrase:

hooTal kaa naam kyaa hai? What is the name of the hotel?

It is also used as an interrogative particle where a sentence has no other interrogative word to indicate that it is interrogative. Such sentences are the equivalent of English interrogative sentences that have no interrogative word in them. In this usage, the form kyaa will occur at the beginning of the sentence.

kyaa yee hooTal acchaa Is this hotel a good one?
hai?

4. Postpositions

In English, prepositions are used with nouns or pronouns. Equivalent constructions in Hindi are expressed by postpositions with nouns or pronouns. The Hindi forms are called postpositions because they occur after the noun or pronoun instead of before, as in English. The postpositions you have had so far are the following:

see	from	yahāā see	from here
kaa	of	hooTal kaa naam	the name of the hotel

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. māī _____ jaanaa caahtaa hūū.

hotel	to the right
famous hotel	straight ahead
there	where

2. _____ kahāā hai?

hotel	Ajmer Hotel
famous hotel	this hotel
good hotel	

3. aap _____ see siidhee jaaiyee.

here	hotel
there	Ajmer Hotel

4. _____ kaa naam kyaa hai?

hotel	
famous hotel	

5. wahīī eek _____ hai.

hotel	good hotel
famous hotel	good and famous hotel

6. kyaa yee hooTal _____ hai?

good	there
famous	to the right
here	straight ahead

7. yee hooTal _____ hai.

famous	here
good	there
very good	to the right
very famous	straight ahead

8. yee hooTal bahut _____ hai.

famous	good and famous
good	famous and good

B. Transform the following sentences into interrogative sentences according to the model given:

yee hooTal acchaa hai kyaa yee hooTal acchaa hai?

1. yee hooTal bahut acchaa hai.
2. yee hooTal bahut mašhuur hai.
3. yee hooTal acchaa aur mašhuur hai.
4. yee hooTal mašhuur hai.
5. yee hooTal yahāā hai.
6. yee hooTal wahīī hai.

7. yee hooTal daafi taraf hai.
 8. yee hooTal siidhee hai.
 C. Say in Hindi:
 1. Pardon me, I want to go to a hotel.
 2. Where is a hotel?
 3. Go to the right from here.
 4. And then go straight ahead.
 5. There is a good hotel there.
 6. Is this a good hotel?
 7. Yes, it's a good hotel.
 8. What's the name of the hotel?
 9. The hotel's name is Ajmer Hotel.
 10. Is Ajmer Hotel a good hotel?
 11. Yes, it is a very good and well-known hotel.
 12. Very well, thanks.

LESSON II

Conversation -- Asking for a Fruit Store

JOHN

kuch	some
phal	fruit
xariidnaa	to buy
suniyee, māfi kuch phal xariidnaa caahṭaa hūū	Pardon me, I want to buy some fruit
kii	of
dukaan	store, shop
phal kii dukaan kahāā hai? Where's a fruit store?	

RAM LAL

bazaar	bazaar
sadar bazaar	Sadar Bazaar
mēē	in
sadar bazaar mēē.	In the Sadar Bazaar.

JOHN

woo	he, she, it
kitnii	how much
duur	far
woo yahāā see kitnii duur hai?	How far is it from here?

RAM LAL

nahīi	not
bahut duur nahīi.	Not very far.
miil	mile
eek miil hai.	It is one mile.

paidal	on foot
caahtee hāī	(you) want
hāī	are
kyaa aap paidal jaanaa caahtee hāī?	Do you want to go on foot?

JOHN

jii nahīī	no
bas	bus
see	by
jii nahīī, bas see.	No, by bus.
miltii	(is) available
bas kahāā miltii hai?	Where do I get a bus?
RAM LAL	
aap yahāā see siidhee jaaiyee.	Go straight ahead from here.
baaīī	left
aur phir baaīī taraf.	And then to the left.
bas-isTaap	bus stop
wahīī bas-isTaap hai.	There's a bus stop there.

JOHN

bahut acchaa, dhanyawaad O.K., thanks.

GRAMMAR

1. Personal Pronouns

Hindi has the following personal pronouns:

	Singular	Plural
1st Per.	māī I	ham we
2nd Per.	- -	tum, aap you

	Singular	Plural
3rd Per.	woo he, she, it	wee they

The pronoun aap, "you," is a polite or honorific form and should be used under most conditions. The form tum, "you," implies either that you are extremely well acquainted with the person you are talking to or that you are assigning him a lower status. Note that tum, "you," and aap, "you," may be used when speaking to one person or more than one.

2. Demonstratives

Hindi has the following demonstratives:

	Singular	Plural
yee	this	yee these
woo	that	wee those

As in English, these demonstratives may be used either as pronouns (i.e., without a following dependent noun) or as adjectives (i.e., with a following dependent noun).

yee hooTal acchaa hai.	This hotel is a good one.
yee kyaa hai?	What is this?
woo kyaa hai?	What is that?

3. Verbs

3.1. Verb hoonaa, "to be"

The verb hoonaa, "to be," in Hindi has the following simple present forms. These may be used as a main verb or as an auxiliary verb:

	Singular	Plural
1st Per.	hūū	hāī
2nd Per.	-	hoo
3rd Per.	hai	hāī

For this verb, as for all others, the form listed as second person is always to be understood as the verb form to be used with the pronoun tum, "you"; this form is always in the second person plural. The form

used with the pronoun aap, "you," is always in the 3rd person plural, regardless of whether tum or aap refers to one person or more than one.

3.2. Infinitive and Verb Stem

Hindi verbs have an infinitive form which always ends in -naa. The form obtained by dropping this ending from the infinitive form will be referred to as the verb stem. The infinitives and stems of the verbs that you have met so far are:

Infinitive		Verb Stem
hoonaa	to be	hoo
jaanaa	to go	jaa
caahnaa	to want	caah
sunnaa	to listen, hear	sun
xariidnaa	to buy	xariid
milnaa	to be available, get	mil

The infinitive is used with any inflected form of the verb caahnaa, "to want," and other similar verbs, as in English. Note that the infinitive precedes the inflected verb, whereas in English it follows.

māī bas see jaanaa I want to go by a bus.
caahtaa hūū

3.3. Imperfect Form

Hindi has an imperfect form that is formed by adding -taa to the verb stem. This form is inflected for gender (masculine and feminine) and for number (singular and plural).

Masc. Sg.	caahtaa	jaataa	hootaa
Masc. Pl.	caahtee	jaatee	hootee
Fem. Sg.	caahtii	jaatii	hootii
Fem. Pl.	caahṭīī	jaatīī	hootīī

3.4. Present Imperfect

In Hindi the present imperfect tense of a verb is

formed by using the imperfect form of the verb, followed by the simple present tense form of the verb "to be" used as an auxiliary. Note that the auxiliary will agree with the subject in number and person whereas the imperfect form will agree with the subject in number and gender, with the special limitation that, if plural number is indicated elsewhere in the verbal phrase, the feminine form of the imperfect will not indicate plurality. The practical effect of this limitation is that for the present imperfect tense forms, the form caahṭīī is never used but, where the agreement is feminine, whether singular or plural, only caahṭīī is used. However, in the first person plural, i.e., with the pronoun ham, "we," some women will use the masculine plural form of the imperfect form, i.e., they will say: ham jaatee hāī, "we go," instead of ham jaatīī hāī, "we go."

māī caahtaa hūū	I (masc.) want
māī caahṭīī hūū	I (fem.) want
woo caahtaa hai	he or it wants
woo caahṭīī hai	she or it wants
ham caahṭee hāī	we (masc.) want
ham caahṭīī hāī	we (fem.) want
tum caahṭee hoo	you (familiar, masc.) want
tum caahṭīī hoo	you (familiar, fem.) want
aap caahṭee hāī	you (polite, masc.) want
aap caahṭīī hāī	you (polite, fem.) want
wee caahṭee hāī	they (masc.) want
wee caahṭīī hāī	they (fem.) want

4. Postpositions

In this lesson there is a new postposition mēē, "in" or "at," and the postposition see, which occurs in the first lesson meaning "from," occurs in this lesson meaning "by" or "by means of."

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. woo _____ see kitnii duur hai?

here store
there bus stop
hotel bazaar

2. woo yahāā see _____ hai.

far to the left
how far to the right
very far straight ahead
one mile

3. _____ yahāā see kitnii duur hai?

the store the bus stop
the fruit store that hotel
that store that bus stop
that fruit store the Sadar Bazaar
the hotel

4. wahīī eek _____ hai.

store bazaar
hotel famous store
fruit store famous bazaar
bus stop

5. _____ kahāā hai?

the store the bus stop
the fruit store the bazaar
that fruit store that bazaar
the hotel that bus stop
that hotel that store

6. māī _____ xariidnaa caahtaa hūū.

fruit that fruit
hotel that bus
bus that hotel
store that store

B. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

kyaa aap paidal jaanaa māī paidal jaanaa
caahtee hāī? caahtaa hūū

1. kyaa aap phal xariidnaa caahtee hāī?

2. kyaa aap kuch phal xariidnaa caahtee hāī?

3. kyaa aap hooTal jaatee hāī?

4. kyaa aap baāīī taraf jaanaa caahtee hāī?

5. kyaa aap siidhee jaanaa caahtii hāī?

6. kyaa aap kuch phal xariidtee hāī?

7. kyaa aap sadar bazaar jaatee hāī?

8. kyaa aap daāīī taraf jaanaa caahtee hāī?

C. Translate orally:

1. I (masc.) want to go to the bazaar.

2. They (fem.) want to go to the bazaar.

3. You (masc., polite) want to go to the bazaar.

4. She wants to go to the bazaar.

5. We (masc.) want to go to the bazaar.

6. You (fem., familiar) want to go to the bazaar.

7. They (masc.) want to go to the bazaar.

8. You (fem., polite) want to go to the bazaar.

9. I (fem.) want to go to the bazaar.

10. He wants to go to the bazaar.

11. You (masc., familiar) want to go to the bazaar.
 12. We (fem.) want to go to the bazaar.
- D. Translate orally:
1. Pardon me, I want to buy some fruit.
 2. Where is a fruit store?
 3. It's in the Sadar Bazaar.
 4. How far is the Sadar Bazaar from here?
 5. It is not very far.
 6. It is one mile from here.
 7. Go straight ahead from here.
 8. And then go to the right.
 9. The Sadar Bazaar is right there.
10. I want to go to the Ajmer Hotel.
 11. Where is it?
 12. It is in the Sadar Bazaar.
 13. How far is the Sadar Bazaar from here?
 14. It's far from here.
 15. Go straight ahead from here.
 16. And then to the left.
 17. There is a bus stop over there.
 18. It's one mile from the bus stop.
 19. Go by bus from there.
 20. Very well, thanks.

LESSON III

Conversation -- Buying Fruit

JOHN

sunoo	listen
tumhaaree	your
paas	with, near
sunoo, kyaa tumhaaree paas phal hāi?	Excuse me. Have you (some) fruit?

STOREKEEPER

koo	to
kaun	which
see	sort of, kind of
caahiye	are wanted, are needed
jii hāā, aap koo kaun see phal caahiye?	Yes, sir, what kind of fruit do you want?

JOHN

santaree	oranges
leenaa	to take
māi kuch santaree leenaa caahtaa hūū.	I want to buy some oranges.
acchee	good
kyaatumhaaree paas acchee santaree hāi?	Do you have good oranges?

STOREKEEPER

deekhiye	please see
jii hāā, yee santaree deekhiye.	Yes, sir, please look at these oranges.
naagpurii	from Nagpur

yee naagpurii santaree These are Nagpur oranges.
hāī.

JOHN

hooTEE hāī. are

kyaa naagpurii santaree Are Nagpur oranges good?
acchee hooTEE hāī?

STOREKEEPER

miiThee sweet

jii hāā, naagpurii Yes, sir, Nagpur oranges
santaree bahut miiThee are very sweet.
hooTEE hāī.

JOHN

in these

in kaa their

daam price

acchaa, in kaa daam O.K., what's their price?
kyaa hai?

STOREKEEPER

tiin three

rupaae rupees

darjan dozen

tiin rupaae darjan. three rupees a dozen.

JOHN

doo give

dee doo give

mujhee to me

acchaa, mujhee eek darjan O.K., give me a dozen.
dee doo.

STOREKEEPER

liijiyee please take

yee liijiyee eek darjan Here's a dozen oranges.
santaree.

JOHN

loo take

yee loo tiin rupaae. Here are three rupees.

STOREKEEPER

bahut acchaa. Very well.

GRAMMAR

1. Nouns

Nouns in Hindi are classified as either masculine or feminine. Nouns show an inflection for two numbers, singular and plural, and also an inflection for two cases, nominative and oblique, which will be discussed later.

1.1. Gender of Nouns

The gender of the nouns you have met so far is as follows:

	Masc.		Fem.
hooTal	hotel	dukaan	ship
naam	name	bas	bus
phal	fruit	duur	distance
bazaar	bazaar		
miil	mile		
santaraa	orange		
daam	price		
rupayaa	rupee		
darjan	dozen		
bas-isTaap	bus stop		

1.2. Plural of Nouns

Most masculine nouns ending in -aa form the plural by replacing -aa with -ee.

Sg.		Pl.
santaraa	orange	santaree
rupayaa	rupee	rupaee

Other masculine nouns have identical singular and plural forms:

Sg.		Pl.
hooTal	hotel	hooTal
naam	name	naam
phal	fruit	phal
bazaar	bazaar	bazaar
miil	mile	miil
bas-isTaap	bus stop	bas-isTaap
daam	price	daam
darjan	dozen	darjan

The feminine nouns you have met so far form the plural by adding -ēē to the singular:

Sg.		Pl.
dukaan	shop	dukaanēē
bas	bus	basēē
duur	distance	(no pl.)
taraf	direction	(no pl.)

2. New Verbs

The following new verbs occur in this lesson:

deekhnaa	to see
leenaa	to take
deenaa	to give

3. Verb hoonaa, "to be"

In Lesson II'3 the simple present forms of the verb hoonaa, "to be," were given, and the present imperfect forms of verbs in general were discussed. In this lesson there is an example of the present imperfect of hoonaa. This is the only verb in Hindi that has both simple present forms and present imperfect forms; all other verbs have only the present imperfect forms. The present imperfect of hoonaa is used to make a general statement or to state a condition that is generally valid (e.g., grass is green). The simple present form of hoonaa is used in all other situations.

naagpurii santaree	Nagpur oranges are sweet
miiThee hootee hāī.	(are generally sweet).

yee santaree miiThee hāī.	These oranges are sweet.
---------------------------	--------------------------

4. Imperatives

Hindi has an imperative form made by adding the ending -oo to the verb stem. This form of the imperative will be referred to as the familiar imperative; it is used in situations where the pronoun tum, "you," is appropriate.

Infinitive		Verb Stem	Imperative
jaanaa	to go	jaa	jaaoo
sunnaa	to listen, hear	sun	sunoo
xariidnaa	to buy	xariid	xariidoo
milnaa	to be available, to get	mil	miloo
deekhnaa	to see	deekh	deekhoo

The two verbs leenaa, "to take," and deenaa, "to give," are irregular in that the -ee of the verb stem is dropped when the imperative ending -oo is added.

Infinitive		Verb Stem	Imperative
deenaa	to give	dee	doo
leenaa	to take	lee	loo

Hindi has another imperative form made by adding the ending -iyee to the verb stem. This will be referred to as the polite imperative; it is used in sit-

uations where the pronoun aap, "you," is appropriate.

Infinitive		Verb Stem	Imperative
jaanaa	to go	jaa	jaaiyee
sunnaa	to listen, to hear	sun	suniyee
xariidnaa	to buy	xariid	xariidiyee
milnaa	to be available, mil to get		miliyee
deekhnaa	to see	deekh	deekhiyee

The verbs leena, "to take," and deena, "to give," use irregular stems liij and diij, to which the ending -iyee is added.

Infinitive		Verb Stem	Imperative
deena	to give	dee	diijiyee
leena	to take	lee	liijiyee

Note that at the beginning of the conversation in Lesson II, when John is addressing an Indian friend, he starts the conversation with the polite form suniyee, "please listen," but in the conversation in Lesson III, where John is talking to a storekeeper, he uses the familiar form sunoo, "listen." Also in Lesson III the storekeeper in offering John some oranges uses the polite form liijiyee, but John in offering the money for the oranges uses the familiar form loo.

The expression dee doo, "give," which occurs in this lesson is an alternative of the form doo, "give," and is composed of the verb stem dee followed by the familiar imperative doo. This type of construction will be discussed later.

5. Adjectives

Adjectives in Hindi that end in -aa show inflection for gender and number and agree in number and gender with the noun they are dependent upon. The form ending in -aa is used with the masculine singular noun. If the noun is masculine plural, the ending -aa is replaced by -ee. If the noun is feminine, either singular or plural, the ending -aa is replaced by -ii. The adjectives of this type that you have met so far are:

Masc. Sg.		Masc.Pl.	Fem.
acchaa	good	acchee	acchii
miiThaa	sweet	miiThee	miiThii
kitnaa	how much, how many	kitnee	kitnii

Other adjectives in Hindi do not change their form under any conditions.

yee santaraa acchaa hai.	This orange is good
yee santaree acchee hāf.	These oranges are good.
yee dukaan acchii hai.	This shop is good.
yee dukaanēē acchii hāf.	These shops are good.
yee hooTal mašhuur hāf.	This hotel is famous.
yee hooTal mašhuur hāf.	These hotels are famous.
yee dukaan mašhuur hai.	This shop is famous.
yee dukaanēē mašhuur hāf.	These shops are famous.

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

- kyaa tumhaaree paas _____ hāf.

oranges	good fruit (pl.)
fruit	three rupees
rupees	one dozen oranges
some oranges	Nagpur oranges
some rupees	some good oranges.
sweet oranges	
- māf kuch santaree _____ caahtaa hūū.

to take	to give (away)
to buy	to see

3. māī _____ xariidnaa caahataa hūū.
 some oranges some good oranges
 good oranges some sweet oranges
 sweet oranges these sweet oranges
 three oranges those good oranges
 one dozen oranges those three oranges
 Nagpur oranges

4. yee santaree _____.
 (please) see (please) buy
 (please) take (please) give (away)

5. yee phal _____.
 give (away) take
 buy see

6. yee liijiye _____.
 one orange one dozen good oranges
 oranges one dozen sweet oranges
 these oranges these three oranges
 one dozen oranges those dozen oranges

7. yee santaree _____ hāī.
 good one dozen
 sweet three
 good and sweet three dozen
 how many

B. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

mujhee eek darjan santaree ... mujhee eek darjan
 diijiye santaree doo.

1. yee phal deekhiyee.

2. tiin rupae liijiye.
 3. baaīī taraf jaaiye.
 4. miithee santaree xariidiye.
 5. kuch rupae dee diijiye.
 6. suniye.

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

māī bazaar jaataa hūū. māī bazaar jaanaa
 caahataa hūū.

1. māī kuch phal leetaa hūū.
 2. māī tiin rupae deetaa hūū
 3. māī acchee santaree deekhtaa hūū.
 4. māī eek darjan santaree xariidtaa hūū.
 5. māī suntaa hūū.

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

woo suntaa hai. woo sunnaa caahataa hai.

1. woo kuch santaree xariidtaa hai.
 2. woo ajmeerii hooTal jaataa hai.
 3. woo tiin repae deetaa hai.
 4. woo miithee santaree deekhtaa hai.
 5. woo kuch acchee phal leetaa hai.

E. Translate orally

1. I (masc.) buy some oranges.
 2. He buys some oranges.
 3. You (masc., familiar) buy some oranges.
 4. She buys some oranges.
 5. We (masc.) buy some oranges.
 6. They (fem.) buy some oranges.

7. You (fem., polite) buy some oranges.
8. I (fem.) buy some oranges.
9. They (masc.) buy some oranges.
10. You (masc., polite) buy some oranges.
11. We (fem.) buy some oranges.
12. You (fem. familiar) buy some oranges.

F. Translate orally:

1. I (fem.) see the hotel.
2. They (masc.) see the hotel.
3. You (masc., polite) see the hotel.
4. She sees the hotel.
5. I (masc.) see the hotel.
6. You (fem., familiar) see the hotel.
7. We (masc.) see the hotel.
8. They (fem.) see the hotel.
9. You (masc., familiar) see the hotel.
10. We (fem.) see the hotel.

G. Translate orally:

1. Have you some good oranges?
2. Yes, sir, these oranges from Nagpur are very good.
3. How much are they?
4. Three rupees a dozen.
5. Give me a dozen.
6. Here, sir, have these dozen oranges.
7. O.K., have three rupees.
8. Have you some fruit?

9. No, sir, not here.
10. Go to the shop on the right.
11. All right.
12. I want to buy some fruit.
13. What kind of fruit do you want, sir.
14. I want some good and sweet oranges.
15. Here are some good oranges.
16. See these oranges from Nagpur.
17. How many do you want?
18. One dozen.
19. Have a dozen oranges, sir.
20. Here are three rupees.

LESSON IV

Conversation -- Talking to the Dhobee

JOHN

kaun hai? Who is there?

WASHERMAN

dhobii washerman, dhobee

saahab sir

dhoobii hai, saahab. It's the washerman, sir.

JOHN

andar in, inside

aa jaao come

andar aa jaao. Come in.

tumhii you (emphatic)

is this

kee of

kyaa tumhii is hooTal kee Are you the washerman of
dhoobii hoo? this hotel?

WASHERMAN

hii (emphatic particle)

kaam work

karnaa to do

jii hää, mää hii yahää Yes, sir, I work here.
kaa kaam kartaa hüü.

JOHN

doo two

minaT minute

ruknaa to stop, wait

acchaa, doo minaT rukoo. All right, wait a minute.

abhii right away, right now

kapRee clothes

abhii kapRee deetaa hüü. I'll give you the clothes
right away.

rahee are

loo, yee rahee kapRee. Here, these are the clothes.

WASHERMAN

likhnaa to write

likh liijiye write, write down

acchaa saahab, likh All right, sir, please
liijiye. write (them) down.

caar four

pääNT trousers

caar pääNT. Four pairs of trousers.

chai six

kamiiz shirt

chai kamiiz. Six shirts.

saat seven

baniyaain undershirt

saat baniyaain. Seven undershirts.

pääc five

jooRee pairs

moozee socks

pääc jooRee moozee. Five pairs of socks.

nau nine

rumaal handkerchiefs

aur nau rumaal. And nine handkerchiefs.

JOHN

Thiik right
jaldii soon

Thiik hai, mujhee yee That's right. I want these
kapRee jaldii caahiye. clothes back soon.

WASHERMAN

bahut acchaa, saahab. All right, sir.

NUMERALS

eek	one
doo	two
tiin	three
caar	four
pããc	five
chai	six
saaf	seven
aafh	eight
nau	nine
das	ten

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

In this lesson the following new masculine nouns with a singular in -aa and a plural in -ee occur:

Sg.		Pl.	
moozaa	sock	moozee	socks
kapRaa	cloth	kapRee	clothes

Note the meaning of kapRaa, "cloth," kapRee, "clothes."

The following masculine nouns with unchanged plurals

occur in this lesson:

dhoobii	dhobee
saahab	sir
kaam	work
pãINT	trousers
rumaal	handkerchief

In Hindi, some borrowed items vary in gender from region to region, from person to person within the same region, and even in the speech of the same person. This is true of the items pãINT, "trouser," and rumaal, "handkerchief," both of which are sometimes also used as feminine.

The following new feminine nouns occur:

Sg.		Pl.	
kamiiz	shirt	kamiizẽẽ	shirts
baniyaain	undershirt	baniyaainẽẽ	undershirts

2. New Verbs

The following new verbs occur in this lesson:

aanaa	to come
karnaa	to do
ruknaa	to stop, wait
likhnaa	to write

The present imperfect forms of these verbs are regular according to the rules discussed in Lesson II. The imperative forms of all except karnaa, "to do," are regular. Thus:

Infinitive		Imperative (familiar)	Imperative (polite)
aanaa	to come	aaoo	aaiyee
ruknaa	to stop, wait	rukoo	rukiyee
likhnaa	to write	likhoo	likhiyee

The familiar imperative of karnaa is regular, but the polite imperative has an irregular form similar to the polite imperative forms of deenaa, "to give," and leenaa, "to take."

Infinitive		Imperative (familiar)	Imperative (polite)
karnaa	to do	karoo	kiijiyee

3. caahiye, "to want"

The polite imperative form of the verb caahnaa, "to want," frequently equates with the English "to want" or "to need" as follows:

aap koo kaun see phal caahiye?	{ What kind of fruit do you want? What kind of fruit do you need?
mujhee yee kapRee jaldii caahiye.	
	{ I want these clothes back soon. I need these clothes back soon.

4. Compound Verbs

There are two main types of compound verbs in Hindi -- a verbal compound and a nonverbal compound.

4.1. Verbal Compounds

The main type of verbal compound in Hindi is composed of one verb in the stem form followed by a second verb in any of the possible inflected forms. The meaning of the compound form is usually the same as the meaning of the first verb. The inflected verb, therefore, does not have its own basic meaning but acts as a sort of auxiliary, to which the inflection is added. The number of verbs that can be used as the first member of a compound is thus very large, but only a very limited number of verbs may be used as the second verb in a compound. The verbs so far used as a second member of the compound are jaanaa, "to go," deenaa, "to give," and leenaa, "to take." The compounds of this type that you have met so far are the following:

dee	doo	give
aa	jaao	come

likh liijiye write down, write

Note that, although in all these expressions the inflected verb is in the imperative, doo, jaao, liijiye, it is possible for it to be in any other inflected form.

Yee dhoobii kapRee This dhoobe gives the
jaldii dee deetaa hai. clothes back soon.

Compound verbs of this type will be called Type I.

4.2. Nonverbal Compound Verbs

A second type of compound is one in which the first element is a noun, adjective or adverb and the second is a verb form, usually hoonaa, "to be" or karnaa, "to do." This type of form is strictly speaking not really a compound but is classified here as a compound because it is likely to be translated into English by a single verbal form. Such forms will be referred to in the future as Type II.

The only verb of this type you have met so far is kaam karnaa, "to work."

5. Postposition kaa, "of"

The postposition kaa, "of," is inflected like an adjective and has the following forms:

masc. sg.:	kaa
masc. pl.:	kee
fem. :	kii

It will agree with the noun following. Examples are:

hooTal kaa naam kyaa hai?	What is the name of the hotel?
māi yahāā kaa kaam kartaa hūū.	I work here.
dhoobii kee kapRee yahāā hai?	The washerman's clothes are here.
phal kii dukaan kahāā hai?	Where is a fruit store?

The nouns naam, "name," and kaam, "work," are masculine singular; hence the masculine singular form kaa is used. But kapRee, "clothes," is masculine plural;

hence the masculine plural form kee is used. And dukaan, "store," is feminine; hence the feminine form kii is used.

Note the difference in meaning between the following pairs of sentences:

māī hooTal mēē kaam kartaa hūū.	I work in the hotel.
māī hooTal kaa kaam kartaa hūū.	I do the work of the hotel (i.e., I work for the hotel).

Note that in equational sentences of the type "are you such-and-such a person," whether in Hindi a pronoun is tum or aap, the form for "such-and-such a person" will be in the plural.

Kyaa tumhīī is hooTal kee dhoobii hoo?	Are you the washerman of this hotel?
---	---

6. Emphatic Particle hii

In Hindi there is an emphatic particle hii, sometimes occurring in the form hīī, which is generally used to emphasize the form preceding it. Sometimes it is joined with the preceding item as a single word and sometimes it is separated.

Simple		Emphatic
wahāā	there	wahīī
yahāā	here	yahīī
tum	you	tumhīī
māī	I	māī hii
ab	now	abhiī right away

7. Numerals

In counting and enumerating, it is common to use a numeral with a noun in the singular, as in chai kamiiz, "six shirts," but the plural may also be used, as in pāāc jooRee moozee, "five pairs of socks." In situations other than counting or listing, the plural of the noun is likely to be used with numerals above one.

yahāā chai kamiizēē hāī. There are six shirts here.

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

- _____ aa jaaoo.
inside in the store
here in the famous store
in the hotel in the famous hotel
- māī _____ kaam kartaa hūū.
here of the store
there of the Ajmer Hotel
of the hotel of the bazaar
- māī abhiī _____ deetaa hūū.
clothes one dozen oranges
fruit seven oranges
oranges five rupees
rupees handkerchiefs
some fruit two pairs of socks
five oranges nine handkerchiefs
ten rupees some clothes
- _____ minaaT rukoo.
two eight
five three
seven nine
ten one
four
- yee rahee _____.
clothes two handkerchiefs

oranges	some fruit (pl.)
five rupees	some oranges
four pairs of trousers	some clothes
seven pairs of socks	some rupees

6. mujhee _____ jaldii caahiye.

clothes	those oranges
these clothes	this dozen oranges
those clothes	this dozen sweet oranges
these oranges	

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes if necessary.

1. _____ yahāā kaa kaam kartaa hū.

I (masc.)	they (masc.)
he	they (fem.)
she	I (fem.)
we (fem.)	we (masc.)

2. _____ abhii kapRee deetaa hū.

I (masc.)	they (masc.)
we (fem.)	I (fem.)
he	we (masc.)
she	they (fem.)

3. _____ bahut acchaa hai.

these pairs of trousers
these shirts
those undershirts
those pairs of socks

these handkerchiefs

those oranges

these clothes

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

baaif taraf jaao baaif taraf jaaiye.

1. kuch phal xariidoo.
2. yee santaree loo.
3. kapRee likhoo
4. dhoobhii kee kapRee likh loo.
5. sunoo.
6. naagpurii santaree deekhoo.
7. andar aao.
8. eek minaa rukoo.
9. hooTal kaa kaam karoo.
10. mujhee pāāc rupaae doo.

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

woo bazaar jaanaa caahtaa woo bazaar jaataa hai.

1. woo kuch phal xariidnaa caahtaa hai.
2. woo santaree leenaa caahtaa hai.
3. woo kapRee likhnaa caahtaa hai.
4. woo mujhee phal deena caahtaa hai.
5. woo hooTal mēē ruknaa caahtaa hai.
6. woo yahāā kaam karnaa caahtaa hai.
7. woo andar aanaa caahtaa hai.
8. woo naagpurii santaree deekhnaa caahtaa hai.

E. Translate orally:

1. I work here.
2. I work in the hotel.
3. I work in the store.
4. I work in the fruit store.
5. I work in the Ajmer Hotel.
6. Where do you work?
7. I need these clothes back soon.
8. I need these trousers back soon.
9. I need these undershirts back soon.
10. I need these shirts back soon.
11. I need these handkerchiefs back soon.
12. I need these oranges.
13. I want to write.
14. I want to go to the market.
15. He is the washerman of this hotel.

F. Translate orally:

1. I (masc.) work here.
2. He works here.
3. They (fem.) work here.
4. We (masc.) work here.
5. She works here.
6. They (masc.) work here.
7. We (fem.) work here.
8. I (fem.) work here.
9. Do you (masc., familiar) work here?
10. Do you (fem., familiar) work here?

11. Do you (masc., polite) work here?

12. Do you (fem., polite) work here?

G. Translate orally:

1. I (fem.) want to write.
2. They (masc.) want to write.
3. She wants to write.
4. We (masc.) want to write.
5. I (masc.) want to write.
6. They (fem.) want to write.
7. We (fem.) want to write.
8. He wants to write.
9. Do you (fem., polite) want to write?
10. Do you (masc., familiar) want to write?
11. Do you (fem., familiar) want to write?
12. Do you (masc., polite) want to write?

REVIEW I

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. woo _____ caahtaa hai.

to go	to stop
to come	to write
to buy	to listen
to take	to see
to give	to work

2. yee phal _____.

please buy	buy
please see	take

- please take give (away)
 please give (away) see
3. mujhee _____ jaldii caahiyee.
 the clothes those shirts
 these clothes these handkerchiefs
 those clothes this undershirt
 these oranges this pair of trousers
 these sweet oranges some oranges
 those good oranges one dozen oranges
4. kyaa yee hooTal _____ hai?
 good to the left
 very good to the right
 famous straight ahead
 very famous far
 famous and good very far
 here one mile
 there ten miles
5. yee dukaan _____ kitnii duur hai.
 from here from the bazaar
 from there from the Sadar Bazaar
 from the hotel from the Ajmer Hotel
 from the bus stop
6. _____ kaa naam kyaa hai?
 the hotel the washerman
 the store the famous hotel
 the fruit store the famous store
 the bazaar the famous bazaar

7. woo _____ kaam kartaa hai.
 here in the store
 there in the fruit store
 in the hotel in the famous bazaar
 in the bazaar in the Ajmer Hotel
 in the famous hotel
8. in kaa daam _____ hai?
 two rupees eight rupees
 five rupees three rupees
 ten rupees nine rupees
 seven rupees six rupees
 four rupees
9. yee santaree _____ hāī.
 sweet ten
 good one dozen
 famous how many
 very sweet very good and very sweet
 very good
10. _____ kahāā miltee hāī?
 oranges socks
 fruit trousers
 these oranges sweet oranges
 these clothes good oranges
 Nagpur oranges good clothes
 handkerchiefs
11. yee liijiyee _____.
 the oranges the sweet oranges

one dozen oranges	the clothes
the Nagpur oranges	the undershirts
the handkerchiefs	the shirts
the trousers	the sweet fruit

12. māī _____ xariidnaa caahtaa hūū.

fruit	some good trousers
some fruit	ten handkerchiefs
some good fruit	two handkerchiefs
some oranges	five shirts
one dozen oranges	eight pairs of socks
some clothes	some good shirts
some trousers	one dozen shirts

13. māī abhii _____ deetaa hūū.

the clothes	the fruit
the trousers	ten rupees
the shirts	some oranges
the undershirts	some clothes
the socks	some sweet oranges
the handkerchief	one dozen shirts
the oranges	one dozen pairs of trousers

14. _____ yahāā see kitnii duur hai?

the bazaar	that bazaar
the hotel	this bazaar
the famous hotel	this store
the Ajmer Hotel	this fruit store
the Nagpur Hotel	that fruit store
the bus stop	that store

the store

15. wee _____ kahāā hāī?

shirts	good handkerchiefs
one dozen shirts	five handkerchiefs
good shirts	oranges
handkerchiefs	good oranges

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes, if necessary.

1. _____ bahut mašhuur hai.

this hotel	those fruit stores
these hotels	those markets
this market	that hotel
this store	those hotels
these markets	this store
those stores	these stores

2. _____ bahut miithaa hai.

this orange	this fruit
these oranges	that fruit
those oranges	

3. _____ bazaar jaanaa caahtaa hūū.

he	the washerman
she	we (masc.)
I (masc.)	I (fem.)
we (fem.)	they (fem.)
they (masc.)	Ram Nath
John	

4. in kaa daam _____ rupayaa hai.

one	three
two	seven
five	nine
seven	four
ten	eight

5. kyaa _____ bazaar jaanaa caahtee hai?

you (masc. polite)

you (fem. familiar)

you (masc. familiar)

you (fem. polite)

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

bas yahāā miltii hai. kyaa bas yahāā miltii hai?

1. bas-isTaap bahut duur hai.
2. yee dhoobhii yahāā kaa kaam kartaa hai.
3. ajmeerii hooTal bahut acchaa hooTal hai.
4. wahīī eek hooTal hai.
5. yee phal kii dukaan hai.
6. in kaa daam tiin tupaae hai.
7. bazaar yahāā see eek miil duur hai.
8. woo yee kapRee jaldii caahtaa hai.
9. naagpurii santaree bahut miithee hootee hai.
10. yee aap kii dukaan hai.
11. aap kii dukaan acchii hai.
12. yee hooTal mašhuur hai.
13. bas-isTaap yahāā see baafī taraf hai.
14. hooTal kaa naam ajmeerii hooTal hai.

15. woo santaree xariidnaa caahtaa hai.

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

sunoo. suniyee.

1. sadar bazaar jaaoo.
2. naagpurii santaree xariidoo.
3. miithe phal loo.
4. kapRee likhoo.
5. yee phal deekhoo.
6. mujhee kuch rupaae doo.
7. yahāā doo minat rukoo.
8. hooTal kaa kaam karoo.
9. andar aaoo.
10. mujhee eek darjan santaree dee doo.

E. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

woo phal xariidtii hai. woo phal xariidnaa caahatii hai.

1. woo sadar bazaar jaatii hai.
2. woo kuch phal leetii hai.
3. woo pāāc rupaae deetii hai.
4. woo dhoobhii kee kapRee likhtii hai.
5. woo suntii hai.
6. woo andar aatii hai.
7. woo das kamiizēē xariidtii hai.
8. woo naagpurii santaree deekhtii hai.
9. woo bas-isTaap mēē ruktii hai.
10. woo hooTal mēē kaam kartii hai.

F. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

yee santaraa acchaa hai. yee santaree acchee hāī.

1. yee bas acchii hai.
2. yee bazaar mašhuur hai.
3. yee hooTal acchaa hai.
4. yee kamiiz acchii hai.
5. yee rumaal acchaa hai.
6. yee dukaan acchii hai.
7. yee hooTal mašhuur hai.
8. yee pāīNT acchaa hai.
9. yee phal miiThaa hai.
10. yee bazaar bahut acchaa hai.
11. yee baniyaain acchii hai.
12. yee dukaan mašhuur hai.
13. yee santaraa miiThaa hai.
14. yee moozaa acchaa hai.
15. yee phal acchaa hai.

G. Translate orally:

1. He writes.
2. We (masc.) write.
3. You (fem., familiar) write.
4. I (masc.) write.
5. They (fem.) write.
6. You (masc., polite) write.
7. I (fem.) write.
8. She writes.
9. You (fem., polite) write.

10. We (fem.) write.

11. They (masc.) write.

12. You (masc., familiar) write.

H. Translate orally:

1. He takes (buys) some oranges from the store.
2. I (masc.) take (buy) some oranges from the store.
3. They (fem.) take (buy) some oranges from the store.
4. We (masc.) take (buy) some oranges from the store.
5. She takes (buys) some oranges from the store.
6. You (masc., familiar) take (buy) some oranges from the store.
7. They (masc.) take (buy) some oranges from the store.
8. You (fem., familiar) take (buy) some oranges from the store.
9. I (fem.) take (buy) some oranges from the store.
10. You (masc., polite) take (buy) some oranges from the store.
11. We (fem.) take (buy) some oranges from the store.
12. You (fem., polite) take (buy) some oranges from the store.

I. Translate orally:

1. I (masc.) wait here.
2. She waits here.
3. You (masc., familiar) wait here.
4. They (fem.) wait here.
5. We (masc.) wait here.
6. You (fem., polite) wait here.
7. He waits here.

8. I (fem.) wait here.

9. You (masc., polite) wait here.

10. They (masc.) wait here.

11. We (fem.) wait here.

12. You (fem., familiar) wait here.

J. Translate orally:

1. The washerman comes in.

2. They (fem.) come in.

3. I (masc.) come in.

4. You (fem., polite) come in.

5. We (masc.) come in.

6. They (masc.) come in.

7. I (fem.) come in.

8. You (masc., familiar) come in.

9. She comes in.

10. You (masc., polite) come in.

11. We (fem.) come in.

12. You (fem., familiar) come in.

K. Conversation

1. A wants to go to the bazaar. He stops B on the street and asks him where the bazaar is. B tells him that the bazaar isn't very far. A asks how far it is. B tells him that it's one mile. B asks if A wants to go to the bazaar by bus. A replies in the affirmative. B directs him to the bus stop asking him to go to the left and then straight ahead. A thanks B.

2. The washerman knocks at A's door in the hotel. A asks who it is. The washerman tells him it's the washerman. A asks him to come in. A asks him if he is the washerman of that hotel. The washerman replies that he is the one who works there. A gives his clothes to the washerman. The washerman requests A to write them down and enumerates them.

After writing them down, A tells the washerman that he wants the clothes back soon.

3. A wants to buy some oranges and enters a fruit store. A asks the storekeeper if he has some oranges. The storekeeper asks him what kind of oranges he needs. A tells him that he wants to buy Nagpur oranges. The storekeeper shows him the Nagpur oranges and tells him that they are very good and sweet. A asks their price. The storekeeper says that their price is two rupees a dozen. A asks him to give him five dozen oranges. The storekeeper gives him five dozen oranges. A gives ten rupees to the storekeeper.

4. A asks to go to a hotel. He stops B on the road and asks him where a hotel is. B tells him about the Ajmer Hotel. A asks him if it is a good hotel. B tells him that it is very good. A asks B where the Ajmer Hotel is. B tells him that it is in the Sadar Bazaar. A asks directions to go there. B tells him to go to the right and then straight ahead. He says that the Ajmer Hotel is right there. A thanks B and leaves.

5. A enters a store and tells the storekeeper that he wants to buy some shirts. The storekeeper brings some shirts and shows them to A. A asks their price. The storekeeper says that they are three rupees each. A asks the storekeeper to give him three shirts. The storekeeper gives A three shirts. A pays him nine rupees and leaves.

LESSON V

Conversation -- Talking to a Hotel Manager

HOTEL MANAGER

namastee	hello
kahnaa	to say
kee liyee	for
saknaa	to be able
namastee, kahiye, kyaa māi aap kee liyee kuch kar saktaa hūū?	Hello. Can I do something for you?

JOHN

kee paas	at
kooii	any, some
kamraa	room
xaalii	vacant
kyaa aap kee paas kooii kamraa xaalii hai?	Do you have a vacant room?

HOTEL MANAGER

kaisaa	what kind
singil	single
yaa	or
Dabal	double
aap koo kaisaa kamraa caahiye--singil yaa Dabal?	What kind of room do you want--single or double?

JOHN

meeree	my
saath	with
meerii	my

patnii	wife
--------	------

bhii	also
------	------

Dabal, meeree saath meerii patnii bhii hāi.	Double, my wife is with me too.
--	------------------------------------

HOTEL MANAGER

deekh leenaa	to take a look
acchaa, aaiyee, kamraa deekh liijiyee.	All right, come and take a look at the room.
sabhii	all
suwidhaa*	convenience
is kamree mēē sabhii suwidhaaēē hāi.	This room has all the con- veniences.

pasand	pleasing
--------	----------

kahiye, aap koo pasand hai?	Do you like it?
--------------------------------	-----------------

JOHN

Thiik hai, mujhee pasand hai.	It's fine. I like it.
----------------------------------	-----------------------

kiraayaa	rent
----------	------

kitnaa	how much
--------	----------

is-kaa kiraayaa kitnaa hai?	How much is it?
-----------------------------	-----------------

HOTEL MANAGER

keewal	only
--------	------

das	ten
-----	-----

rooz	day
------	-----

aap kee liyee keewal das rupaae rooz.	For you it's only ten rupees a day.
--	--

* This expression in Hindi means that the room is likely to include chairs, sofa, and writing table. It may or may not imply that there is a separate bathroom.

JOHN

tab	then
tab too	then
isee	it
lee lūūgaa	(I) will take
tab too Thīk hai, māī isee lee lūūgaa.	Then it's all right. I'll take it.

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

<u>Masc.</u>		<u>Fem.</u>	
kamraa	room	patnī	wife
kiraayaa	rent	suwidhaa	convenience
rooz	day		

2. New Verbs

kahnaa	to say, tell
saknaa	to be able

The forms of these verbs are regular.

2.1. New Compound Verbs

Type I

deekh leenaa	to take a look
lee leenaa	to take

3. New Adjectives in -aa

kaisaa	what kind
--------	-----------

4. Oblique Case

Nouns in Hindi, besides being inflected for number, are inflected for two cases--nominative and oblique. Hindi nouns may be subdivided into four classes on the basis of their inflection. These classes will be referred to as Masc. I, Masc. II, Fem. I, and Fem. II.

Masculine I

The nouns of this class are characterized by having a nominative singular form ending in -aa. The other forms of this class are as follows:

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	kamraa	kamree
Obl.	kamree	kamrōō

Note that for nouns of this class the nominative plural and the oblique singular forms are identical.

Masculine II

The nouns of this class are those masculine nouns which do not end in -aa. The forms are:

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	hooTal	hooTal
Obl.	hooTal	hooTalōō

Note that for nouns of this class the nominative singular, the oblique singular, and the nominative plural forms are all identical.

Feminine I

Nouns of this class are characterized by having a nominative singular form ending in -ī. The other forms are:

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	patnī	patnīyāā
Obl.	patnī	patnīyōō

Feminine II

The nouns of this class are those feminine nouns which do not end in -ī. The forms are:

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	dukaan	dukaanēē
Obl.	dukaan	dukaanōō

There are a limited number of nouns which do not fit the classifications above. They will be called irregular nouns, and their forms will be given when they occur.

4.1. Use of the Cases

The oblique case of a noun is used in Hindi whenever the noun is followed by a postposition.

kamraa xaalii hai.	The room is vacant.
kamree mēē sabhii suwidhaaēē hāī.	All the conveniences are in the room.
santaree acchee hāī.	The oranges are good.
santarōō kaa daam kyaa hai?	What's the price of the oranges?

5. Verb saknaa, "to be able"

When a second verb is used dependent upon the verb saknaa, "to be able," the dependent verb is used in the verb-stem form.

kyaa māī aap kee liyee kuch <u>kar</u> saktaa hūū?	Can I <u>do</u> something for you?
kyaa woo kamraa <u>deekh</u> saktaa hai?	Can he <u>see</u> the room?

Note the contrast between saknaa, "to be able," which takes a dependent verb in the verb-stem form, and the verb caahnaa, "to want," which takes a dependent verb in the infinitive form.

māī jaa saktaa hūū.	I can go.
māī jaanaa caahtaa hūū.	I want to go.

6. kyaa

In an interrogative sentence in which kyaa may be used as an interrogative particle (but not when used meaning "what"), the form kyaa may often be omitted, e.g.

kyaa aap koo yee kamraa pasand hai?	} Do you like this room?
aap koo yee kamraa pasand hai?	

7. Writing System

The Hindi writing system is called Devanagari (deevanaagrii). Under most conditions the writing of a consonant symbol will assume that there is a following short vowel -a after the consonant. The first letters you should learn are the following:

pa	प	ma	म
ta	त	na	न
ba	ब	ka	क
da	द	sa	स

When these symbols occur at the end of a word, however, they represent a consonant sound only; i.e., there is no following -a, as for example:

bas	बस
das	दस
tab	तब

To indicate the long vowel -aa after a consonant a vertical stroke T is used after the consonant symbol:

paa	पा	maa	मा
taa	ता	naa	ना
baa	बा	kaa	का
daa	दा	saa	सा

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. kyaa woo _____?

can write	can take
can come	can see
can wait	can buy
can go	can say
can listen	can work

2. kyaa aap kee paas _____ hai?
 a room a shirt
 a single room a handkerchief
 a double room an undershirt
 a good room a rupee
3. _____ sabhi suwidhaaãẽ hãĩ.
 in the room in the single room
 in the hotel in the double room
 in the rooms in the single rooms
 in the hotels in the double rooms
4. is kaa kiraayaa _____ hai?
 how much ten rupees
 very much five rupees
5. _____ deekh liijiyee.
 a room the single room
 the room the double room
 the rooms the good room
 the fruit the good rooms
 some oranges the sweet oranges
6. mujhee yee _____ pasand hai.
 room store
 hotel market
 bus work
 washerman
7. _____ kaa naam kyaa hai?
 the hotel the wife
 the store the washerman

- the bazaar
8. aap koo _____ kamraa caahiye?
 what kind of single
 good double
9. aap koo _____ caahiye?
 what kind of rooms what kind of socks
 what kind of fruit what kind of handkerchiefs
 what kind of oranges what kind of undershirts
 what kind of room what kind of stores
 what kind of shirts
10. mujhee _____ pasand hãĩ.
 these rooms these socks
 those oranges those undershirts
 those rooms these handkerchiefs
 these hotels those shirts
 those hotels those socks
 these oranges these undershirts
 these shirts these stores
 those handkerchiefs those stores
- B. Substitute orally in the sentence below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes if necessary.
1. kyaa _____ aap kee liyee kuch kar saktaa hũũ.
 I (masc.) they (fem.)
 John the washerman
 she the wife
 they (masc.) he
 I (fem.)

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

woo phal xariidtaa hai woo phal xariid sakta hai.

1. woo kamree deekhtaa hai.
2. woo phal leetaa hai.
3. woo hooTal jaataa hai.
4. woo kyaa kartaa hai?
5. woo bazaar see aataa hai.
6. woo kapRee likhtaa hai.
7. woo mujhee pããc rupae deetaa hai.
8. woo hooTal mẽẽ ruktaa hai.
9. woo dukaan mẽẽ kaam kartaa hai.
10. woo suntaa hai.

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

ham phal xariidnaa caahtee ... ham phal xariid saktee
hãĩ. hãĩ.

1. ham kuch kamree deekhnaa caahtee hãĩ.
2. ham hooTal mẽẽ kaam karnaa caahtee hãĩ.
3. ham sunnaa caahtee hãĩ.
4. ham pããc rupae leenaa caahtee hãĩ.
5. ham hooTal mẽẽ ruknaa caahtee hãĩ.
6. ham dhoobii koo kapRee deenaa caahtee hãĩ.
7. ham andar aanaa caahtee hãĩ.
8. ham bazaar jaanaa caahtee hãĩ.
9. ham yee kamiizẽẽ likhnaa caahtee hãĩ.
10. ham bas-istaap mẽẽ ruknaa caahtee hãĩ.

E. Translate orally:

1. Can I do something for you?

2. Do you have a vacant room?
3. Do you want a single room?
4. No, I want a double room.
5. Do you have a double room?
6. Yes, do you want to see the room?
7. Come with me and see the room.
8. This room has all the conveniences in it.
9. How much is it?
10. Ten rupees a day.
11. It's all right. I'll take it.
12. They want to buy some clothes from the store.
13. The market isn't very far from here.
14. Do you want to come in?
15. She looks at these oranges.
16. These oranges are (generally) sweet.
17. What kind of fruit do you need?
18. Do you want to buy some socks?
19. Here's a dozen oranges.
20. Please write down these clothes.
21. I want to buy six pairs of trousers.
22. There is a fruit store right there.
23. What is the name of the bazaar?
24. Is it a good fruit store?
25. What's their price?

F. Read the following:

काम	दस	सात	तब
बस	नाम	पास	दाम

LESSON VI

Conversation -- In the Post Office

CLERK

kahiyee, aap koo kyaa caahiyee? Hello. What do you want?

JOHN

kaarD card, postcard

lifaafaa envelope

aadi et cetera

māi kuch kaarD lifaafee I want to buy some postcards,
aadi leenaa caahtaa hūū envelopes, etc.

CLERK

aglaa next

khiRkii window

par at, on, to

tab aglii khiRkii par Then go to the next window.
jaaiyee.

maniarDar money order

liyee jaatee hāi. are taken, are accepted

yahāā maniarDar liyee Money orders are accepted
jaatee hāi. here.

(at the next window)

JOHN

poosT kaarD postcard

baaraa twelve

mujhee das poosT kaarD Please give me ten postcards
aur baaraa lifaafee dee and twelve envelopes.
diijiyee.

CLERK

aur kuch

something else

yee liijiye, aur kuch caahiyee.

Here, sir. Do you want anything else?

JOHN

pandraa fifteen

nayaa new

paisaa pice

nayaa paisaa* new pice (Indian coin)

waalaa of

tiis thirty

TikaT stamp

jii hāā, pandree naee Yes, please give (me) thirty
paisee waalee tiis TikaT fifteen-new-pice stamps
bhii dee diijiye. too.

patr letter

antardeešiiy patr** inland letter

kyaa aap kee paas Do you have inland letters
antardeešiiy patr bhii hāi? also?

CLERK

jii hāā, kitnee caahiyee? Yes, how many do you need?

* In the present-day Indian coinage system, introduced in 1957, one hundred new pice are equal to one rupee. Under the old coinage system four pice (paisaa) equals one anna (Hindi - anaa), and sixteen annas equals one rupee. In some places in India the old terms may still be used.

** In India there are two types of air letters: antardeešiiy patr, "inland letter," which costs ten new pice and is good only within India; and hawaaii patr, "air letter," which is used for destinations outside the country and costs fifty-five new pice.

	JOHN	
hawaaii patr		air letter
saat.	Seven.	
saath hii das hawaaii patr bhii dee diijiyee.	Give me ten air letters also.	

CLERK

liijiyee, yee rahee aap kee TikaaT, antardeesiiy patr aur hawaaii patr.	Here are your stamps, inland letters and air letters.
---	---

JOHN

huae	became
kitnee paisee huae?	How much is it?

CLERK

kul	in all
teeraa	thirteen
kul teeraa rupae.	Thirteen rupees in all.

JOHN

yee liijiyee teeraa rupae.	Here are thirteen rupees.
----------------------------	---------------------------

NUMERALS

gyaaraa	eleven
baaraa	twelve
teeraa	thirteen
caudaa	fourteen
pandraa	fifteen
soolaa	sixteen
satraa	seventeen
aThaaraa	eighteen

unniis	nineteen
biis	twenty

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

<u>Masc. I</u>		<u>Fem. I</u>	
lifaafaa	envelope	khiRkii	window
paisaa	pice		
<u>Masc. II</u>			
kaard	card		
maniarDar	money order		
TikaT	stamp		
patr	letter		

2. New Adjectives in -aa

aglaa	next
waalaa	of

3. New Postpositions

par	on, at, to
kee paas	at
kee liyee	for

The last two postpositions are compound postpositions which are best learned as single items.

4. Pronouns

Personal pronouns in Hindi, besides having nominative and oblique case forms, also have a dative case form.

4.1. Personal Pronouns

The forms of the personal pronouns are:

	<u>1st Per.</u>	<u>3rd Per.</u>	<u>3rd Per.</u>	<u>2nd Per.</u>
	Sg.	Sg.	Sg.	Familiar
Nom.	māī	woo	yee	tum
Dat.	mujhee	usee	isee	tumhēē
Obl.	mujh	us	is	tum
	Pl.	Pl.	Pl.	Polite
Nom.	ham	wee	yee	aap
Dat.	hamēē	unhēē	inhēē	-
Obl.	ham	un	in	aap

These pronouns that have a dative form different from the oblique form may replace this special dative with the oblique followed by the postposition koo, "to." Thus mujh koo, us koo, is koo, tum koo, ham koo, un koo, in koo, and aap koo may be used. The pronoun aap, "you" (polite), has only the form aap koo as an equivalent to the dative of the other pronouns.

4.2. Interrogative Pronoun kaun, "who"

The forms of the interrogative pronoun kaun, "who," are:

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	kaun	kaun
Dat.	kisee	kinhēē
Obl.	kis	kin

Like the personal pronouns, the dative form kisee may be replaced by kis koo, and kinhēē by kin koo.

5. Indefinite Adjectives kooii, kuch

The forms of kooii, "some," and kuch, "some," are:

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	kooii	kuch
Dat.	kisii	kuch
Obl.	kis	kuch

The form kuch is generally used only with plural nouns and kooii with singular nouns, although both may be used with nouns that refer to objects which are not countable, such as sugar, cloth etc., in which case kuch refers to "some quantity" and kooii to "some kind."

kyaa aap koo kooii kamraa caahiye? Do you want a room (some room or other)?

kyaa aap koo kuch santaree caahiye? Do you want some oranges?

kyaa aap koo kooii kapRaa caahiye? Do you want some cloth or other?

kyaa aap koo kuch kapRaa caahiye? Do you want some cloth?

6. Use of Dative Case and Postposition koo, "to, for"

One of the main uses of the dative case of pronouns is as the indirect object of a verb.

mujhee baaraa lifaafee dee diijiye. Please give me twelve envelopes.

usee doo rupae dee diijiye. Please give him two rupees.

Nouns do not have a dative case form but express the indirect object by the use of the postposition koo, "to," "for," preceded by the noun in the oblique case form. As mentioned earlier, those pronouns which do have a dative case may use the koo form instead of the dative case.

dhoobii koo eek rupayaa dee diijiye. Please give one rupee to the washerman.

raam koo lifaafee dee diijiye. Please give envelopes to Ram.

mujh koo baaraa lifaafee dee diijiye. Please give me twelve envelopes.

As noted previously, the form caahiye equates with the English verb "want," "need." The person involved in the construction with caahiye is in the dative case. Thus mujhee caahiye, "I need," "I want," means literally "to me is necessary."

aap koo kaun see phal caahiye? What kind of fruit do you need?

suwidhaaāē hāī.	this room.
in dukaanōō mēē phal miltee hāī.	Fruit is available in these stores.
us dhoobii koo kapRee dee doo.	Give the clothes to that washerman.
un santarōō kaa daaw kyaa hai?	What is the price of those oranges?

10. Emphatic Particles, hii and bhii

The emphatic particle hii has an exclusive meaning, whereas bhii has an additive meaning.

māī hii yahāā kaa kaam kartaa hūū. I am the one who does the work here (excluding all others).

māī bhii yahāā kaa kaam kartaa hūū. I also work here (in addition to others).

11. Writing System

Some other consonant symbols are:

pha फ	ja ज
tha थ	bha भ
ca च	ra र
Ta ट	la ल
Tha ठ	ha ह

A short -i following a consonant is written with the symbol ि preceding the consonant symbol, e.g.,

pi पि	ri रि
ti ति	ki कि

A long ii following a consonant is written with the symbol ी following the consonant symbol, e.g.,

dii दी	kii की
thii थी	lii ली

A short -u following a consonant is written with the symbol ु underneath the consonant symbol, e.g.,

ju जु	mu मु
bhu भु	bu भू
nuu नु	huu हु
suu सु	Tuu तु

A long -uu following a consonant is written with the symbol ू underneath the consonant symbol, e.g.,

Note that a short -u and a long -uu after the consonant r are written differently, as follows:

ru रु	ruu रू
-------	--------

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. _____ yee kapRee jaldii caahiye.

I	Ram
you (familiar)	washerman
he	she
we	you (polite)
they	John

2. _____ kaa kiraayaa kitnaa hai?

this room	that fruit store
those rooms	this famous store
these rooms	this single room
these good rooms	these single rooms
this good room	this double room
that store	those good single rooms
that famous store	these good double rooms

3. _____ daam kyaa hai?

of these oranges of these seventeen stamps

of these shirts	of those good oranges
of these air letters	of fifteen postcards
of this envelope	of these seven handkerchiefs
of these twelve inland letters	of those undershirts
of those good shirts	

4. _____ kuch lifaafee dee diijiye.

me	them
him	her
John	the washerman
us	Ram

5. māī _____ kuch rupae deetaa hūū.

him	her
you (polite)	Ram
them	you (familiar)

6. kyaa aap kee paas _____ hāī?

inland letters	some new clothes
some air letters	some new pice
ten postcards	twenty rupees
fifteen envelopes	thirty new pice

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes, if necessary:

1. _____ kuch antardeēšīiy patr leenaa caahtaa hūū.

I (masc.)	you (fem., polite)
he	we (masc.)
you (fem., familiar)	they (fem.)
they (masc.)	you (masc., polite)

she	we (fem.)
I (fem.)	you (masc., familiar)

2. _____ yee kamraa lee saktaa hūū.

I (masc.)	you (fem., familiar)
we (fem.)	we (masc.)
John	she
you (fem., polite)	you (masc., polite)
they (masc.)	they (fem.)
I (fem.)	you (masc., familiar)

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

woo bazaar jaa saktaa hai woo bazaar jaanaa caahtaa hai.

1. woo kuch lifaafee xariid saktaa hai.
2. woo yee kamraa lee saktaa hai.
3. woo yee kapRee likh saktaa hai.
4. woo kyaa kar saktaa hai?
5. woo hooTal mēē aa saktaa hai.
6. woo yee siggil kamraa deekh saktaa hai.
7. woo yahāā kaam kar saktaa hai.
8. woo mujhee kuch poost kaard dee saktaa hai.
9. woo sun saktaa hai.
10. woo bas-istaap mēē ruk saktaa hai.

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

mujhee kuch lifaafee caahiye ... māī kuch lifaafee caahtaa hūū.

1. mujhee das poost kaard caahiye.
2. mujhee pāāc kamiizēē caahiye.

3. mujhee yee kapRee jaldii caahiye.
4. mujhee kuch miithe santaree caahiye.
5. mujhee yee rupae caahiye.
6. mujhee pandraa hawaaii patr caahiye.
7. mujhee sabhii suwidhaaēē caahiye.
8. mujhee eek singil kamraa caahiye.
9. mujhee baaraa antardeešiiy patr caahiye.
10. mujhee tumhaaree kapRee caahiye.

E. Translate orally:

1. I want to buy some envelopes, air letters, etc.
2. Please go to the next window.
3. Do you want anything else?
4. Money orders are accepted here.
5. Give me fifteen five-new-pice stamps.
6. Do you have inland letters as well.
7. How many inland letters do you need?
8. How much does this cost?
9. It costs thirty rupees.
10. He can go to the next store.
11. These are ten-new-pice stamps.
12. Can I buy some shirts in this store?
13. My wife can wait here.
14. Can he come in this room?
15. Do you want these clothes back soon?
16. What is the rent of this single room?
17. Can he go to the bazaar?
18. Its rent is ten rupees a day.

19. Please write down these trousers, shirts, under-shirts, etc.

20. Can I buy some clothes from this store.

F. Read the following:

सदर	साथ	सभी
बहुत	जाना	भी
तीन	जी	साहब
दूर	दुकान	टिकट
खमाल	ठीक	मिनट
तीस	फिर	बीस
पर	की	ही
कुल	चार	मील
तुम	हम	मीठा
जाता	मीठी	जाती

LESSON VII

Conversation -- At the Bus Station

BILL

bataanaa to tell
 ki that (conjunction)
 aagraa Agra
 mileegii will be available

suniyee, kyaa aap bataa Pardon me. Can you tell me
 saktee hāi ki aagree kee where I will get a bus
 liyee bas kahāā mileegii? for Agra?

CLERK

jii, yahī mileegii. Yes, right here.

BILL

deer delay, duration
 jaaeegii will go

kitnii deer mēē jaaeegii? When will it leave?

CLERK

ghaNtaa hour
 eek ghaNTee mēē. In an hour.
 bajaa o'clock
 chuuTeegii will leave
 Thiik aaTh bajee It will leave at eight
 chuuTeegii. o'clock sharp.

nambar number
 pleeTfaarm platform
 calee jaanaa to go away

aap pāāc nambar kee Please go to platform No.5.
 pleeTfaarm par calee
 jaaiyee.

taiyaar

wahāā bas taiyaar
 mileegii.

TikaT

kyaa aap kee paas
 TikaT hai?

abhi nahī, TikaT kahāā
 miltee hāi.

na

aagree kee liyee na?

kee saamnee

saamnee čaar nambar kii
 khiRkii par.

kiraayaa

aagree kaa kiraayaa kyaa
 hai?

kis

darjaa

pahlaa

duusraa

kis darjee kaa, pahlee yaa Which class, first or
 duusree? second?

pahlee darjee kaa.

zaraa

ready

You'll find the bus ready
 there.

ticket

Do you have a ticket?

BILL

Not yet. Where do I get
 the tickets?

CLERK

aren't they

They're for Agra, aren't
 they?

in front of

At window No. 4, in front
 of you.

BILL

fare

What's the fare to Agra?

CLERK

which

class

first

second

BILL

First class.

CLERK

a little

Thahrnaa	to wait, stay
zaraa Thahriyee, abhii bataataa hūū.	Please wait a little. I'll tell you in a moment.
lagbhag	approximately, nearly, about
lagēēgee	will cost
lagbhag tiin rupaeē lagēēgee.	It will cost (you) about three rupees.

BILL

bahut acchaa, dhanyawaad All right, thank you.

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

samai	time
waxt	time

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

<u>Masc. I</u>		<u>Fem. I</u>
aagraa	Agra	deer (no plural) delay, duration
ghaNtaa	hour	
bajaa	o'clock	
darjaa	class	

Masc. II

nambar	number
pleeffaarm	platform
samai (no plural)	time
waxt (no plural)	time

2. New Verbs

bataanaa	to tell
chuufnaa	to leave
Thahrnaa	to wait, stay

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| lagnaa | to cost |
|--------|---------|
3. New Adjectives in -aa
- | | |
|---------|--------|
| pahlaa | first |
| duusraa | second |
4. Pronominal Adjectives

The Hindi equivalents of the English "my," "your" (familiar), and "our" are respectively meeraa, tumhaaraa, and hamaaraa.

These forms in Hindi have the same inflection as any adjective in -aa (e.g., meeraa, meeree, meerii), and the forms are used the same as adjectives.

meeraa kamraa acchaa hai.	My room is good.
meeree kapRee acchee hāī.	My clothes are good.
meerii dukaan mašhuur hai.	My store is a famous one.
meeree kamree mēē sabhii suwidhaaēē hāī.	My room has all the conveniences.

These are the only personal pronouns that have a special adjective form.

Adjective forms for other pronouns and also for nouns are formed by using the postposition kaa, "of."

meeraa naam raam naath hai.	My name is Ram Nath.
us kaa naam raam naath hai.	His name is Ram Nath.
kyaa aap kaa naam raam naath hai?	Is your name Ram Nath?
dhoobii kaa naam raam naath hai.	The washerman's name is Ram Nath.

5. Postpositions

Certain postpositions in Hindi are best considered as compound postpositions and learned in the compound form. So far you have met the following:

kee liyee	for
kee paas	at

kee saamnee	in front of
kee saath	with
kee andar	in, inside
aagree kee liyee TikaT kahãã miltee hãï?	Where do you get the tickets for Agra?
hooTal kee saamnee bas miltii hai.	You can get the bus in front of the hotel.

Since the forms meeraa, tumhaaraa, and hamaaraa are used where other forms employ the postposition kaa, "of," the oblique forms meeree, tumhaaree, and hamaaree are used along with the postposition but without the kee.

raam kaa kamraa	Ram's room
us kaa kamraa	his room
meeraa kamraa	my room
raam kee saath	with Ram
us kee saath	with him
meeree saath	with me

Other examples are:

us kee liyee	for him
meeree liyee	for me
aap kee saamnee	in front of you (polite)
dhoobii kee saamnee	in front of the washer-man
tumharee saamnee	in front of you (familiar)
hamaaree saamnee	in front of us
meeree saath	with me
meerii patnii kee saath	with my wife

The compound postposition kee paas is used in constructions where the English equivalent uses the verb "have."

kyaa aap kee paas TikaT hai? Do you have a ticket?

The Hindi construction is literally "Is there a ticket at you?" This construction in Hindi is the usual one that will equate with the English verb "have" when referring to objects that are personally owned or possessed.

meeree paas TikaT hãï. I have the tickets.

kyaa tumhaaree paas phal hãï? Do you have some fruit?

meerii patnii kee paas kuch acchee kapRee hãï. My wife has some good clothes.

Many of the compound postpositions may be used without either the preceding kee or a preceding noun or pronoun, and in this case they are likely to equate with English adverbs. Cf. the above saamnee, saath, andar and paas are used this way, where saamnee equates with the English "in front," saath with "along," andar with "in," "inside," and paas with "near," "nearby."

saamnee çaar nambar kii khiRkii par. At window No. 4, in front (opposite).

andar aaiyee. Come in.

saath hii kuch santaree bhii dee diijiyee. Give (me) some oranges as well (along with other things).

paas aaiyee. Come near (or nearer).

6. Optative

Hindi has an optative form made from the stem of a verb with the addition of endings for person and number as follows:

	Sg.	Pl.
1st Per.	deekhũũ	deekhẽẽ
2nd Per.	--	deekhoo
3rd Per.	deekhee	deekhẽẽ

The verbs leenaa, "to take," and deenaa, "to give," are irregular in that the person-number endings are added to the stem l- and d- instead of the regular stem lee and dee.

	Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
1st Per.	dūū	dēē	lūū	dēē
2nd Per.	-	doo	-	doo
3rd Per.	dee	dēē	lee	dēē

The verb hona, "to be," has irregular forms as follows:

	Sg.	Pl.
1st Per.	hūū, hooūū	hōō
2nd Per.	--	hoo
3rd Per.	hoo	hōō

One of the main uses of the optative is in the formation of the future tense of the verbs.

7. Future Tense

The future in Hindi is formed by adding the particle -gaa, -gee, or -gii to the optative form. The particle -gaa agrees with the subject in number and gender in the same way that an imperfect form like deekhtaa agrees with the subject.

	Masc. Sg.	Masc. Pl.
1st Per.	deekhūūgaa	deekhēēgee
2nd Per.	--	deekhoogee
3rd Per.	deekheegaa	deekhēēgee
	Fem. Sg.	Fem. Pl.
1st Per.	deekhūūgii	deekhēēgii
2nd Per.	--	dekhoogii
3rd Per.	deekheegii	deekhēēgii

māī saat bajee bazaar jaaūūgaa.	I (masc.) will go to the bazaar at seven o'clock.
tum bazaar jaaogee.	You (masc.) will go to the bazaar.
ham phal xariidēēgee.	We (masc.) will buy (some) fruit.

bas kahāā mileegii?	Where will the bus be avail- able?
Thiik aaTh bajee chuuTeegii.	It'll leave at eight o'clock sharp.

8. Telling Time

To ask time in Hindi, any of the following expressions may be used:

kyaa waxt hai?	}	What time is it?
waxt kyaa hai?		
kyaa samai hai?		
samai kyaa hai?		
kyaa bajaa hai?		
kitnee bajee hāī?		

The answer to this question is expressed by using the numerals one to twelve followed by the work bajaa in the nominative case.

eek bajaa hai.	It's one o'clock.
doo bajee hāī.	It's two o'clock.
gyaaraa bajee hāī.	It's eleven o'clock.

To state "at a certain time," the same expression, with bajaa in the oblique case, is used. The practical result of using the oblique case is that only the expression "one o'clock" is affected.

eek bajee	at one o'clock
tiin bajee	at three o'clock
nau bajee	at nine o'clock
Thiik aaTh bajee	at eight o'clock sharp

9. Use of na

The negative particle na may be used at the end of any statement equating with the English "isn't it," "isn't he," "aren't you," "aren't they," etc.

aagree kee liyee na?	They're for Agra, aren't they?
----------------------	-----------------------------------

aap jaatee hāī na? You are going, aren't you?
 wee yahīī kaam kartee They work here, don't they?
 hāī na?

10. Interrogative kaun

The interrogative kaun, like yee and woo, can be used as an adjective as well as a pronoun. When used as an adjective, like yee and woo, the nominative form is used with a noun in the nominative case and the oblique form with a noun in the oblique case. Compare:

yee kamraa	this room
is kamree mēē	in this room
kaun kamraa	which room
kis kamree mēē	in which room
kis darjee kaa	of which class

As an adjective the form kaun means "which" or "what."

11. Writing System

Other consonant symbols are:

kha	ख	Dha	ढ
ga	ग	dha	घ
gha	घ	ya	य
cha	च	wa	व
jha	ज	śa	झ
Da	ड		

The following consonants since they occur only in borrowings, usually from Sanskrit, do not occur with as high a frequency as the others you have learned:

Na	ण	śa	ष
----	---	----	---

In Hindi, the symbol given for śa ष is pronounced the same as the earlier symbol śa श but is used in writing certain words borrowed from Sanskrit, none of which you have met yet.

The symbols for Ra and Rha are the same as the

symbols for Da and Dha except that they are written with a dot underneath them.

Ra	ड़	Rha	ढ़
----	----	-----	----

The symbols for fa, za, and xa are as follows:

fa	फ़
za	ज़
xa	ख़

Notice that these are the symbols for pha, ja, and kha, respectively, except that they are written with a dot underneath them. Frequently in Hindi the dot will be omitted for fa, za, and xa, but not for Ra and Rha.

The vowel -ee following the consonant is written with the symbol ē over the consonant symbol, e.g.,

kee	क़े	see	से
wee	वे	dee	दे

The vowel -ai following the consonant is written with the symbol ā over the consonant symbol, e.g.,

kai	क़ा	hai	हा
pai	पा	gai	गा

The vowel -oo following the consonant is written with the symbol ō after the consonant symbol, e.g.,

koo	को	doo	दो
loo	लो	khoo	खो

The vowel -au following the consonant is written with the symbol ā after the consonant symbol, e.g.,

dau	दा	kau	का
jau	जा	Thau	ठा

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below, the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. _____ bas kahāā mileegii?

for Agra	for the Nagpur Hotel
for the Sadar Bazaar	for the Ajmer Hotel
for the hotel	for the famous hotel
for the bazaar	for that hotel

2. bas _____ chuuTeegii.

in an hour	at seven o'clock
in about an hour	at eleven o'clock
in about two hours	at four o'clock
in about three hours	at eight o'clock
at six o'clock	at twelve o'clock
at two o'clock	at ten o'clock
at five o'clock	at three o'clock
at nine o'clock	at one o'clock

3. kyaa _____ TikaT hai?

you (polite)	you (familiar)
she	they
John	he
Ram	we
I	

4. woo yee kapRee _____.

will write	can give
will take	can take
will give	can buy
will buy	can see
will see	can write

5. ham hooTal mēē _____.

will stop	will stay
-----------	-----------

will work	can work
-----------	----------

can stay	can stop
----------	----------

6. _____ naam kyaa hai?

his	the hotel's
your (polite)	the store's
her	the fruit store's
the washerman's	of that hotel
your (familiar)	of that store

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes if necessary:

1. _____ aagree kee liyee eek TikaT xariidūgaa.

I (masc.)	we (masc.)
you (familiar, fem.)	you (fem., polite)
he	they (masc.)
we (fem.)	I (fem.)
you (masc., polite)	you (masc., familiar)
she	they (masc.)

2. kyaa _____ mujhee kapRee dee saktaa hai?

he	they (fem.)
you (fem., familiar)	John
they (masc.)	you (fem., polite)
she	you (masc., familiar)
you (masc., polite)	the washerman

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

kyaa tum dukaan mēē kaam ... kyaa tum dukaan mēē kaam
kartee hoo? karoogee?

1. kyaa tum bazaar jaatee hoo?

2. kyaa tum dhoobii koo kapRee deetee hoo?
3. kyaa tum dukaan see phal xariidtee hoo?
4. kyaa tum mujhee bataatee hoo?
5. kyaa tum suntee hoo?
6. kyaa tum pleeffaarm par Thahrtee hoo?
7. kyaa tum yee kapRee jaldii caahtee hoo?
8. kyaa tum hooTal kee kamree deekhtee hoo?
9. kyaa tum kuch deer yahāā ruktee hoo?
10. kyaa tum abhii aatee hoo?

D. Transform the following sentences to sentences with caahiye construction, according to the model given:

māi kuch phal caahtaa hūū ... mujhee kuch phal caahiye.

1. woo kuch kapRee caahtaa hai.
2. tum kyaa caahtee hoo?
3. māi pāāc poosT kaarD caahtii hūū.
4. kyaa raam pahlee darjee kaa TikaT caahtaa hai?
5. woo kuch santaree caahtii hai.
6. ham eek Dabal kamraa caahtee hāi.
7. kyaa aap yee kapRee caahtee hāi?
8. wee pandraa rupaae caahtee hāi.
9. ham agree kee doo TikaT caahtii hāi.
10. wee kyaa caahtee hāi?

E. Transform the following sentences to future tense sentences according to the model given:

woo TikaT xariid saktaa ... woo TikaT xariid sakeegaa. hai.

1. tum kaarD, lifaafee aadi lee saktee hoo.
2. uskii patnii yahāā Thahr saktii hai.

3. kyaa aap bazaar jaa saktee hāi?
4. māi aap koo antardeešiiy patr dee saktaa hūū?
5. kyaa woo kapRee likh saktii hai?
6. ham kuch bataa saktii hāi.
7. kyaa māi hooTal kaa kaam kar saktii hūū?
8. tum yee kamraa lee saktii hoo.
9. ham is dukaan mēē kapRaa deekh saktee hāi.
10. kyaa wee kuch kah saktee hāi?

F. Translate orally

1. The bus will leave at six o'clock sharp.
2. The fare to Agra is three rupees.
3. I want a first-class ticket for Agra.
4. The tickets are available at window No. 4, in front of you.
5. It'll cost (you) about eighteen rupees.
6. Please go to window No. 4, in front of you.
7. I can buy six shirts and five pairs of pants.
8. Please give me seventeen five-new-pice stamps.
9. How many inland letters do you want?
10. Do you have some postcards, envelopes, etc.
11. What is the fare to Nagpur?
12. Can you tell me where I'll get a bus to Ajmer?
13. The bus stops at platform No. 13.
14. This is a second-class ticket.
15. Can she tell me where the bus stop is?

G. Read the following:

लिफाफा

नौ

तरफ

कूटगी

देना

कुछ

मुझे	ख़ाली	मेरी
फल	ख़रीदो	या
कैसा	लो	घोबी
डबल	कमीज़	पैदल
के	मेरे	बताता
कहेगी	दोगे	दोगी
देर	सुनो	दो
देखो	होटल	लोगी
को	होना	सुविधा
है	रहे	लोगे
ख़रीदोगे	लिखोगे	किराया
से	लेना	जोड़ा
केवल	सीधे	मीठे
मोज़े	रोज़	लिफ़ाफ़े
नया	बताना	पैसा
वाला	कि	बजा
मिलेगी	तैयार	न
किस	ज़रा	लगेगी
लिखेगा	होगी	मोज़ा
मेरा	जोड़ा	सकेगा
चाहेगी	करो	रुको
लिखो	कहेगा	छूटेगा
करेगा	लेगी	देगा
होगा	सकेगी	कहो
चाहेगा	ख़रीदेगा	रुकोगे
सकोगे	कहोगे	बजे
जोड़े	मेरा	हो

LESSON VIII

Conversation -- Going for a walk

BILL

haalcaal	welfare
namastee, kahiye, kyaa haalcaal hai?	Hello, how are you?

RAM NATH

sab	all
kaisaa	how
sab Thiik hai; aap kaisee hāī?	I'm fine; how are you?

BILL

acchaa hūū	I'm fine.
jaa rahee hāī	(you) are going
aap kahāā jaa rahee hāī?	Where are you going?

RAM NATH

ghuumnaa	to walk
calnaa	to go
ghuumnee jaa rahaa hūū.	I'm going for a walk.
cal rahee hāī	are going
kyaa aap bhii ghuumnee cal rahee hāī?	Are you also going for a walk?

BILL

apnaa	my, one's
mitr	friend
milnaa	to meet, to see (a person)
jii nahīī, māī is samai apnee eek mitr see	No, right now I'm going to meet a friend of mine.

milnee jaa rahaa hūū.	
zaruurii	important
mujhee un see kuch zaruurii kaam hai.	I have some important work with him.
baad, kee baad	after
baahar	out, outside
aur eek ghaNtee baad hii wee baahar calee jaaēēgee.	And he is going out in an hour.
kidhar	which direction
aap kidhar jaa rahee hāī?	Which direction are you going?
RAM NATH	
māī neehruu paark tak jaaūūgaa.	I'm going to Nehru Park.
jaghaa	place
ghuumnee kee liyee woo jaghee acchii hai.	That's a good place for walking.
hameešaa	always
māī hameešaa wahīī jaataa hūū.	I always go there.
thooRaa	little
saath deenaa	to accompany
tab Thiik hai, māī thooRii duur tak aap kaa saath dūūgaa.	Then it's all right. I'll go a short distance with you.
ghar	house
usii	that (emphatic)
oor	direction
meeree mitr kaa ghar usii oor hai.	My friend's house is in that direction.

RAM NATH

calēē

let's go

bahut acchaa, caliyee, O.K., let's go there.
tab calēē.

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

Masc. II

mitr	friend
paark	park
ghar	house
saath (no plural)	company
haalcaal (no plural)	welfare

The word mitr may agree as either a masculine or feminine noun, but its inflection is always that of a type II masculine noun.

Fem. II

oor (no plural)	direction
-----------------	-----------

Irregular

The noun jaghaa, "place," has the following irregular forms:

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	jaghaa, jaghee	jaghēē
Obl.	jaghee	jaghōō

2. New Verbs

rahnaa	to stay, to live
ghuumnaa	to walk
milnaa	to meet, to see (a person)

2.1. New Compound Verbs

Type II

saath deenaa	to accompany
--------------	--------------

3. New Adjectives in -aa

kaisaa	how
apnaa	one's
thooRaa	little

4. New Postpositions

baad, kee baad	after
tak	up to, as far as
kee baahar	outside

The postposition kee baad, "after," when used with expressions of time and distance may occur either as kee baad or as baad but in other expressions only as kee baad.

eek ghaNTee kee baad wee baahar calee jaaēēgee.	} He'll go out in an hour.
eek ghaNTee baad wee baahar calee jaaēēgee.	

aap see milnee kee baad māī I'll go to the market
bazaar jaaūūgaa. after meeting you.

The form kee baahar, "outside," may be used as a postposition along with a noun or pronoun, and the form baahar by itself may be used as an adverb.

eek ghaNTee baad wee baahar He will go out in an
calee jaaēēgee. hour.

hooTal kee baahar hii The bus-stop is right
bas-isTaap hai. outside the hotel.

5. Present Progressive

Hindi has a present progressive tense that is made up of three parts. The first part is the stem of the verb and is the form that carries the basic meaning. The second part is the perfect form of the verb rahnaa "to stay," "to live." The perfect has the masculine singular form rahaa and is inflected for number and gender like the imperfect, i.e., rahaa, rahee, rahi and in this use it is simply an auxiliary imparting a progressive meaning to the construction. The third part is the simple present of the verb honaa, "to be," with its usual inflection. The Hindi present progres-

sive form is usually used where English uses its present progressive "am going," "is going," "are going."

Masc.

	Sg.	Pl.
1st Per.	jaa rahaa hūū	jaa rahee hāī
2nd Per.	--	jaa rahee hoo
3rd Per.	jaa rahaa hai	jaa rahee hāī

Fem.

	Sg.	Pl.
1st Per.	jaa rahii hūū	jaa rahii hāī
2nd Per.	--	jaa rahii hoo
3rd Per.	jaa rahii hai	jaa rahii hāī

aap kahāā jaa rahee hāī? Where are you going?

woo phal xariid rahaa He is buying fruit.
hai.

ham is kamree mēē We are working in this
kaam kar rahee hāī. room.

māī dhoobii koo kapRee I'm giving the clothes to
dee rahii hūū. the washerman.

6. Infinitive

The infinitive in Hindi is often used as a noun and has a nominative form ending in -aa and an oblique form in -ee, e.g., jaanaa, jaanee.

The oblique form of the infinitive is used with postpositions:

ghuumnee kee liyee woo That's a good place for
jaghee acchii hai. walking.

māī phal leenee kee liyee I'm going to the bazaar
bazaar jaa rahaa hūū. to buy some fruit.

aap see milnee kee baad She'll go to the bazaar
woo bazaar jaaeegii. after meeting you.

The infinitive in the oblique form with the postposition kee liyee, "for," equates with the English

"to," "in order to" and is common with verbs of motion. In such expressions the infinitive may be used in the oblique form omitting the postposition kee liyee.

māī ghūmnee kee liyee jaa rahaa hūū	} I'm going for a walk (I'm going to take a walk).
māī ghūmnee jaa rahaa hūū.	

7. The Verb milnaa

The verb milnaa may have the meaning "to see a person," or "to meet a person." In this use the person met will be expressed by using the postposition see.

māī is samai apnee eek mitr see milnee jaa rahaa hūū.	Right now I'm going to meet a friend of mine (to see a friend of mine).
---	---

māī aaTh bajee raam see milūūgaa.	I'll meet Ram at eight o'clock.
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------

The verb milnaa also has the meaning "to be available," "to get." In this use the thing that is available is the subject of the verb, i.e., it is in the nominative case and the verb agrees with it. The person who gets something is in the dative case.

bas kohāā mileegii?	Where will the bus be available (where can I, or anybody, get a bus).
---------------------	---

mujhee acchee santaree kohāā milēēgee?	Where can I get good oranges?
---	-------------------------------

8. "To have work"

Note the following sentence taken from the basic conversation in this lesson:

mujhee un see kuch zaruurii kaam hai.	I have some important work with him.
--	---

The subject of the English sentence is in the dative case in Hindi and the prepositional phrase introduced by "with" in English is expressed by a postpositional phrase using see in Hindi.

9. Emphatic Forms with hii

There are two more emphatic forms in this lesson.

Non-emphatic	Emphatic
sab	sabhi
us	usii

Some other pronouns have similar emphatic forms.

Non-emphatic	Emphatic
is	isii
in	inhii
un	unhii
ham	hamii, hamhii

10. Polite Forms

When referring to a single person as third person, it is a more polite usage to refer to the person in the plural than to refer to him or her in the singular.

eek ghaNTee baad wee baahar calee jaaēēgee. (Polite)	} He will go out in an hour.
eek ghaNTee baad wee baahar calaa jaaeegaa.	

mujhee un see kuch zaruurii kaam hai. (Polite)	} I have some urgent work with him.
mujhee us see kuch zaruurii kaam hai.	

meeree saath meerii patnii bhii hāī. (Polite)	} My wife is also with me.
meeree saath meerii patnii bhii hai.	

11. Use of apnaa

The form apnaa is a reflexive adjectival form referring to the person who is the subject of the verb. This means that in the first person and the second person the form apnaa must be used instead of meeraa "my," hamaaraa "our," tumhaaraa "your" (familiar), and aap kaa "your" (polite) if the person referred to is the same person as the subject of the main verb.

māī apnee ghar jaaūgaa. I'll go to my house.

but

woo meeree ghar jaaeegaa. He will go to my house.

In the third person there is a difference in meaning between apnaa on the one hand and us kaa, un kaa, is kaa on the other hand. apnaa refers to the same person as the subject of the main verb whereas the others refer to some other person.

woo apnee ghar jaataa Hai. He goes to his house (to his own house).

woo us kee ghar jaataa Hai. He goes to his house (somebody else's house).

12. Use of Oblique

With verbs of going, the place to which one goes is expressed in Hindi by the noun in the oblique case but without the postposition ko, "to."

māī us kee kamree jaa raha hūū. I'm going to his room.

woo bazaar jaanaa caahtaa hai. He wants to go to the market.

māī aagree jaanaa caahtaa hūū. I want to go to Agra.

13. Writing System

13.1. Vowels

The vowel symbols previously discussed may only be used for a vowel that immediately follows a consonant. When a vowel occurs initially in a word or immediately after another vowel, Devanagari uses the following symbols:

a	अ	ee	ए
aa	आ	ai	ऐ
i	इ	oo	ओ
ii	ई	au	औ
u	उ		
uu	ऊ		

Examples:

ab	अब	aur	और
aap	आप	jaao	जाओ
is	इस	jaaee	जाए
us	उस	kooi	कोई
eek	एक	rupaee	रुपए
oor	ओर	aaiyee	आइए

13.2. Nasalization

Nasalization of long vowels in Hindi is indicated by using the normal writing for the vowel and a dot placed above the horizontal line for the nasalization as follows:

mēē	में	daaīī	दाई
māī	मैं	lūūgaa	लूंगा
hūū	हूं	kamiizōō	कमीजों
hāā	हां	jaaūūgaa	जाऊंगा
nahīī	नहीं	jaaēēgēe	जाएंगे
kahāā	कहां	pāāc	पांच

In printed Hindi this dot is sometimes replaced by the symbol $\underset{\cdot}{\smile}$ although this symbol is not usually found on typewriters.

The same dot is used to indicate a nasal consonant after a short vowel and before another consonant. Note that in this case the dot is printed over the preceding consonant or vowel symbol.

andar	अंदर	sigil	सिंगिल
pasand	पसंद	ghaNNTaa	घंटा

13.3. Consonant Clusters

When one consonant immediately follows another consonant in Hindi, the first one will be written with the normal consonant symbol even though there is no following -a in the spoken form. It is only in this position and in final position that the consonant does not imply a following vowel -a.

ruktaa	रुक्ता	kapRaa	कपड़ा
kartaa	करता	karnaa	करना
itnaa	इतना	kitnaa	कितना
kamraa	कमरा	apnee	अपने

Not all consonant combinations are written this way but other writings will be discussed later.

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

- _____ mitr kaa ghar usii oor hai.

my	John's
his	their
our	her
your (familiar)	your (polite)
- māī _____ jaa rahaa hūū.

to take a walk	to see the hotel
to see his friend	to buy some clothes
to buy some fruit	
- woo _____ milnaa caahtaa hai.

my friend	John's friends
her friend	your friends (polite)
our friend	their friends
my friends	John's friend
your friends (familiar)	his own friends
her friends	their friend
our friends	his own friend
- yee jaghee _____ bahut acchii hai.

to take a walk	to work
----------------	---------

to wait	to write a letter
to stop	to meet him
to buy clothes	to live

- _____ wee baahar calee jaaēēgee.

in an hour	after meeting me
in two hours	after taking a walk in the park
after some time	after buying fruit
- māī _____ jaa rahaa kūū.

to Nehru Park	to the bus stop
to the market	very far
to the store	Agra
- mujhee _____ kuch zaruurii kaam hai.

with him	with his friend
with you (familiar)	with your friends (familiar)
with John	with their friends
with them	with John's friends
with you (polite)	with him and his wife
with Ram	with the dhobi

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes, if necessary:

- _____ paark mēē ghuum rahaa hai.

John	we (masc.)
she	I (fem.)
I (masc.)	you (masc., familiar)
we (fem.)	they (fem.)
they (masc.)	you (masc., polite)
you (fem., familiar)	he

2. _____ yahāā kitnii deer Thahreegii.

the bus	your friend
you (masc., familiar)	his wife
they (fem.)	the washerman
you (masc., polite)	his friend
she	your wife
they (masc.)	John

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

woo kaam kartaa hai woo kaam kar rahaa hai.

1. woo paark mēē ghuumtaa hai.
2. woo apnee kamree kaa kiraayaa deetaa hai.
3. woo bazaar mēē kuch kapRee xariidtaa hai.
4. woo apnee mitr see miltaa hai.
5. woo kapRee likhtaa hai.
6. woo apnee kamree mēē Thahrtaa hai.
7. woo mujhee kamree kaa kiraayaa bataataa hai.
8. woo kuch lifaafee aur poost kaard leetaa hai.
9. woo apnee mitr see milnee jaataa hai.
10. woo kyaa kahtaa hai?

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

māi bazaar jaataa hūū māi bazaar jaaūūgaa.

1. māi apnee mitr see miltaa hūū.
2. māi satraa antardeēšiiy patr leetaa hūū.
3. māi kamree kaa kiraayaa deetaa hūū.
4. māi neehruu paark deekhtaa hūū.
5. māi apnee kamree mēē ruktaa hūū.

6. māi kuch hawaaii patr xariidtaa hūū.

7. māi yahāā see baaīī taraf jaataa hūū.

8. māi apnee ghar aataa hūū.

9. māi yee kaam kar saktaa hūū.

10. māi apnii patnii see kuch kahtaa hūū.

E. Transform the following sentences from the caahnaa to the saknaa construction according to the model given:

woo likhnaa caahtaa hai woo likh saktaa hai.

1. māi ghuumnee jaanaa caahtaa hūū.
2. us kii patnii usee kuch rupae deenaa caahtii hai.
3. raam apnee mitr see milnaa caahtaa hai.
4. aap mujhee kyaa bataanaa caahtee hāī?
5. tum kuch zaruurii kaam karnaa caahtii hoo.
6. wee yee mašhuur paark deekhnaa caahtee hāī.
7. meeraa mitr kuch patr aur lifaafee xariidnaa caahtaa hai.
8. ham is ghar mēē rahnaa caahtee hāī.
9. kyaa tum yee kapRee likhnaa caahtee hoo?
10. māi yee siggil kamraa leenaa caahtii hūū.
11. kyaa us kii patnii yahāā Thahrnaa caahtii hai.
12. kyaa woo meeree ghar aanaa caahtaa hai?
13. wee aagree kaa TikaT leenaa caahtee hāī?
14. ham paark mēē ghuumnaa caahtee hāī?
15. kyaa tumhaarii mitr yahāā ruknaa caahtii hai?
16. kyaa aap kuch sunnaa caahtee hāī?
17. dhoobii kapRee leenaa caahtaa hai.
18. ham pāāc bajee aap see milnaa caahtee hāī.
19. māi yahāā see pāāc miil duur jaanaa caahtaa hūū.

20. kyaa aap dhoobii koo kapRee deenaa caahtee hāī?

F. Translate orally

1. He has some important work with my friend.
2. Your friend will go to the hotel at five o'clock.
3. His wife likes to take a walk in this park.
4. I'll go with you a short distance.
5. Our hotel is in that direction.
6. I want to meet my friend in my house.
7. Let's go to the bazaar.
8. He'll go out after an hour.
9. Will you be there at nine o'clock?
10. I'll give you some envelopes, air letters and stamps.

G. Read the following:

1. वहीं एक होटल है ।
2. फल की दुकान कहां है ?
3. मैं घूमने जाना चाहता हूँ ।
4. अजमेरी होटल यहां से बहुत दूर नहीं है ।
5. इनका दाम पांच रुपए है ।
6. हम मीठे संतरे खरीदना चाहते हैं ।
7. एक मिनट रुको ।
8. अभी तुम को सात कमीजें, पांच बनियाइयें आदि देता हूँ ।
9. राम ही इस होटल का धोबी है ।
10. बस यहीं मिलती है ।
11. उसके पास कोई कमरा खाली नहीं है ।
12. राम कैसा कमरा चाहता है ?
13. इन कमरों में सभी सुविधाएं हैं ।
14. इस कमरे का किराया केवल दस रुपए रोज है ।

15. मैं कुछ लिफाफे ले रहा हूँ ।
16. ये दस नर पैसे वाले टिकट हैं ।
17. राम नाथ थोड़ी देर बाद बाहर जाना चाहता है ।
18. आपको वहां बस तैयार मिलेगी ।
19. मैं राम के घर जा रही हूँ ।
20. ये रहे आपके टिकट और लिफाफे ।

REVIEW II

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. _____ kaa ghar usii oor hai.

my friend	this washerman
his friends	Ram's wife
your (familiar) friends	their friends
their friend	his friend
the washerman	our friend's wife
your (polite) wife	John's wife

2. kyaa _____ kuch rupae hāī?

he	your wife
the washerman	she
you (polite)	her friends
his friend	Ram's wife
you (familiar)	their wives
they	our friends
John	your friend
the washerman	this washerman

3. gaaRii _____ chuuTeegii.

at what time	at eleven o'clock
--------------	-------------------

at ten o'clock	at three o'clock
at five o'clock	at nine o'clock
at twelve o'clock	at four o'clock
at seven o'clock	at eight o'clock
at two o'clock	at one o'clock

4. meere mitr _____ taiyaar hāī.
 to take a walk to buy some clothes
 to go to the bazaar to see the houses
 to stay in this hotel to work in the fruitstore
 to meet Ram to tell me something
 to write a letter to live in this house

5. _____ wee is hooTal mēē aaēēgee.
 in an hour in ten hours
 in three hours in two hours
 in some time in seven hours
 in five hours in four hours

6. _____ daam kitnaa huaa?
 of these postcards of a ticket to Agra
 of one dozen inland letters of these undershirts
 of these shirts of one dozen handkerchiefs

7. tab _____ khiRkii par calee jaaiyee.
 next to the left
 first to the right
 second

8. _____ kuch rupaeē dee diijiyee.
 me my friend
 him my wife

us	her friend (masc.)
her	her friend (fem.)
them	John's washerman
the washerman	Ram's wife
John	our friend
his wife	our friends

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes, if necessary:

1. yee _____ bahut acchii hai.

store	socks
stores	shirts
handkerchief	house
trousers	handkerchiefs
shirt	houses
rooms	clothes
hotel	cloth

2. _____ raam kii dukaan see kuch phal lee rahaa hai.

he	I (masc.)
I (fem.)	you (fem., polite)
you (masc., polite)	they (fem.)
we (fem.)	my friend
they (masc.)	Ram's wife
you (fem., familiar)	my friend's wife
we (masc.)	

C. Transform the following sentences from the saknaa construction to future tense sentences according to the model given:

ham kuch phal xariid saktee hai ... ham kuch phal xariidēēgee.

1. raam meeree ghar mēē kaam kar saktaa hai.
2. kyaa woo phal xariidnee jaa saktii hai?
3. aap unhēē eek patr likh saktee hāī?
4. kyaa ham is ghar mēē aa saktee hāī?
5. jaan apnii patnii see kuch rupaae lee saktaa hai.
6. kyaa woo neehruu paark tak ghuumnee jaa saktii hai?
7. woo phal xariidnee kee liyee bazaar jaa saktii hai.
8. ham eek bajee tak bas-istāap mēē Thahr saktee hāī.
9. kyaa aap saat nambar kee pleetfaarm par ruk saktee hāī?
10. aap nau nambar kii khiRkii par aagree kee liyee TikaT xariid saktee hāī.
11. meeraa mitr aap koo is kamree kaa kiraayaa bataa saktaa hai.
12. kyaa tum paark tak meeraa saath dee saktee hoo?
13. ham sun saktee hāī.
14. dhoobii aap kee liyee kyaa kar saktaa hai?
15. kyaa woo yee singil kamraa deekh saktii hai?
16. māī is hooTal mēē rah saktaa hūū.

D. Transform the following present progressive tense sentences to present imperfect tense sentences according to the model given:

raam paark mēē ghuum rahaa ... raam paark mēē ghuumtaa hai. hai.

1. uskii patnii phal xariid rahii hai.
2. māī aagree kee liyee eek TikaT lee rahaa hūū.
3. kyaa woo patr likh rahaa hai?
4. uskaa mitr kahāā jaa rahaa hai?
5. jaan mujhee kaarD, lifaafēe aadi dee rahaa hai.

6. wee hooTal mēē kaam kar rahee hāī.
7. kyaa aap usee naagpur kaa kiraayaa bataa rahee hāī.
8. woo kyaa kah rahii hai?
9. kyaa jaan kii patnii bazaar jaa rahii hai.
10. māī apnee mitr koo patr likh rahaa hūū.

E. Transform the following sentences to present progressive tense sentences according to the model given:

woo baahar jaataa hai woo baahar jaa rahaa hai.

1. raam andar aataa hai.
2. ham paark mēē ghuumtee hāī.
3. woo aap hii kaa kaam kartii hai.
4. māī yee Dabal kamraa leetaa hūū.
5. tum dhoobii koo kuch rupaae deetee hoo.
6. kyaa aap pāāc rupaae rooz kaa kamraa leetee hāī?
7. aap is dukaan see kyaa xariidtii hāī?
8. jaan kaa mitr aap koo kyaa bataataa hai?
9. us kii patnii kyaa kahtii hai?
10. wee mitrōō koo patr likhtee hāī.
11. bas pāāc nambar kee pleetfaarm see chuuTtii hai.
12. ham neehruu paark jaatee hāī.
13. māī hooTal mēē kaam kartaa hūū.
14. raam kii patnii mujhee kuch phal deetii hai.
15. kyaa tum paark mēē ghuumtii hoo?
16. us kaa mitr kahāā rahtaa hai?

G. Translate orally:

1. I want to take a walk in Nehru Park.
2. Do you want to take a walk in Nehru Park?

3. My friend always takes a walk in Nehru Park.
4. Can he take a walk in Nehru Park?
5. She will always take a walk in this park.
6. John is taking a walk in this park.
7. They can take a walk in this park.
8. The hotel is not very far from here.
9. The hotel is very far from his house.
10. The hotel is about two miles from the bazaar.
11. He wants to buy a ticket.
12. I want to buy a ticket to Agra.
13. She wants to buy a first class ticket to Agra.
14. I'll buy a first class ticket to Agra.
15. Can he buy a first class ticket to Agra?
16. Is John buying a second class ticket to Agra?
17. He is going outside.
18. He is going outside in an hour.
19. She wants to go outside.
20. Does she want to go outside?

H. Conversation

1. A enters a post office and asks the clerk at the window to give him some air letters, postcards etc. The clerk directs him to another window. A goes there and asks for some postcards, envelopes, air letters, inland letters and stamps. The clerk gives them to A. A asks how much he has to pay. The clerk calculates and says that the cost is seventeen rupees. A pays the clerk and leaves the post office.
2. A enters a hotel. The manager seeing A coming says "hello," and asks him if he can do anything for him. A asks him if he has a room vacant in his hotel. The manager inquires about the kind of room A needs. A tells him that he needs a single

room. The manager takes him and shows him a room. He tells him that the room is a very good one and has all the conveniences. A asks the price of the room. The manager tells him that it is eight rupees a day. A likes the room and takes it.

3. A meets his friend B on the street. After an exchange of formal greetings, A asks B as to where he is going. B tells A that he is going for a walk and asks where A is going. A tells B that he is also going for a walk. B asks A to join him. A tells him that he wants to go to Nehru Park, which is a very good place for taking a walk, and asks B if he would like to go there. B agrees to go to Nehru Park and both of them walk off together.
4. A enters a bus station and approaches the clerk at the information window. He asks the clerk about the time and the place of the departure of the bus to Agra. The clerk gives him the proper details. A further asks him if he can give him a ticket to Agra. The clerk tells him to go to another counter where A buys a second class ticket to Agra and pays the fare.
5. A is waiting for a city bus at the bus stop. A bus comes along and A asks the conductor of the bus if it'll take him to the main bazaar. The conductor replies in the affirmative and A boards the bus. A asks the fare and is told that it's ten new pice. A pays the fare and asks the conductor to tell him where to get off. When the bus reaches the bazaar, the conductor tells him to get off. A thanks the conductor and leaves the bus.

I. Read the following:

1. वे एक घंटे बाद बाहर चले जाएंगे ।
2. मैं इसी दुकान से रुमाल खरीदूंगा ।
3. आगरे के लिए बस आठ बजे कूटेगी ।
4. मुझे पांच नए पैसे वाले तीस टिकट दे दो ।
5. राम एक सिंगिल कमरा लेना चाहता है ।
6. सामने सात नंबर की खिड़की पर आगरे के टिकट मिलते हैं ।
7. मैं थोड़ी दूर तक आपका साथ दूंगा ।
8. आप कैसा कमरा चाहते हैं - सिंगिल या डबल ?

9. आपका हालचाल कैसा है ?
10. मैं भी आपके साथ घूमने चलूंगा ।
11. मुझे उनसे कुछ ज़रूरी काम है ।
12. हमें कुछ मीठे संतरे कहाँ मिल सकते हैं ?
13. इन कमरों में सभी सुविधाएँ नहीं हैं ।
14. मैं ही इस होटल में काम करता हूँ ।
15. राम नाथ कुछ कपड़े लेना चाहता है ।
16. मैं इस दुकान में कुछ कपड़ा खरीदूंगा ।
17. आप किधर जा रहे हैं ?
18. मुझे भी उसी ओर काम है ।
19. बस कितनी देर में कूटेगी ?
20. जान घोबी को दस रूपए दे सकता है ।

LESSON IX

Conversation -- Going to the Station

JOHN

namastee Hello!
 kahiye, kahāā jaa rahee Where are you going?
 hāī?

RAM PAL

isTeeśan station
 baRaa big
 bhaaii brother
 isTeeśan. To the station.
 meeree baRee bhaaii aa My elder brother is coming.
 rahee hāī.
 unhēē leenee isTeeśan I'm going to the station to
 jaa rahaa hūū. get him.

JOHN

wee kahāā see aa rahee Where is he coming from?
 hāī?

RAM PAL

kaanpuur Kanpur
 wyaapaar business
 kaanpuur see. From Kanpur.
 wahāā wee wyaapaar kartee He has a business there.
 hāī.

JOHN

aisaa such, so
 aisaa, wee kyaa wyaapaar Is that so? What's his
 kartee hāī? business?

RAM PAL

kaanpuur mēē un kii kapRee He has a clothing store in
kii dukaan hai. Kanpur.

suutii cotton, of cotton
uunii woolen
reešmii silk, of silk
tarah kind

wee suutii, uunii reešmii He deals in all kinds of
--sabhii tarah kee cloth--cotton, woolen,
kapRee kaa kaam kartee silk etc.
hāī.

JOHN

akeelaa alone

kyaa wee akeeleē hii aa Is he coming alone?
rahee hāī?

RAM PAL

pariwaar family
baccaa child
naukar servant

jii nahīī, un kee saath No, his family is with him
un kaa pariwaar bhii --his wife, his two
hai--un kii patnii, un children and his servant.
kee doo baccee aur un
kaa naukar.

JOHN

acchaa, tab too aap koo O.K., then you should go
jaldii jaanaa caahiyeē. right away.

gaaRii train
hoonaa to be, become

gaaRii kaa waxt hoo rahaa It's getting to be train
hai. time.

RAM PAL

aagyaa permission

jii hāā, ab mujhee aagyaa Yes, I must go now.
diijiyeē.

namastee good-bye

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

chooTaa little
bahin sister
pati husband
ammāā, māā, maataa mother
pitaa, baap father
māābaap, maataapitaa parents
aadmii man
aurat woman
laRkaa boy, son
laRkii girl, daughter

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

Masc. I

baccaa child
laRkaa boy, son

Fem. I

gaaRii train
laRkii girl, daughter

Masc. II

isTeešan station
bhaaii brother
kaanpuur Kanpur
(no pl.)
wyaapaar business
pariwaar family
naukar servant
pitaa father

Fem. II

tarah kind
bahin sister
aagyaa permission
maataa mother
māā mother
ammāā mother
aurat woman

baap	father
pati	husband
māā-baap	parents
maataa-pitaa	parents
aadmii	man

2. New Adjectives in -aa

baRaa	big	aisaa	such, so
chooTaa	little	akeelaa	alone

3. Vocabulary Notes

3.1. Brother and Sister

When referring to a brother or a sister, it is customary to specify whether it's an elder or a younger brother, an elder or younger sister.

baRaa bhaaai	elder brother
chooTaa bhaaai	younger brother
baRii bahin	elder sister
chooTii bahin	younger sister

When addressing or referring to an older brother or older sister, the polite form of agreement (i.e., agreement of adjective and verb in the plural form) is always used.

When addressing a younger brother or sister, the familiar form of agreement rather than the polite form will be used.

When referring to a younger brother or sister among reasonably close friends, the familiar form of agreement will be used whereas under other conditions the polite form of agreement may be used.

3.2. Mother and Father

The most common word for mother is māā or ammāā. The alternative form maataa is used under formal conditions and on ceremonial occasions.

The form baap, "father," is generally considered

impolite and should be avoided in favor of pitaa, "father."

The compound form māā-baap, "parents," is a customary familiar form whereas maataa-pitaa, "parents," is used on formal and ceremonial occasions. The agreement for māā-baap, maataa-pitaa "parents," māā "mother" and pitaa "father" is always plural.

3.3. Husband and Wife

The term pati, "husband," will always use plural agreement whereas patnii, "wife," may use singular agreement on informal occasions.

3.4. Family

The term pariwaar, "family," may sometimes, as in the conversation in this lesson, include the family servant or the domestic servant.

3.5. Greeting

The term namastee is a polite salutation either on meeting or leaving a person usually accompanied by a gesture involving the putting of the palms of the hands together and raising them slightly. The gesture may be demonstrated by the instructor in the class.

3.6. Leave-taking

The expression mujhee aagvaa diijiye, literally "Please give me permission" is a formal expression of leave-taking and may be equated with the English "I must go now," "I have to leave" or some such similar expression.

3.7. jii

The word jii that you have met in expressions jii hāā and jii nahii is a particle of respect. These expressions may occur without jii in which case they are simply not as respectful as when used with jii.

When the words maataa, "mother," ammāā, "mother," and pitaa, "father," are used, it is customary in most situations to add this respectful particle, thus maataa jii, ammāā jii, pitaa jii. With the words bhaai, bahin, māā, baap, pati, patnii, and maataapitaa this particle jii is not normally used or, when used, has a special meaning.

4. The Verb "to have"

As noted earlier, the Hindi equivalent of the verb "to have" with possessable objects is a construction with kee paas and the verb hoonaa. When referring to persons the construction is a different one. The Hindi equivalent of "I have two brothers" is literally "my two brothers are."

meeree doo bhaaii hāī. I have two brothers.

meeree eek chooTii bahin hai. I have a younger sister.

With larger objects such as cars, houses, stores, farms etc. either construction may be used.

un kii kapRee kii dukaan hai.	} He has a clothing store.
un kee paas kapRee kii dukaan hai.	

Note the effect of word order on the following constructions:

aagree mēē meeree doo bhaaii hāī. I have two brothers in Agra.

meeree doo bhaaii aagree mēē hāī. My two brothers are in Agra.

kaanpuur mēē un kii dukaan hai. He has a store in Kanpur.

un kii dukaan kaanpuur mēē hai. His store is in Kanpur.

5. caahiye

As learnt in Lesson IV, 3., the form caahiye may equate with English "to need, to want, need."

mujhee phal caahiye. I need (want) fruit.

The form caahiye may also be used with a dependent infinitive, in which case it equates with English "should," "ought to." As in the preceding type of construction, the subject is in the dative case.

mujhee bazaar jaanaa caahiye. I should (ought to) go to the bazaar.

6. Writing System

The Hindi alphabet in its alphabetical order (reading from left to right) is as follows. The alphabet includes some symbols that have not been discussed yet.

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ
a	aa	i	ii	u	uu
	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ	
	ee	ai	oo	au	
		अं	अः		
		an	ah		
	क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
	ka	kha	ga	gha	ṅa
	च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
	ca	cha	ja	jha	(na)
	ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
	Ta	Tha	Da	Dha	Na
	त	थ	द	ध	न
	ta	tha	da	dha	na
	प	फ	ब	भ	म
	pa	pha	ba	bha	ma
		य	र	ल	व
		ya	ra	la	wa
		श	ष	स	ह
		śa	ṣa	sa	ha

6.1. The Consonant r

The consonant r besides being written र appears in two other forms. When the consonant r occurs immediately after another consonant, it is sometimes written with the symbol, attached to the lower part of the

vertical stroke, where possible, e.g.,

pra	प्र	dra	द्र
gra	ग्र	dhra	ध्र

The combinations tra and Tra are written in an irregular manner.

tra	त्र	mitr	मित्र
Tra	ट्र		

When the consonant r occurs immediately before another consonant, it is sometimes written with the symbol " attached above the consonant that follows:

rka	र्क	paark	पार्क
rja	र्ज	darjan	दर्जन
rDa	र्ड	kaarD	कार्ड
rdha	र्ध		
rma	र्म		

Note that this does not apply to all items where r immediately precedes or follows another consonant, e.g.,

kamraa	कमरा	karnaa	करना
kartaa	करता		

6.2. Consonant Combinations

Sometimes when one consonant occurs immediately followed by another instead of each consonant being written separately they are written by a combination of the two symbols. Usually, the two symbols are joined to each other side by side, but in the case of some combinations the second consonant is added below the first consonant. If the first consonant of the combination is normally written with a vertical stroke, the vertical stroke is dropped when it is joined to the second consonant. At first these combinations may appear strange, but in most cases the particular combinations are reasonably obvious. Those that occur in the first three lessons (all of which join in the horizontal direction) are:

kya	क्य	kyaa	क्या
ccha	च्छ	acchaa	अच्छा

nya	न्य	dhanyawaad	धन्यवाद
sTa	स्ट	bas-isTaap	बसस्टाप
mha	म्ह	tumhaaree	तुम्हारे

6.3. Initial s Plus Consonant

Words which begin with consonant s plus another consonant in their written form are pronounced in Hindi with an i vowel in front of the s. These words are always borrowings from Sanskrit, English or other languages.

stop	isTaap	स्टाप
station	isTeešan	स्टेशन

6.4. Nasal Consonant Plus a Consonant

When a nasal consonant follows a short vowel and immediately precedes another consonant in many cases it may be written with a consonant combination made up of the nasal consonant symbol plus the following consonant symbol instead of being written with the super-imposed dot, as follows:

santaraa	संतरा	or	सन्तरा
nambar	नंबर	or	नम्बर
pasand	पसंद	or	पसन्द
andar	अंदर	or	अन्दर
ghaNtaa	घंटा	or	घण्टा

Some combinations of nasal consonant followed by another consonant are always written in the consonant combination.

mha	म्ह	tumhaaree	तुम्हारे
ny	न्य	dhanyawaad	धन्यवाद

6.5. The Combination -iyee

The combination -iyee is sometimes written with the consonant symbol य and sometimes without it. Thus

liyee	लिये	or	लिये
diijiyee	दीजिये	or	दीजिये

jaaiyee जाइए or जाइये

6.6. The Demonstratives yee, woo

The nominative forms of the demonstratives yee, "this," and woo, "that," are not written in a manner consistent with their pronunciation.

	This		That	
Nom. Sg.	yee	यह	woo	वह
Nom. Pl.	yee	ये	wee	वे

When reading Hindi, many people use the reading pronunciation yah, wah for the nominative singular forms.

6.7. Irregular Spellings

The word bazaar in Hindi is sometimes pronounced bazaar and sometimes baazaar but is always written as if it were baazaar.

बाजार bazaar, baazaar

6.8. Hindi Numerals

The Hindi numerals are:

1	१	6	६
2	२	7	७
3	३	8	८
4	४	9	९
5	५	10	१०

The system is the same decimal system that is used in English, e.g.:

11	११	18	१८
15	१५	20	२०

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. wee _____ wyaapaar kartee hāī.

of all kinds of cloth

of cotton cloth

of silk cloth

of woolen cloth

of cotton and woolen cloth

2. un kee saath _____ bhii hai.
- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| his family | his servant |
| his wife | his brother's family |
| his younger brother | his sister's family |
| his younger sister | his friend |
| his son | his daughter |
3. _____ kaa waxt hoo rahaa hai.
- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| the train | the train for Nagpur |
| the bus | the bus for Ajmer |
| the bus for Agra | the train for Agra |
4. tab too _____ jaldii jaanaa caahiye.
- | | |
|----------------------|-------------|
| the servant | his father |
| my brother | her mother |
| his sister | this man |
| his younger sister | these men |
| their younger sister | this woman |
| her elder sister | these women |
| his elder brother | that man |
| your younger brother | those men |
| our families | that woman |
| our servants | those women |
| my friends | his parents |

his sons	my daughter
your daughters	her son

5. _____ kaa ghar kis oor hai?

Ram	John's friend
his brother	this girl
your sister	that boy
his brother	this man
his younger sister	those women
his elder brother	those men
his father	that man
her mother	his son
his parents	her daughter
her husband	his daughters
his wife	his sons
Bill's father	his brother's friends
Ram's servant	your friend's servants

6. māī _____ jaanaa caahtaa hūū.

my house	my sister's house
his hotel	his brother's hotel
my friend's house	his father's store
his parents' house	my brother's house
their hotel	my elder brother's house
my store	his younger sister's hotel
your room	this boy's house
my brother's hotel	that girl's house

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi

equivalent of the English given, making other changes, if necessary:

1. _____ aa rahee hāī.

my parents	my elder brother
my son	my friend
his sons	my friend's parents
my wife	his friend's sons
my father	her friend's daughters
my mother	my friend's younger brother
our parents	my friend's wife
my younger brother	my servant
his elder sister	my servants
my daughters	my servant's family
my younger sister	my children
her husband	his children
her husband's friend	my brother's children

2. kaanpuur mēē un kii _____ hai.

a store	some fruit stores
a clothing store	many stores
some clothing stores	many clothing stores
a fruit store	

C. Transform the following present progressive tense sentences to future tense sentences according to the model given:

woo kyaa kar rahii hai? woo kyaa kareegii?

1. us kaa mitr kahāā jaa rahaa hai?
2. ham usee is kamree kaa kiraayaa bataa rahee hāī.
3. tum kahāā ruk rahee hoo?
4. us kii patnii kyaa kah rahii hai?

5. jaan patr likh rahaa hai.
6. wee paark mēē ghuum rahee hāī.
7. māī yee siggil kamraa deekh rahii hūū.
8. raam kapRee dee rahaa hai.
9. meerii bahin pāāc bajee kii gaaRii see aa rahii hai.
10. naukar ghar kaa kaam kar rahaa hai.
11. raam kee maataa-pitaa kahāā rah rahee hāī?
12. aap kahāā see aa rahee hāī?

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

usee bazaar jaanaa caahiyeē ... woo bazaar jaanaa caahtaa hai.

1. tumhēē un see jaldii milnaa caahiyeē.
2. mujhee raam koo patr likhnaa caahiyeē.
3. meerii patnii koo ghar kaa kaam karnaa caahiyeē.
4. hamēē kuch phal xariidnaa caahiyeē.
5. usee bas-istāap par ruknaa caahiyeē.
6. mujhee yee siggil kamraa leenaa caahiyeē.
7. usee kamree kaa kiraayaa batanaa caahiyeē.
8. raam koo meeree bhaaii see milnaa caahiyeē.
9. hamēē us hooTal mēē eek kamraa deekhnaa caahiyeē.
10. usee kahāā jaanaa caahiyeē?
11. laRkee koo hooTal mēē rahnaa caahiyeē.
12. us kee mitr koo mujhee kuch rupasee deenaa caahiyeē.

E. Transform the following simple present tense sentences to present progressive tense sentences according to the model given:

woo bazaar jaataa hai woo bazaar jaa rahaa hai.

1. us kii patnii kyaa kahtii hai?
2. woo raam koo eek patr likhtaa hai.
3. bas yahīf see chuuTtii hai.
4. meeree baRee bhaaii kuch kapRee xariidtee hāī.
5. woo kaanpuur mēē wyaapaar kartaa hai.
6. kyaa raam kii bahin paark mēē ghuumtii hai.
7. meeraa mitr kuch kapRee leetaa hai.
8. woo mujhee aagree kaa kiraayaa bataataa hai.
9. naukar ghar kaa kaam kartaa hai.
10. us kaa patiuuntii kapRaa xariidtaa hai.
11. aap kee maataa-pitaa kahāā rahtee hai?
12. laRkee aatee hāī?

F. Translate orally:

1. I'm going to the station.
2. I'm going to the station to get him.
3. I'm going to the station to get him and his family.
4. Is he going to the station?
5. Is he coming alone?
6. He is coming alone.
7. He has a clothing store.
8. He has a clothing store in Kanpur.
9. He has a clothing store in Nagpur.
10. Has he a clothing store in Agra?
11. He deals in all kinds of cloth.
12. He deals in all kinds of cloth -- cotton, woolen and silk.
13. Does he deal in all kinds of cloth?

14. It's getting to be train time.
15. It's getting to be bus time.
16. Where's he coming from?
17. He is coming from Kanpur.
18. Is he coming from Kanpur?
19. His family is coming with him.
20. His wife and children are coming with him.

G. Read the following:

Text of Lesson I

- १ सुनिए, मैं होटल जाना चाहता हूँ ।
- २ होटल कहां है ?
- ३ आप यहां से सीधे जाइए ।
- ४ और फिर दाईं तरफ ।
- ५ वहीं एक होटल है ।
- ६ होटल का नाम क्या है ?
- ७ होटल का नाम अजमेरी होटल है ।
- ८ क्या यह होटल अच्छा है ?
- ९ जी हां, यह होटल बहुत मशहूर है ।
- १० बहुत अच्छा, धन्यवाद ।

Text of Lesson II

- १ सुनिए, मैं कुछ फल खरीदना चाहता हूँ ।
- २ फल की दुकान कहां है ?
- ३ सदर बाजार में ।
- ४ वह यहां से कितनी दूर है ?
- ५ बहुत दूर नहीं ।
- ६ एक मील है ।

- ७ क्या आप पैदल जाना चाहते हैं ?
- ८ जी नहीं, बस से ।
- ९ बस कहां मिलती है ?
- १० आप यहां से सीधे जाइए ।
- ११ और फिर बाईं तरफ ।
- १२ वहीं बस स्टॉप है ।
- १३ बहुत अच्छा, धन्यवाद ।

Text of Lesson III

- १ सुनो, क्या तुम्हारे पास फल हैं ?
- २ जी हां, आप को कौन से फल चाहिए ?
- ३ मैं कुछ संतरे लेना चाहता हूँ ।
- ४ क्या तुम्हारे पास अच्छे संतरे हैं ?
- ५ जी हां, ये संतरे देखिए ।
- ६ ये नागपुरी संतरे हैं ।
- ७ क्या नागपुरी संतरे अच्छे होते हैं ?
- ८ जी हां, नागपुरी संतरे बहुत मीठे होते हैं ।
- ९ अच्छा, इनका दाम क्या है ?
- १० तीन रुपए दर्जन ।
- ११ अच्छा, मुझे एक दर्जन दे दो ।
- १२ ये लीजिए एक दर्जन संतरे ।
- १३ ये लो तीन रुपए ।
- १४ बहुत अच्छा ।

LESSON X

Conversation -- Asking for a Doctor

JOHN

paRoos neighborhood, vicinity
DaakTar doctor

kyaa yahāā paRoos mēē Is there a good doctor here
kooii acchaa DaakTar hai? in the neighborhood?

RAM PAL

leekin but
baat thing, affair,
conversation

hāā, leekin baat kyaa hai? Yes, but what's the matter?

biimaar sick, ill

kyaa aap kee yahāā kooii Is someone sick in your
biimaar hai? house?

JOHN

kal yesterday, tomorrow
raat night

zukaam cold

hoo gayaa hai has become, has caught

jii hāā, meerii chooTii Yes, my younger daughter
laRkii koo kal raat see caught a cold last night.
zukaam hoo gayaa hai.

kaaraN reason

buxaar fever

aur isii kaaraN see usee And for this reason she
kuch buxaar bhii hai. has some fever too.

RAM PAL

aree oh!

afsoos sorrow

aree, yee too baRee Oh, that's too bad.
afsoos kii baat hai.

šarmaa Sharma

dawaa medicine

dawaaxaanaa doctor's office

deekhiyee, yahāā see kuch Dr. Sharma's office is
hii duur par DaakTar nearby.
šarmaa kaa dawaaxaanaa
hai.

aap usee wahāā lee jaaēē. You might take her there.

JOHN

kyaa DaakTar šarmaa eek Is Dr. Sharma a good doctor?
acchee DaakTar hāi?

RAM PAL

yoogy competent

catur skillful

prasiddh well known, famous

jii hāā, bahut yoogy Yes, very competent, skill-
catur aur prasiddh. ful and well known.

JOHN

khulaa open

kyaa un kaa dawaaxaanaa Will his office be open at
is samai khulaa hoogaa? this time?

RAM PAL

subah morning

doopahar noon (roughly)

šaam evening

khulaa rahnaa to be open, to remain
open

jii hāā, un kaa Yes, his office is open from
dawaaxaanaa subah saat 7 a.m. in the morning till

bajee see doopahar 12 noon and from 5 p.m. in
 baraa bajee tak aur the evening till 12 midnight.
 šaam pāac bajee see
 raat baraa bajee tak
 khulaa rahtaa hai.

is samai wee dawaaxaanee He will be in the office
 mēē hii hōōgee. right now.

JOHN

nahfi too otherwise

Thiik hai, tab māfi calūū, All right, then I must go,
 nahfi too deer hoo otherwise it might get
 jaaegii. late.

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

aspataal hospital

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

<u>Masc. I</u>		<u>Fem. II</u>	
dawaaxaanaa	doctor's of- fice	baat	thing, affair, conversation
<u>Masc. II</u>		raat	night
aspataal	hospital	subah	morning
paRoos	neighborhood, vicinity	doopahar	noon
		šaam	evening
DaakTar	doctor	dawaa	medicine
zukaam	cold		
buxaar	fever		
kaaraN	reason		
afsoos	sorrow		

2. New Compound Verbs

Type I

lee jaanaa to take

3. New Adjectives in -aa

khulaa open

4. Vocabulary Notes

4.1. DaakTar

The Hindi term DaakTar, "doctor," is likely to
 imply a western trained medical practitioner.

4.2. dawaaxaanaa

The term dawaaxaanaa, literally "a place for
 dispensing medicine," is a term used for a doctor's
 office since the doctor's office in India will normally
 also dispense medicine.

The term dawaaxaanaa as well as aspataal may be
 used for a hospital.

4.3. Time Expressions

The term subah, "morning," refers roughly to the
 period from sunrise to about 10 a.m. The term
doopahar refers to the hot part of the day, roughly
 11 a.m. to 3 p.m. but varying somewhat with the season.
 The term šaam, "evening," refers roughly to the time
 from 5 p.m. to sunset, and raat, "night," to the time
 from sunset to sunrise.

Note the following Hindi-English equivalents:

doopahar baaraa bajee	at noon
doopahar	roughly from 11 a.m. to 3 p.m.
doopahar eek bajee	at 1 p.m. in the after- noon
šaam saat bajee	at 7 in the evening
raat aath bajee	at 8 in the evening

5. Optative

One common use of the optative in Hindi, particu-
 larly in questions, equates with English "to be to,"

"to be supposed to," "ought to," "should."

kyaa māī bazaar jaaūū	{ Am I supposed to go to the market? Should I go to the market?
māī kab aaūū	{ When should I come? When am I to come?

Note that where English will use the form "should" in either a question or a statement, Hindi uses the optative form in the question and uses caahiye construction in the statement. Compare the following two sentences:

kyaa māī bazaar jaaūū?	Should I go to the bazaar?
mujhee bazaar jaanaa caahiye.	I should go to the bazaar.

Another use of the optative is to make a suggestion. In this usage, the optative form is used instead of an imperative as a more polite way of suggesting that somebody do something just as in English it is more polite to say by way of suggestion "you might read this book" instead of the rather abrupt imperative "read this book."

aap usee wahāā lee jaaēē.	You might take her there.
aap yahāā rukēē, māī abhii aataa hūū.	You might stay here, I'll be back right away.

The expression tab māī calūū is a use of the optative similar to the one mentioned above inasmuch as it is a polite way of taking leave.

6. Verb "to have"

We have already learned two expressions in Hindi which equate with the English verb "to have." A third equivalent of the English verb "to have" which occurs in this lesson, is expressed by putting the person who possesses something in the dative case. Thus, where English uses "she has some fever," the Hindi equivalent is literally "some fever is to her."

isii kaaraN see usee kuch buxaar bhii hai.	For this reason he has some fever as well.
--	--

usee kal raat see zukaam hai. He has had a cold since last night.

This construction for English "have" unlike the expressions learned earlier is used for abstract objects that are possessed rather than concrete objects.

7. "Since" or "for"

Where English uses the form "has been," i.e., "has been since or for a certain time," Hindi uses the simple present of the verb hoonaa, "to be." In similar sentences where English uses a verb form, such as "has been living," "has been working" etc. "since or for a certain time," Hindi uses the verb in the present progressive. Where English uses "since" or "for" with the time expression, Hindi always uses see with the time expression.

kal raat see māī yahāā hūū.	I have been here since last night.
kal raat see māī biimaar hūū.	I have been sick since last night.
doo ghaNtee see māī yahāā hūū.	I have been here for two hours.
woo aath bajee see kaam kar rahaa hai.	He has been working since 8 o'clock.
woo kuch samai see yahāā rah rahaa hai.	He has been living here for some time.

8. Writing System

8.1. Consonant Combinations

The following new consonant combinations occur in Lessons IV, V and VI:

st	स्त	namastee	नमस्ते
tn	त्न	patnii	पत्नी
ld	ल्द	jaldii	जल्दी
gy	ग्य	gyaaraa	ग्यारह
nn	न्न	unniis	उन्नीस

8.2. Irregular Spellings

The numerals eleven through eighteen are pronounced with a final -aa but written as if they had -ah:

gyaaraa	ग्यारह	pandraa	पन्द्रह
baaraa	बारह	soolaa	सोलह
teeraa	तेरह	satraa	सत्रह
caudaa	चौदह	aThaaraa	अठारह

The numeral "six" is also written irregularly as follows:

chai क़ह or कः

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

- _____ kal raat see kuch buxaar hai.

I	my younger son
he	my older daughter
this man	my friend's wife
this woman	Ram's elder brother
this girl	Bill's mother
my son	his younger daughter
my brother	my elder sister
his father	this boy
John's sister	that boy
her husband	that man
Ram's daughter	that woman
- un kaa dawaaxaanaa _____ khulaa rahtaa hai.

from five o'clock to seven o'clock
from one o'clock to ten o'clock

from three o'clock to twelve o'clock
 from two o'clock to eight o'clock
 from six o'clock to eleven o'clock
 from four o'clock to nine o'clock
 from eight o'clock to eleven o'clock
 from seven o'clock to twelve o'clock

- is samai wee _____ mēē hōōgee.

the house	the room
the hospital	the fruit store
the doctor's office	Agra
the hotel	
- _____ kaa naam kyaa hai?

this man	his friend's brother
this boy	his father
this girl	his mother
this woman	his son
this child	her daughter
the doctor	his younger sister
John's brother	his elder son
his elder sister	his younger daughter
his friend	
- wee kal _____ aaēēgee.

morning	noon
evening	at one o'clock in the afternoon
night	at what time
- kyaa _____ kooii acchaa DaakTar hai?

here	in Agra
------	---------

there in Kanpur

here in the vicinity in this hospital

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making changes, if necessary:

1. kyaa is samai _____ khulaa hoogaa?
the bazaar the stores
the doctor's office the clothing stores
those doctors' offices the stores in the bazaar
the store the hospital
2. _____ usee kahāā lee jaaūū?
I we
he she
they John

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

- kyaa māī jaaūū? kyaa woo jaaee?
1. kyaa māī hooTal mēē rukūū?
 2. kyaa māī is paark mēē ghuumūū?
 3. kyaa māī yee phal xariidūū?
 4. kyaa māī DaakTar see milūū?
 5. kyaa māī is dawaaxaanee mēē kaam karūū?
 6. kyaa māī kal raat aap kee ghar aaūū?
 7. kyaa māī isii aspataal see dawaa lūū?
 8. kyaa māī aagree mēē hii wyaapaar karūū?
 9. kyaa māī jaan koo eek patr likhūū?
 10. kyaa māī isiighar mēē rahūū?

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

yee santaraa acchaa hai. yee santaree acchee hāī.

1. yee baccaa kis kaa hai?
2. yee dawaaxaanaa bahut acchaa aur mašhuur hai.
3. yee dukaan kitnii duur hai?
4. laRkii bazaar jaatii hai.
5. bas kahāā see chuuTtii hai?
6. dhoobii kahāā kaam kartaa hai?
7. yee TikaT pahlee darjee kaa hai.
8. patnii ghar kaa kaam kartii hai.
9. yee jaghee bahut mašhuur hai.
10. gaaRii kitnee bajee aatii hai.
11. laRkaa paark mēē ghuumtaa hai.
12. us kaa bhaaii kuch kapRee xariidtaa hai.
13. khiRkii khulii hai.
14. us kii bahin biimaar hai.
15. meeraa moozaa kahāā hai?
16. dawaa kahāā miltii hai?
17. yee kamraa bahut acchaa hai.
18. meeraa bhaaii wyaapaar kartaa hai.
19. yee dukaan sadar bazaar mēē hai.
20. laRkaa isii ghar mēē rahtaa hai.

E. Transform the following simple present imperfect tense sentences into optative sentences according to the model given:

- māī bazaar jaataa hūū kyaa māī bazaar jaaūū?
1. māī patr likhtaa hūū.
 2. ham dawaaxaanee see dawaa leetee hāī.
 3. woo paark mēē ghuumtaa hai.

4. mǎi dhoobii koo kapRee deetaa hūū.
5. us kaa bhaaii wyaapaar kartaa hai.
6. woo pleetfaarm par ruktaa hai.
7. mǎi usee aagree kaa kiraayaa bataataa hūū.
8. naukar ghar kaa kaam kartaa hai.
9. mǎi DaakTar see miltaa hūū.
10. raam kii bahin us kii baat suntii hai.
11. woo laRkaa isii hooTal mēē rahtaa hai.
12. laRkii kuch kapRaxariidtii hai.

F. Translate orally:

1. He will be in the hospital at this time.
2. Will he be in the hospital at this time?
3. Where will he be at this time?
4. Where will the doctor be at this time?
5. John is sick.
6. John has been sick since last night.
7. Is someone sick in your house?
8. Who is sick in your house?
9. My daughter has been sick since last night.
10. My son has had a fever since last night.
11. The store will be open right now.
12. The stores in the bazaar will be open right now.
13. He is a good doctor.
14. He is a very competent doctor.
15. Is he a very competent and famous doctor?
16. Is there a good doctor here in the neighborhood?
17. Dr. Sharma's office is nearby.

18. Where is Dr. Sharma's office?
19. Is Dr. Sharma's office very far from here?
20. Dr. Sharma's office is about a mile from here.

G. Read the following:

Text of Lesson IV

- १ कौन है ?
- २ घोबी है, साहब ।
- ३ अन्दर आ जाओ ।
- ४ क्या तुम्हीं इस होटल के घोबी हो ?
- ५ जी हां, मैं ही यहां का काम करता हूं ।
- ६ अच्छा दो मिनट रुको, अभी कपड़े देता हूं ।
- ७ लो, ये रहे कपड़े ।
- ८ अच्छा साहब, लिख लीजिए ।
- ९ चार पैट, कूह कमीज़, सात बनियाइन, पांच जोड़े मोज़े और नौ ह्माल ।
- १० ठीक है, मुझे ये कपड़े जल्दी चाहिए ।
- ११ बहुत अच्छा, साहब ।

एक	कूह
दो	सात
तीन	आठ
चार	नौ
पांच	दस

Text of Lesson V

- १ नमस्ते, कहिए, क्या मैं आप के लिए कुछ कर सकता हूं ।
- २ क्या आप के पास कोई कमरा खाली है ?
- ३ आपको कैसा कमरा चाहिए - सिंगिल या डबल ?
- ४ डबल, मेरे साथ मेरी पत्नी भी हैं ।
- ५ अच्छा, आइए, कमरा देख लीजिए ।

- ६ इस कमरे में सभी सुविधाएं हैं ।
 ७ कहिए, आपको पसन्द है ?
 ८ ठीक है, मुझे पसन्द है ।
 ९ इसका किराया कितना है ।
 १० आपके लिए केवल दस रुपए रोज़ ।
 ११ ठीक है, तब मैं इसे ले लूंगा ।

Text of Lesson VI

- १ कहिए, आपको क्या चाहिए ?
 २ मैं कुछ कार्ड, लिफाफे आदि लेना चाहता हूँ ।
 ३ तब अगली सिड़की पर जाइए ।
 ४ यहां मनीआर्डर लिए जाते हैं ।
 ५ मुझे दस पोस्ट कार्ड और बारह लिफाफे दे दीजिए ।
 ६ ये लीजिए, और कुछ चाहिए ?
 ७ जी हां, पन्द्रह नए पैसे वाले तीस टिकट भी दे दीजिए ।
 ८ क्या आपके पास अन्तर्देशीय पत्र भी हैं ?
 ९ जी हां, कितने चाहिए ?
 १० सात, साथ ही दस हवाई पत्र भी दे दीजिए ।
 ११ लीजिए ये रहे आपके टिकट, अन्तर्देशीय पत्र और हवाई पत्र ।
 १२ कितने पैसे हुए ?
 १३ कुल तेरह रुपए ।
 १४ ये लीजिए तेरह रुपए ।

ग्यारह	सोलह
बारह	सत्रह
तेरह	अठारह
चौदह	उन्नीस
पन्द्रह	बीस

LESSON XI

Conversation -- Extending an Invitation

RAM NATH

namastee Hello

JOHN

baiThnaa to sit down

namastee, aaiyee, andar Hello. Come in.
aaiyee.

baiThiyee. kahiye, Please take a seat. How
kyaa haalcaal hai? are you?

RAM NATH

kripaa kindness, mercy

sab aap kii kripaa hai.* Everything is fine.

kašT trouble, inconvenience

māī aap koo eek kašT I want to ask a favor of
deenaa caahtaa hūū.** you.

parsōō the day before yester-
day, the day after
tomorrow

tiisraa third

pahar part of the day

tiisraa pahar late afternoon

aašaa Asha

warš year

* The style of this lesson is generally more formal than that of any previous lessons. This particular expression means literally "everything is fine by your kindness."

** Literally "I want to give (cause) you an inconvenience."

waršgāāTh	birthday
parsōō tiisree pahar meerii chooTii laRkii aašaa kii waršgāāTh hai.	My young daughter Asha is having a birthday cele- bration the day after tomorrow in the afternoon.
daawat	dinner
aur us kee baad šaam koo eek daawat hai.	And there's a dinner after it.
praarthnaa	request
meerii praarthnaa hai ki aap us mēē aašē.*	I would like you to come.
laanaa	to bring
aur saath hii apnii patnii aur baccōō koo bhii laašē.	And bring your wife and children with you too.

JOHN

awašy	certainly
māī too awašy aa jaaūūgaa.	I will certainly come.
par	but
kee baaree mēē	about, concerning
jaannaa	to know
par apnii patnii kee baaree mēē nahīī jaantaa.	But I don't know (for sure) about my wife.

RAM NATH

kyōō	why
din	day
kyōō? kyaa wee us din xaalii nahīī hāī?	Why? Isn't she free that day?

JOHN

jii nahīī. yee baat nahīī hai.	No, that's not the reason.
-----------------------------------	----------------------------

* Literally "my request is that you should come to it."

tabiyat	condition, health
aajkal	nowadays
xaraab	bad
meerii patnii kii tabiyat aajkal xaraab hai.	My wife's health isn't very good these days.
isliyee	therefore
isliyee māī nahīī kah saktaa ki wee aa sakēēgii yaa nahīī.	Therefore, I can't say whether she can come or not.
phir bhii	however
koošiš	attempt
koošiš karnaa	to try
phir bhii māī unhēē laanee kii koošiš karūūgaa.	However, I will try to bring her.

RAM NATH

pataa	address
kyaa aap meeree ghar kaa pataa jaantee hāī?	Do you know my address?

JOHN

jii nahīī.	No.
------------	-----

RAM NATH

nagar	town, city
ašook nagar	Ashok Nagar, name of a suburb
makaan	house
meeraa ghar ašook nagar mēē hai--makaan nambar soolaa.	My house is in Ashok Nagar --house number 16.

saRak	road, street
-------	--------------

kinaaraa	edge, bank
----------	------------

yee makaan saRak kee	The house is right on the
----------------------	---------------------------

kinaaree par hii hai.* street.

JOHN

Thiik hai, mǎi kitnee bajee aaũũ? All right, when should I come?

RAM NATH

daawat šaam saat bajee hai. The dinner is at seven p.m.

aap us samai tak awašy aa jaaēē. You should come by that time.

JOHN

pahũcnaa to reach

pahũc jaanaa to reach

Thiik hai, mǎi pahũc jaaũũgaa. O.K., I'll be there.

RAM NATH

baRii kripaa hoogii. That will be very kind of you.

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

aaj today

kal yesterday, tomorrow

parsõõ the day before yesterday, the day after tomorrow

narsõõ two days before yesterday, two days after tomorrow

na not

*Literally "the house is right on the edge of the street" as opposed to being located off the street on some alley or side street.

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

Masc. I

pataa address

kinaaraa edge, bank

Masc. II

kašT trouble, inconvenience

pahar part of the day

din day

nagar city

makaan house

warš year

Fem. II

kripaa kindness

aašaa (no pl.) Asha

waršgāāTh birthday

daawat dinner

praarthnaa request

tabiyat condition, health

koošiš attempt

saRak street, road

2. New Verbs

baiThnaa to sit

jaannaa to know

laanaa to bring

pahũcnaa to reach

2.1. New Compound Verbs

Type I

pahũc jaanaa to reach

Type II

koošiš karnaa to try

3. New Adjectives in -aa

tiisraa third

4. New Postpositions

kee baaree mēš about, concerning

5. Negative

For the present imperfect tense, the present progressive and future tense the negative is expressed

by the negative particle nahīī "not." It is customary in the negative to drop the simple present tense forms of the verb hoonaa, "to be," in the present imperfect and present progressive. The particle nahīī, "not" will occur immediately before the verbal phrase.

woo bazaar jaataa hai. He goes to the bazaar.
 woo bazaar nahīī jaataa. He doesn't go to the bazaar.
 woo bazaar jaa rahaa hai. He is going to the bazaar.
 woo bazaar nahīī jaa rahaa. He isn't going to the bazaar.
 woo bazaar jaaeegaa. He'll go to the bazaar.
 woo bazaar nahīī jaaeegaa. He won't go to the bazaar.

woo phal xariid saktaa hai. He can buy fruit.
 woo phal nahīī xariid saktaa. He can't buy fruit.

woo phal xariidnaa caahtaa hai. He wants to buy fruit.

woo phal nahīī xariidnaa caahtaa. He doesn't want to buy fruit.

woo kaam kartaa hai. He works.
 woo kaam nahīī kartaa. He doesn't work.

With the optative and the imperative the negative particle na is used. The particle na, "not," may also be used with the future tense instead of nahīī, "not."

māī bazaar jaaūūgaa. I'll go to the bazaar.
 māī bazaar na jaaūūgaa. } I won't go to the bazaar.
 māī bazaar nahīī jaaūūgaa. }

phal xariidoo. Buy fruit.
 phal na xariidoo. Don't buy fruit.

bazaar jaaiyee Please go to the bazaar.

bazaar na jaaiyee. Please don't go to the bazaar.

kyaa woo bazaar jaaee? Should he go to the bazaar?

kyaa woo bazaar na jaaee? Shouldn't he go to the bazaar?

usee bazaar jaavaa caahiye. He should go to the bazaar.

usee bazaar na jaanaa caahiye. He shouldn't go to the bazaar.

6. Use of Optative

After the form praarthanaa, "request," a subordinate clause may have a verb in the optative or in the polite imperative but not in the present imperfect of the future.

meerii praarthnaa hai }
 ki aap us mēē aāē. } I would like you to come
 meerii praarthnaa hai }
 ki aap us mēē aaiyee. } to it.

meerii praarthnaa hai }
 ki aap meeree saath }
 ghuumnee calēē. } I would like you to take
 meerii praarthnaa hai }
 ki aap meeree saath }
 ghuumnee caliye. } a walk with me.

7. The Verb "to try"

If the Hindi verb koošīš karnaa, "to try," is used with a dependent infinitive, then the infinitive will be in the oblique form followed by kii since koošīš is a feminine noun.

māī koošīš karūūgaa. I'll try.

māī unhēē laanee kii }
 koošīš karūūgaa. } I'll try to bring her.

woo aath bajee aanee kii He'll try to come at
koošiš kareegaa. eight o'clock.

8. "Whether ... or not"

The Hindi equivalent of an English sentence "whether ... or not" is expressed by ki ... yaa nahīī. Whereas in English "or not" may be dropped, the yaa nahīī of Hindi is obligatory.

is liyee māī nahīī kah Therefore I can't say
saktaa, ki wee aa whether she can come
sakēēgii yaa nahīī. (or not).

māī nahīī jaantaa ki I don't know whether I'm
māī kal xaalii hūū free tomorrow (or not).
yaa nahīī.

9. Direct Object

You have learned that the direct object in Hindi may be in the nominative case but this applies only if the object is inanimate. If the object is animate, then the direct object must be in the dative case. If the direct object is inanimate, it may occasionally be expressed in the dative case.

saath hii woo apnii He will bring his wife
patnii koo bhii with him too.
laaeegaa.

raam yee phal bazaar see }
laataa hai. Ram brings this fruit
raam in phalōō koo bazaar }
see laataa hai. from the bazaar.

When the direct object is a pronoun, even if it refers to something inanimate, it is more customary to use the dative case form.

woo usee bhii laaeegaa. He will bring her too.

raam isee bazaar see Ram will bring it from the
laaeegaa. bazaar.

10. tiisree pahar

The period of time from about 3 p.m. to 5 p.m. is referred to as tiisree pahar in Hindi.

woo kal tiisree pahar He will come tomorrow
caar bajee aaeegaa. at four o'clock.

11. Writing System

11.1. New Consonant Combinations

pl	प्ल	pleeTfaarm	प्लेटफार्म
nh	न्ह	unhēē	उन्हें
wy	व्य	wyaapaar	व्यापार
cc	च्च	baccaa	बच्चा
mm	म्म	ammāā	अम्मां

11.2. Special Consonant Combinations

In some words the consonant combination gy is written by the symbol ज़. Unlike most consonant combinations this symbol has no similarity to either of its parts, g or y.

aagyaa आज्ञा

11.3. Irregular Spellings

samai	समय
jaghee	जगह
na	न

EXERCISES

Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. _____ meerii laRkii kii waršgāāTh hai.

tomorrow

the day after tomorrow

this morning

this evening

today

two days after tomorrow

tomorrow night
 tomorrow evening
 the day after tomorrow at noon
 the day after tomorrow in the evening
 tomorrow afternoon
 tomorrow morning at 10:00.
 tomorrow evening at 6:00.
 tomorrow night at 8:00.
 the day after tomorrow at 7:00 p.m.
 the day after tomorrow at 4:00 p.m.
 two days after tomorrow at 10:00 a.m.

2. saath hii _____ bhii laaiyee.
 your wife her husband
 your children her sister
 your brother my brother
 my friend your daughters
 his friend his friends
 your daughter their friends
 his parents your sons
 your parents your younger son
 your friends his servant
 your children their servants
 his sons and daughters John's brother
 your brother's children your servant
3. kya aap _____ kaa pataa jaantee hāī?
 my house my friend's house
 his house the doctor's office

their house Dr. Sharma's office
 our house the hospital
 the clothing store the station
 that clothing store this park
 my store this hotel
 his store our store
 this house their store
 that house my friend's store

4. māī _____ laanee kii koošiś karūūgaa.
 her my sister
 him my sons
 my wife their friends
 my family Ram's friends
 John my daughter
 his parents my children
 his servant his children
 his brother her husband
5. māī _____ koošiś karūūgaa.
 to bring her
 to write the letters
 to go to the park
 to give some oranges to Ram
 to buy some fruit
 to meet my friend
 to come tomorrow
 to work
 to give him some money

to live in this house

B. Transform the following sentences into negative sentences according to the model given:

raam patr likhtaa hai raam patr nahif likhtaa.

1. mǎi phal xariidtaa hūū.
2. woo meerii baat suntaa hai.
3. laRkaa neehruu paark mēē ghuumtaa hai.
4. mǎi dhoobii koo kapRee deetaa hūū.
5. woo bazaar jaa saktaa hai.
6. tum yee kapRee xariid saktee hoo.
7. meeraa mitr dukaan mēē kaam kartaa hai.
8. woo mujhee apnee baaree mēē bataataa hai.
9. mǎi raam see milnaa caahtaa hūū.
10. woo pāāc kamiizēē xariidnaa caahtaa hai.
11. woo DaakTar šarmaa kee dawaaxaanee see dawaa laataa hai.
12. meeree bhaaii kaanpuur mēē wyaapaar kartee hāi.
13. woo meeree saath aagree jaanaa caahtaa hai.
14. meeree maataa-pitaa kal aa rahee hāi.
15. usee buxaar hai.
16. DaakTar kaa dawaaxaanaa is samai khulaa rahtaa hai.
17. kyaa tum apnee bhaaii koo patr likhnaa caahtee hoo.
18. bas yahāā see chuuTtii hai.
19. gaarii pāāc nambar kee pleetfaarm par miltii hai.
20. kyaa aap aaj aagree jaa rahee hāi.
21. yee laRkee is ghar mēē rahtee hāi.
22. unki laRkii aath bajee bazaar jaatii hai.

23. gaarii šaam saat bajee chuuTtii hai.

24. meeree pitaa aajkal ajmeer hooTal mēē rah rahee hāi.

25. woo apnaa kaam karnee kii koošiš kar rahaa hai.

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

laRkaa bazaar jaa rahaa hai ... laRkee bazaar jaa rahee hāi.

1. yee nagar bahut mašhuur hai.
 2. kyaa aap kii dukaan ašook nagar mēē hai?
 3. laRkii kahāā jaa rahii hai.
 4. dawaaxaanaa is samai khulaa hoogaa.
 5. yee paark bahut prasiddh hai.
 6. us kaa makaan bahut duur hai.
 7. aap kii baat Thiik hai.
 8. us kii bahin kapRee xariid rahii hai.
 9. meeraa mitr kapRee kaa wyaapaar kartaa hai.
 10. jaan kaa laRkaa likhnee kii koošiš kar rahaa hai.
- D. Translate orally:
1. He will be free at that time.
 2. Will he be free at that time?
 3. Won't she be free at that time?
 4. She won't be free tomorrow.
 5. She won't be free tomorrow evening.
 6. She won't be free tomorrow at 6 p.m.
 7. My wife's health isn't very good these days.
 8. Is your wife's health good these days?
 9. Isn't your wife's health good these days?
 10. I can't tell whether he'll come or not.

11. He can't tell whether I'll go to the store or not.
12. I can't tell whether she will go to the store or not.
13. Asha is having a birthday celebration tomorrow.
14. My daughter Asha is having a birthday celebration tomorrow at 4 p.m.
15. My young son Ram is having a birthday celebration the day after tomorrow at 2 p.m.
16. I would like you to come.
17. I would like you and your family to come.
18. I would like you and your wife to come.
19. I would like you, your wife and your children to come.
20. I would like you and your family to come tomorrow at 5 p.m.

E. Read the following:

Text of Lesson VII

- १ सुनिए, क्या आप बता सकते हैं कि आगरे के लिए बस कहाँ मिलेगी ?
- २ जी, यहीं मिलेगी ।
- ३ कितनी देर में जाएगी ?
- ४ एक घण्टे में, ठीक आठ बजे कूटेगी ।
- ५ आप पांच नंबर के प्लेटफार्म पर चले जाइए ।
- ६ वहाँ बस तैयार मिलेगी ।
- ७ क्या आपके पास टिकट है ?
- ८ अभी नहीं, टिकट कहाँ मिलते हैं ?
- ९ आगरे के लिए न ?
- १० सामने चार नंबर की खिड़की पर ।
- ११ आगरे का किराया क्या है ?
- १२ किस दर्जे का - पहले या दूसरे ?

- १३ पहले दर्जे का ।
- १४ ज़रा ठहरिए, अभी बताता हूँ ।
- १५ लगभग तीन रुपए लगेंगे ।
- १६ बहुत अच्छा, धन्यवाद ।

Text of Lesson VIII

- १ नमस्ते, कहिए, क्या हालचाल है ?
- २ सब ठीक है, आप कैसे हैं ?
- ३ अच्छा हूँ ।
- ४ आप कहाँ जा रहे हैं ।
- ५ घूमने जा रहा हूँ ।
- ६ क्या आप भी घूमने चल रहे हैं ?
- ७ जी नहीं, मैं इस समय अपने एक मित्र से मिलने जा रहा हूँ ।
- ८ मुझे उनसे कुछ ज़रूरी काम है ।
- ९ और एक घंटे बाद ही वे बाहर चले जाएंगे ।
- १० आप कियर जा रहे हैं ?
- ११ मैं नेहरू पार्क तक जाऊँगा ।
- १२ घूमने के लिए वह जगह बहुत अच्छी है ।
- १३ मैं हमेशा वहीं जाता हूँ ।
- १४ तब ठीक है, मैं थोड़ी दूर तक आपका साथ दूँगा ।
- १५ मेरे मित्र का घर उसी ओर है ।
- १६ बहुत अच्छा, चलिए तब चलें ।

Text of Lesson IX

- १ नमस्ते, कहिए, कहाँ जा रहे हैं ?
- २ स्टेशन, मेरे बड़े भाई आ रहे हैं ।
- ३ उन्हें लेने स्टेशन जा रहा हूँ ।
- ४ वे कहाँ से आ रहे हैं ?

- ५ कानपुर से, वहां वे व्यापार करते हैं ।
 ६ ऐसा, वे क्या व्यापार करते हैं ?
 ७ कानपुर में उनकी कपड़े की दुकान है ।
 ८ वे सूती, ऊनी, रेशमी - सभी तरह के कपड़े का काम करते हैं ।
 ९ क्या वे अकेले ही आ रहे हैं ?
 १० जी नहीं, उनके साथ उनका परिवार भी है - उनकी पत्नी,
 उनके दो बच्चे और उनका नौकर ।
 ११ अच्छा, तब तो आपको जल्दी जाना चाहिए ।
 १२ गाड़ी का वक्त हो रहा है ।
 १३ जी हां, अब मुझे आज्ञा दीजिए । नमस्ते ।

छोटा	आदमी
बहिन	औरत
मां-बाप, माता-पिता	लड़का
अम्मां, मां, माता	लड़की
पिता, बाप	पति

LESSON XII

Conversation -- Buying Books

CLERK

kahiye, māī aap kee liyee Hello. What can I do for
 kyaa kar saktaa hūū? you?

JOHN

hindii

Hindi

kitaab

book

māī kuch hindii kii I want to buy some Hindi
 kitaabēē leenaa caahtaa books.
 hūū.

hindii kii kitaabēē kidhar Where are the Hindi books?
 hāī?

CLERK

idhar

this direction

aap meeree saath idhar Come this way with me.
 aaiyee.

yee rahīī hindii kii Here are the Hindi books.
 kitaabēē.

aap koo kaisii kitaabēē What kind of books do you
 caahiye. need?

JOHN

jin

which

aasaanii

ease

siikhnaa

to learn

māī aisii kitaabēē caahtaa I want to buy books from
 hūū jin see māī aasaanii which I can learn Hindi
 see hindii siikh sakūū. easily.

CLERK

aap kitnii hindii jaantee How much Hindi do you know?
 hāī?

JOHN

zaadaa, zyaadaa much, more

māī zaadaa hindi nahīī I don't know much Hindi.
jaantaa.

bool leenaa to be able to speak

kuch kuch bool leetaa I can speak it a little.
hūū.

CLERK

paRh leenaa to be able to read

kyaa aap hindīī paRh Can you read Hindi?
leetee hāīī?

JOHN

jīī hāā, māī paRh too Yes, I can read it easily.
aasaanīī see leetaa
hūū.

samajhnaa to understand

kaThinaaīī difficulty

leekin, samajhnee mēē kuch But I have some difficulty
kaThinaaīī hootīī hai. understanding it.

CLERK

samaacaar news

samaacaar patr newspaper

kyaa aap samaacaar patr Can you read the newspapers?
paRh leetee hāīī?

JOHN

muškīl difficulty, difficult

zaruur certainly

hāā, paRh leetaa hūū, Yes, I can read it but I
samajhnee mēē zaruur certainly have some diffi-
kuch kuch muškīl hootīī culty in following it.
hai.

CLERK

rahnaa to be

acchaa, deekhiyee, yee All right, please see how
kitaab aap kee liyee this book will be for you?
kaisīī rahegīī?

JOHN

kaThin difficult

yee too kaThin hai. This is difficult.

saral easy, simple

is see kuch saral Please give me a simpler
kitaab diijiyee. book than this one.

CLERK

yee deekhiyee, yee Look at this. How will
kaisīī rahegīī? this be?

JOHN

hāā, yee Thiik hai. Yes, this is all right.

CLERK

darjaa class, grade

yee tiisree darjee kīī This is a third grade book.
kitaab hai.

JOHN

cauthaa fourth

tab mujhee duusree, Then give me the second,
tiisree aur cauthee third and fourth grade
darjee kīī kitaabēē books.
dee diijiyee.

CLERK

šabd word

šabd kooš dictionary

kyaa aap koo eek šabd Do you need a dictionary
kooš bhīī caahiyee? too?

JOHN

matlab

meaning

šabd kooš, šabd kooš
kaa matlab kyaa hai?

"šabd kooš," what does
"šabd kooš" mean?

CLERK

angreezii

English

Dikšnarii

dictionary

angreezii mēš šabd-kooš "šabd-kooš" means dictionary
kaa matlab hai--Dikšnarii. in English.

JOHN

acchaa, jii hāā, caahiye. Oh, yes, I want one.

jis

which

kyaa aap kee paas kooii
aisaa šabd-kooš hai,
jis mēš hindii šabdōō
kaa matlab angreezii
mēš hoo.

Do you have a dictionary
which has the meanings of
Hindi words in English?

CLERK

jii hāā, yee liijiye.

Yes, here it is.

JOHN

huaa

became

Thiik hai, in sab kaa
daam kitnaa huaa?

All right. How much are all
these?

CLERK

caudaa rupaae.

Fourteen rupees.

JOHN

bahut acchaa, yee liijiye
caudaa rupaae.

Very well, here are
fourteen rupees.

CLERK

dhanyawaad, namastee

Thanks, goodbye.

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

Masc. II

samaacaar

news

Fem. I

hindii (no pl.) Hindi

samaacaar patr

newspaper

aasaanii (no pl.) ease

šabd

word

kaThinaaai

difficulty

šabdkooš

dictionary

angreezii (no pl.) English

matlab

meaning

Dikšnarii

dictionary

Fem. II

kitaab

book

2. New Verbs

siikhnaa

to learn

paRhnaa

to read, study

boolnaa

to speak

samajhnaa

to understand

2.1. New Compound Verbs

Type I

bool leenaa

to be able to speak

paRh leenaa

to be able to read

3. New Adjectives in -aa

cauthaa

fourth

4. Verb rahnaa

The verb rahnaa besides having the meanings "to live, stay, remain," can also be used as an alternative for honaa, "to be," in certain contexts.

yee kaisii raheegii?

How will this be?

yee aap kee liyee kaisii
raheegii?

How will this be for you?

The form rahaa of this verb with the inflection

rahaa, rahee, rahii, rahii may be used in a pointing out situation as an equivalent of "here are," "there are" etc.

yee rahee kapRee. Here are the clothes.
 yee rahii hindii kii Here are the Hindi books.
 kitaabēē.
 woo rahaa ajmeerii There's the Ajmer hotel.
 hooTal.

Note the contrast in the following sentences:

woo rahaa ajmeerii There's the Ajmer Hotel.
 hooTal.
 ajmeerii hooTal wahāā The Ajmer Hotel is over
 hai. there.

5. Emphatic Forms

The emphatic forms of yee "this," woo "that," are respectively yahii and wahii.

6. Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun joo, "who," "which," "that" in Hindi has the following forms:

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	joo	joo
Dat.	{ jisee	jinhēē
	{ jis koo	jin koo
Obl.	jis	jin

The relative pronoun in Hindi may be used in the same way as the English relative pronoun, i.e., referring back to some object already mentioned. It takes the case form required by the construction in which it occurs.

basēē, joo agreee The buses, which go to Agra,
 jaatii hāi, pāāc leave from platform
 nambar kee pleēfaarm number five.
 see chuuTtii hāi.

wee kamiizēē, jin kaa The shirts which cost five
 daam pāāc rupaeē hai, rupees are available here.
 yahii miltii hāi.

(woo) kitaab, joo māi The book I'm reading is
 paRh rahaa hūū, bahut very good.
 acchii hai.

yee wahii laRkaa hai, This is the boy who needs
 jisee buxaar kii dawaa medicine for a fever.
 caahiyee.

yee wahii aspataal hai, This is the hospital in
 jis mēē DaakTar šarmaa which Dr. Sharma works.
 kaam kartee hāi.

yee wahii laRkaa hai, This is the boy whose
 jis kaa ghar ašook nagar house is in Ashok Nagar.
 mēē hai.

kyaa yee wahii laRkee Are these the boys who
 hāi jinhēē hindii should study Hindi?
 paRhnaa caahiyee.

māi aisii kitaabēē I want books from which I
 caahtaa hūū, jin see can learn Hindi.
 hindii siikh sakūū.

Note that in the above sentences the Hindi equivalent of "this is the boy who..." is literally "this is that boy who..." using the emphatic form wahii for "that," yee wahii laRkaa hai, joo....

In Hindi, many sentences with the relative pronoun may occur in two different word orders as in the third sentence above. One word order is similar to the English, literally "the book that I'm reading..." kitaab joo māi paRh rahaa hūū.... The other word order is different from any possible English word order, literally "which book I'm reading, (that) is very good," joo kitaab māi paRh rahaa hūū, (woo) bahut acchii hai. Compare the following sentences carefully with the preceding ones.

joo basēē agreee jaatii The buses, which go to Agra,
 hāi, wee pāāc nambar leave from platform No.5.
 kee pleēfaarm see
 chuuTtii hāi.

jin kamiizōō kaa daam The shirts, which cost five
 pāāc rupaeē hai, wee rupees, are available
 yahii miltii hāi. here.

jis laRkee koo buxaar This is the boy, who needs
kii dawaa caahiyee, medicine for a fever,
woo yahii hai.

jis aspataal mēē DaakTar This is the hospital, in
šarmaa kaam kartee hāī, which Dr. Sharma works.
woo yahii hai.

jis laRkee kaa ghar This is the boy, whose
ašook nagar mēē hai, house is in Ashok Nagar.
woo yahii hai.

jin laRkōō koo hindii Are these the boys, who
paRhnaa caahiyee, wee should study Hindi?
yahii hāī?

jin kitaabōō see māī I want books from which
hindii siikh sakūū, I can learn Hindi.
wee māī caahtaa hūū.

Note that in this type of sentence, where English has "this is the boy who needs medicine," Hindi has literally "which boy needs medicine, this is that one."

7. Repetition

Certain items in Hindi may be repeated for emphasis. This will apply to the word kuch, kooii and frequently to adjectives.

māī kuch kuch bool I can speak it a little.
leetaa hūū.

kooii kooii santaraa Only some oranges are
acchaa hootaa hai. good.

mujhee baRee baRee I want some big oranges,
santaree caahiyee, not small ones.
chooTee chooTee nahīī.

The English equivalent of the above sentences will carry emphatic stress on the words "a little," "some," "big," and "small."

8. Postposition see

The postposition see is used with some nouns to form an adverbial expression which then may be the equivalent of an English adverbial expression such as "with difficulty," "with ease" or the equivalent of an English adverb such as "easily."

kaThinaai see with difficulty

aasaanii see with ease, easily

9. Postposition mēē

In this lesson the postposition mēē occurs with an infinitive form of the verb. This is the equivalent of English "in" plus the "-ing" form of the verb.

leekin samajhnee mēē But there is some diffi-
kuch kaThinaai culty in understanding.
hootii hai.

mujhee wahāā tak I'll take a long time in
pahūcnee mēē deer reaching there (i.e.,
hoogii. to reach there).

10. Comparative

With the exception of a very few forms, Hindi does not have any special form for the comparative of an adjective or an adverb. The Hindi equivalent of an English comparative form followed by "than" is usually expressed by the ordinary form of the adjective along with the postposition see equating with the English postposition "than." The Hindi phrase with see will precede the adjective.

woo laRkaa acchaa hai. That boy is good.

woo laRkaa mujh see That boy is better than
acchaa hai. I am.

raam aašaa see baRaa hai. Ram is older than Asha.

yee bazaar us bazaar see This bazaar is smaller
chooTaa hai. than that bazaar.

is see kuch saral kitaab Please give me a simpler
diijiyee. book than this one.

The word zaadaa can be used as a positive form like bahut, both meaning "much." This usage is common in negative sentences.

māī bahut hindii nahīī }
jaantaa. }
māī zaadaa hindii nahīī }
jaantaa. } I don't know much Hindi.

The word zaadaa can be used as a comparative,

meaning "more" or "too much." It is frequently used this way, either by itself or with a following adjective, in situations where the thing that something is being compared with is not stated.

yee zaadaa hai.

This is too much.

yee paark zaadaa baRaa hai.

This park is bigger (bigger than I thought).
This park is too big (bigger than it should be).

11. Writing System

11.1. Consonant Combinations

kT	क्‍ट	DaakTar	डाक्टर
rm	र्म	šarmaa	शर्मा
ddh	द्ध	prasiddh	प्रसिद्ध
sp	स्प	aspataal	अस्पताल
šT	श्‍ट	kašT	कष्ट
rš	र्श	waršgāšTh	वर्षगांठ
pr	प्र	praarthnaa	प्रार्थना
rth	र्थ	praarthnaa	प्रार्थना
šy	श्य	awašy	अवश्य
zy	ज्य	zyaadaa	ज्यादा
šk	श्‍क	muškil	मुश्किल
bd	ब्‍द	šabd	शब्द
gr	ग्र	angreezii	अंग्रेजी
kš	क्‍श	Dikšnarii	डिक्शनरी

11.2. Irregular Spellings

zaadaa, zyaadaa ज्यादा

11.3. New Symbol

In some items Hindi uses the symbol े underneath

a consonant symbol to indicate ri. So far you have met only the word

kripaa कृपा

EXERCISES

A. Substitute in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. māī _____ nahī jaantaa.

Hindi

that man

English

that woman

much Hindi

those women

much English

these men

him

your son

his friend

his parents

this man

your friends

this woman

your friend, Ram Lal

these women

his elder brother

those men

his sister

2. _____ mujhee kuch muškil hoogii.

in reading Hindi

in writing Hindi

in speaking Hindi

in understanding Hindi

in reading a Hindi book

in understanding a Hindi book

in reading a Hindi newspaper

in reading an English book

in reading an English newspaper

in writing a letter in English

in writing a letter in Hindi
 in understanding a Hindi newspaper
 in reading a third grade book
 in reading a fourth grade Hindi book
 in understanding a fourth grade Hindi book

3. kyaa aap kee paas _____ kitaabēē bhii hāī?

simpler than these	smaller than this
better than this	bigger than that
easier than these	more new than these
more difficult than these	

4. kyaa aap _____ paRh leetee hāī.

Hindi	these books
English	these Hindi books
Hindi books	these English books
Hindi newspapers	these Hindi newspapers
English books	these English newspapers
English newspapers	

5. woo _____ kii koošiš kareegaa.

to learn Hindi	to bring his wife with him
to read Hindi	to be (reach) there at 10 a.m.
to buy some Hindi books	to work in the hotel
to go to a bookstore	to buy a dictionary
to bring his wife	to live in this house.

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making changes, if necessary:

1. _____ aap kee liyee kaisaa raheegaa.

this	this hotel
this book	these socks
this newspaper	these shirts
this dictionary	these handkerchiefs
this room	these

C. Change the following sentences into negative sentences using the correct form of the negative.

1. dawaaxaanee see dawaa laaiyee.
2. mujhee zukaam aur buxaar kii dawaa diijiyee.
3. kyaa aap aašaa kii waršgāāTh mēē aaēēgee.
4. māī is dukaan see kapRee xariidūūgaa.
5. kyaa woo agreee kee liyee eek TikaT lee?
6. aap koo aaj apnee mitr see milnaa caahiye.
7. meeraa mitr meeree liyee paark mēē Thahreegaa.
8. meeree bhaai kaanpuur mēē wyaapaar karēēgee.
9. aap koo isTeešan jaanaa caahiye.
10. aap koo hindii kaa samaacaar patr paRhnaa caahiye.
11. kyaa raam kaa mitr is hooTal mēē Thahree?
12. woo apnee saath apnii patnii koo laaeegaa.
13. kyaa yee aadmii is ghar mēē rahee?
14. kyaa māī neehruu paark mēē ghuumūū?
15. kyaa gaarii pāāc bajee chuuTeegii?
16. kyaa māī us see milūū?
17. woo kal aašaa kii waršgāāTh mēē aaēēgii.
18. usee eek šabd kooš xariidnaa caahiye.
19. kyaa jaan kee maataa pitaa isTeešan jaaēē?
20. "waršgāāTh" šabd kaa matlab šabd kooš mēē deekhoo.

21. aagraa bahut acchaa nagar hoonaa caahiye.
22. yee aurat is aspataal see dawaa leegii.
23. yee kitaab aap kee liyee acchii raheegii.
24. yahāā baiThiyee.
25. kyaa DaakTar Śarmaa is samai aspataal mēē milēēgee?

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

yee laRkaa bazaar jaanaa ..yee wahii laRkaa hai joo caahtaa hai. bazaar jaanaa caahtaa hai.

1. yee laRkaa dawaa leenaa caahtaa hai.
2. yee laRkii hooTal mēē kaam karnaa caahtii hai.
3. yee laRkaa phal xariidnaa caahtaa hai.
4. yee laRkii hindii siikhnaa caahtii hai.
5. yee laRkee hindii kaa samaacaar patr paRhnaa caahtee hāī.
6. kyaa yee laRkiyāā paark mēē ghuumnaa caahtii hāī?
7. yee laRkaa aaśaa kaa baRaa bhaaii hai.
8. yee laRkii aśook nagar mēē rahtii hai.
9. yee laRkiyāā kal kaanpuur jaaēēgii.
10. yee laRkee hooTal mēē Thahrēēgee.
11. kyaa yee naukar ghar kaa sab kaam kareegaa.
12. yee bas aagree jaaegii.
13. kyaa yee gaarii aaTh bajee chuuTtii hai?
14. yee jaghee ghuumnee kee liyee bahut acchii hai.
15. yee kitaab bahut saral hai.

E. Translate orally:

1. What does this word mean?

2. What does this word mean in English?
3. What does this Hindi word mean in English?
4. This is a dictionary.
5. This is a Hindi dictionary.
6. This dictionary has the meanings of Hindi words in English.
7. I need a dictionary.
8. Do I need a dictionary?
9. I don't need a dictionary.
10. Give me some Hindi books.
11. Give me some third grade Hindi books.
12. Can I have (take) some third grade Hindi books?
13. I have some difficulty in understanding Hindi.
14. I have some difficulty in writing Hindi.
15. He has some difficulty in understanding Hindi newspapers.
16. These boys have some difficulty in speaking Hindi.
17. Do you read newspapers?
18. Can you read Hindi newspapers?
19. He should read Hindi newspapers.
20. He can read Hindi books and newspapers.

F. Read the following:

Text of Lesson X

- १ क्या यहाँ पड़ोस में कोई अच्छा डाक्टर है ।
- २ हाँ, लेकिन बात क्या है ?
- ३ क्या आपके यहाँ कोई बीमार है ?
- ४ जी हाँ, मेरी छोटी लड़की को कल रात से जुकाम हो गया है ।
- ५ और इसी कारण से उसे कुछ बुखार भी है ।

- ६ अरे, यह तो बड़े अफ़सोस की बात है ।
 ७ देखिए यहाँ से कुछ ही दूर पर डाक्टर शर्मा का दवाख़ाना है ।
 ८ आप उसे वहाँ ले जाएं ।
 ९ क्या डाक्टर शर्मा एक अच्छे डाक्टर हैं ?
 १० जी हां, बहुत थोग्य, चतुर और प्रसिद्ध ।
 ११ क्या उनका दवाख़ाना इस समय खुला होगा ?
 १२ जी हां, उनका दवाख़ाना सुबह सात बजे से दोपहर बारह बजे तक और शाम पांच बजे से रात बारह बजे तक खुला रहता है ।
 १३ इस समय वे दवाख़ाने में ही होंगे ।
 १४ अच्छा, तब मैं वहाँ नहीं तो देर हो जाएगी ।

अस्पताल

Text of Lesson XI

- १ नमस्ते, आइए, अन्दर आइए, बैठिए, कहिए, क्या हालचाल है ?
 २ सब आपकी कृपा है ।
 ३ मैं आपको एक कष्ट देना चाहता हूँ ।
 ४ परसों तीसरे पहर मेरी छोटी लड़की आशा की वर्षगांठ है ।
 ५ और उसके बाद शाम को एक दावत है ।
 ६ मेरी प्रार्थना है कि आप उसमें जाएं ।
 ७ और साथ ही अपनी पत्नी और बच्चों के भी लाएं ।
 ८ मैं तो अवश्य आ जाऊंगा ।
 ९ पर अपनी पत्नी के बारे में नहीं जानता ।
 १० क्यों ? क्या वे उस दिन खाली नहीं हैं ?
 ११ जी नहीं, यह बात नहीं है ।
 १२ मेरी पत्नी की तबियत आजकल खराब है ।
 १३ इसलिए मैं नहीं कह सकता कि वे आ सकेंगी या नहीं ।
 १४ फिर भी मैं उन्हें लाने की कोशिश करूंगा ।
 १५ क्या आप मेरे घर का पता जानते हैं ?

- १६ जी नहीं ।
 १७ मेरा घर अशोक नगर में है - मकान नंबर सोलह ।
 १८ यह मकान सड़क के किनारे पर है ।
 १९ ठीक है, मैं कितने बजे आऊँ ?
 २० दावत शाम सात बजे है ।
 २१ आप उस समय तक अवश्य आ जाएं ।
 २२ ठीक है, मैं पहुँच जाऊंगा ।
 २३ बड़ी कृपा होगी ।

आज

कल

परसों

नरसों

Text of Lesson XII

- १ कहिए, मैं आपके लिए क्या कर सकता हूँ ?
 २ मैं कुछ हिन्दी की किताबें लेना चाहता हूँ ।
 ३ हिन्दी की किताबें किधर हैं ?
 ४ आप मेरे साथ इधर आइए ।
 ५ ये रहीं हिन्दी की किताबें ।
 ६ आपको कैसी किताबें चाहिए ?
 ७ मैं ऐसी किताबें चाहता हूँ जिनसे मैं आसानी से हिन्दी सीख सकूँ ।
 ८ आप कितनी हिन्दी जानते हैं ?
 ९ मैं ज़्यादा हिन्दी नहीं जानता ।
 १० कुछ कुछ बोल लेता हूँ ।
 ११ क्या आप हिन्दी पढ़ लेते हैं ?
 १२ जी हां, मैं हिन्दी पढ़ तो आसानी से लेता हूँ ।
 १३ लेकिन समझने में कुछ कठिनाई होती है ।
 १४ क्या आप समाचार पत्र पढ़ लेते हैं ?
 १५ हां, पढ़ लेता हूँ, समझने में जरूर कुछ कुछ मुश्किल होती है ।
 १६ अच्छा, देखिए, यह किताब आपके लिए कैसी रहेगी ?

- १७ यह तो कठिन है ।
 १८ यह देखिए, यह कैसी रहेगी ?
 १९ हां, यह ठीक है ।
 २० यह तीसरे दर्जे की किताब है ।
 २१ तब मुझे दूसरे, तीसरे और चौथे दर्जे की किताबें दे दीजिए ।
 २२ क्या आपको एक शब्द कोश भी चाहिए ?
 २३ शब्द कोश ? शब्द कोश का मतलब क्या है ?
 २४ अंग्रेजी में शब्द कोश का मतलब है डिक्शनरी ।
 २५ अच्छा, जी हां, चाहिए ।
 २६ क्या आपके पास कोई ऐसा शब्द कोश है जिसमें हिन्दी शब्दों
 का मतलब अंग्रेजी में हो ।
 २७ जी हां, यह लीजिए ।
 २८ ठीक है, इन सबका दाम कितना हुआ ?
 २९ चौदह रूपए ।
 ३० बहुत अच्छा, ये लीजिए चौदह रूपए ।
 ३१ धन्यवाद, नमस्ते ।

G. Read the following:

- I. १ कल तीसरे पहर मेरे मित्र राम लाल की छोटी लड़की आशा
 की वर्षगांठ है ।
 २ यह उसकी चौथी वर्षगांठ है ।
 ३ इसलिए कल मैं राम लाल जी के घर जाऊंगा ।
 ४ मेरे साथ मेरी पत्नी और मेरे बच्चे भी जाएंगे ।
 ५ उनके यहां वर्षगांठ के बाद एक दावत भी है ।
 ६ यह दावत शाम सात बजे है ।
 ७ इसलिए हमें वहां शाम सात बजे तक पहुंच जाना चाहिए ।
- II. १ मेरा मित्र जान हिन्दी जानता है ।
 २ वह हिन्दी आसानी से पढ़ लेता है ।

- ३ और उसे हिन्दी की किताबें और समाचार पत्र पढ़ने में
 कोई कठिनाई नहीं होती ।
 ४ वह हिन्दी समझ भी लेता है ।
 ५ हिन्दी समझने में उसे ज्यादा मुश्किल नहीं होती ।
 ६ लेकिन उसे हिन्दी लिखने में अभी बहुत कठिनाई होती है ।
 ७ उसे चाहिए कि वह जल्दी हिन्दी लिखना सीखे ।

REVIEW III

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given.

1. kya aap _____ aagree lee jaanaa caahtee hāī?
 this man your sons and daughters
 this woman my servant
 your children your younger brother
 my children your servant
 your wife your elder brother's family
 your family her friends
 his servant these clothes
 your books this medicine
 your father your elder sister
 his parents his friends
 her children these men
 these children these women
2. yee dukaan _____ khulii rahtii hai.
 from 7 a.m. to 9 p.m. from 2 p.m. to 10 p.m.
 from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. from 5 p.m. to 1 a.m.
 from 8 a.m. to 6 p.m. from 3 p.m. to 12 midnight
 from 10 a.m. to 7 p.m. from 4 p.m. to 11 p.m.

from 8 a.m. to 8 p.m.

3. usee _____ koošiš karnaa caahiye.

to go to the bazaar
to bring the medicine
to read this book
to speak in English
to learn Hindi
to buy a Hindi dictionary
to meet his parents
to see a room in the hotel
to bring the medicine from the hospital
to bring the medicine from the doctor's office
to know about this city
to live in this house
to be there by 7 p.m.
to tell about this town
to work in this store
to write a book
to go by bus
to live in a new house
to live in this city
to buy a Hindi newspaper

4. woo _____ nahīī jaantaa.

my house	your friend
my address	my friend, John
my children	this woman
your father	my sister

her parents

our house

this man

these men

this place

the time of the train

this doctor

the time of the train for
Agra

this boy

this hotel's address

these women

my brother's store

Ram's store

English

Nehru Park

5. aagree kee liyee gaarīī _____ chuutīī hai.

at 8 a.m.

at 4 p.m.

at 5 p.m.

at 10 p.m.

at 8 p.m.

at 10 a.m.

at 3 p.m.

at 9 a.m.

at 7 p.m.

at 12 noon

at 1 p.m.

at 7 a.m.

6. _____ kīī tabiyat kal raat see acchīī nahīī
hai.

my wife

our father

his sister

that boy

their son

this girl

this woman

that woman

this boy

my servant's wife

that man

my friend's son

my elder brother

our father's friend

his friend's wife

my younger sister

her husband

John's younger brother

his mother

this man

7. kyaa jaan koo _____ kuch muškīī hoogīī?

in going to Kanpur

in working in the store

in working in the clothing store
 in reaching there by 9 a.m.
 in buying these medicines
 in living in this city
 in telling your address
 in meeting the doctor
 in learning Hindi
 in learning to write Hindi
 in reading Hindi
 in understanding English
 in speaking these words

8. māī nahīī jaantaa _____.

whether he will come
 whether she is sick
 whether he knows Hindi
 whether he likes this city
 whether he lives in this house
 whether he has a clothing store
 whether he has an elder brother
 whether this doctor is a good one
 whether his house is on the street
 whether he wants to buy a dictionary
 whether the hospital will be open at this
 time.
 whether his wife is coming today
 whether he is going to the dinner tomorrow
 whether he wants to live in this house

9. kyaa yee kitaabēē _____ hāī.

easier than those books
 more difficult than those books
 simpler than those books
 bigger than those books
 smaller than those books
 newer than those books

10. meeree bhaai _____ kaa wyaapaar kartee hāī.

books	clothes
medicines	silk cloth
cloth	woolen cloth
fruit	cotton cloth

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making changes, if necessary:

1. kyaa _____ nayaa hai?

this hotel	this park
this book	this cloth
these books	these clothes
this dictionary	this bus
these dictionaries	these buses
these medicines	these streets
your house	this news
these stores	this newspaper
this hospital	these newspapers

2. raam kii praarthnaa hai ki _____ us kee ghar
 aaūī.

I she this man

he	they	this woman
we	you (polite)	these women
you (familiar)	my wife and I	these men

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

māī kaam kartaa hūū. mujhee kaam karnaa caahiyeē.

1. woo laRkaa hindii likhnaa siikhtaa hai.
2. gaaRii doo bajee chuuTtii hai.
3. māī isii hooTal mēē Thahrtii hūū.
4. woo yahīī baiThtaa hai.
5. māī usee is nagar kee baaree mēē bataataa hūū.
6. woo aap kii baat samajhtaa hai.
7. meeree pitaa aspataal see dawaa laatee hāī.
8. woo yee kitaab paRhnee kii koošiš kartaa hai.
9. woo is dukaan kee baaree mēē jaantaa hai.
10. jaan apnee mitr see miltaa hai.
11. woo isii nagar mēē rahtaa hai.
12. laRkii hindii kii kitaabēē paRhtee hai.

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

laRkaa hindii paRhtaa laRkee hindii paRhtee hai. hāī.

1. yee kamraa bahut acchaa nahīī hai.
2. yee kitaab bahut muškil hai.
3. kyaa is samai dawaaxaanaa khulaa hoogaa.
4. makaan saRak kee kinaaree par hai.
5. laRkii hindii mēē likhtii hai.

6. meerii bahin aagree mēē rahtii hai.
7. yee khiRkii bahut chootii hai.
8. yee dawaa buxaar kee liyee acchii hai.
9. kyaa yee laRkii hindii boolnaa jaantii hai.
10. aagree kii gaaRii kab chuuTtii hai?
11. yee šabd kooš aap kee liyee kaisaa raheegaa.
12. yee dukaan bahut baRii hai.
13. meeraa bhaai ab kaanpuur mēē wyaapaar kareegaa.
14. yee baccaa raam kaa hai.
15. yee santaraa bahut miithaa hai.

E. Transform the following sentences into negative sentences according to the model given:

māī bazaar jaataa hūū. māī bazaar nahīī jaataa.

1. aap koo daawat mēē aanaa caahiyeē.
2. woo apnee bhaai see kuch rupae leetaa hai.
3. is aspataal see dawaa liijiyeē.
4. kyaa bas yahāā miltii hai?
5. is mēē pāāc rupaee lagēēgee.
6. meeraa bhaai aagree mēē wyaapaar karnaa caahtaa hai.
7. hindii paRhnee kii koošiš kiijiyeē.
8. us kaa dawaaxaanaa šaam kee samai khulaa rahtaa hai.
9. kyaa wee pāāc bajee aa rahee hāī?
10. kal uskii waršgāāTh hai.
11. mujhee hindii boolnaa siikhnaa caahiyeē.
12. ham wahāā saat bajee tak pahūcēēgee.
13. kyaa ham aap kee maataa pitaa see mil saktee hāī?

14. is samai un koo ghar mẽẽ hoonaa caahiye.
15. mãĩ hooTal mẽẽ kaam kar saktaa hũũ.

F. Translate orally:

1. We must go now.
2. I want to ask a favor of you.
3. We want to ask a favor of him.
4. That will be very kind of you.
5. That will be very kind of him.
6. I would like you to come to the dinner.
7. We would like you and your family to come to the dinner.
8. He would like us to go to the dinner.
9. Do you know my house?
10. Do you know the address of my house?
11. Do you know where Ashok Nagar is?
12. Do you know where my house is?
13. There is a very good doctor in the neighborhood.
14. There is a very good doctor in Ashok Nagar.
15. Please tell me about the doctor.
16. Please tell me about this town.
17. What time does this hospital open?
18. What time does Dr. Sharma's office open?
19. I don't know when the hospital is open.
20. Tell me whether he wants to come or not.
21. Tell him that I don't want to come.
22. There is a dinner tonight at Ram's house.
23. There will be a dinner tomorrow night at my

friend's house.

24. Will there be a dinner at your house tomorrow night?
25. There should be a dinner after the birthday celebration there.

G. Conversation:

1. A's son is having a birthday celebration. A goes to his friend B's house and invites him formally to come to his place to participate in the celebration and in the dinner to take place thereafter. B. accepts the invitation. Further, A insists that B should bring his family as well with him, and B promises to do so.
2. A's wife is sick and therefore he wants to go to a doctor. He asks his neighbor B about a good doctor. B suggests Dr. Ram Lal and tells that he is a very competent, skillful and well known doctor. A asks when the doctor's office is open and then hurriedly leaves for the doctor's office.
3. A goes to a doctor's office to get some medicine for his wife who has a fever. When he gets there, he finds that he is late and the doctor isn't there. He asks the doctor's assistant B where he can find the doctor now. B tells him that the doctor will be available in the hospital at this time. Then A leaves for the hospital.
4. A meets B on the street. After an exchange of formal greetings, B asks A where he is going. A tells him that he is going to the station to get his parents. B asks about A's parents, where they live, their profession etc. A answers all these questions and tells B that his younger brother and sister are also coming with his parents. Then he takes leave of B and goes to the station.
5. A tells B that he wants to learn Hindi. B asks if he knows Hindi at all. A tells him that he can read Hindi but has some difficulty in understanding and speaking it. B asks A if he can read Hindi newspapers etc. A again tells that he reads them fairly well, but doesn't understand them so well. B suggests that A should buy a dictionary in which he can find the meanings of Hindi words in English and tells him the name of the bookstore where he can get one. A thanks B and leaves.

6. A enters a bookstore and asks for some Hindi books. The clerk shows him some Hindi books which A thinks are difficult for him. Finally, he gets the kind of books he needs and buys them. He further asks for a Hindi-English dictionary and buys that too.

H. Read the following:

- I. १ मैं अपने मित्र के लिए कुछ संतरे लेना चाहता हूँ ।
 २ मेरा मित्र आजकल बीमार है ।
 ३ उसे जुकाम और बुखार हो गया है ।
 ४ इस समय वह अस्पताल में है ।
 ५ संतरे खरीदने के बाद मैं उससे मिलने के लिए अस्पताल जाऊँगा ।
 ६ यह अस्पताल अशोक नगर में है ।
 ७ अशोक नगर यहाँ से बहुत दूर है ।
 ८ इसलिए मैं बस से जाऊँगा ।
 ९ अशोक नगर का अस्पताल बहुत अच्छा अस्पताल है ।
 १० इसी अस्पताल में डाक्टर राम लाल काम करते हैं ।
 ११ डाक्टर राम लाल बहुत अच्छे, योग्य और मशहूर डाक्टर हैं ।
 १२ वे ही मेरे मित्र को दवा रहे हैं ।
 १३ इसलिए मैं समझता हूँ कि मेरा मित्र बहुत जल्दी अच्छा हो जाएगा ।
- II. १ कल मेरे बड़े भाई कानपुर से आ रहे हैं ।
 २ उनके साथ उनकी पत्नी और उनके बच्चे भी आ रहे हैं ।
 ३ उनके दो लड़कियाँ और एक लड़का हैं ।
 ४ वे सभी कल सुबह आठ बजे की गाड़ी से आएँगे ।
 ५ मैं और मेरी पत्नी उन्हें लेने के लिए स्टेशन जाना चाहते हैं ।
 ६ मैं कल सुबह स्टेशन ठीक समय से पहुंचना चाहता हूँ ।
 ७ मैं नहीं चाहता कि मुझे देर हो जाय नहीं तो मेरे भाई और उनके परिवार को स्टेशन पर ही रुकना होगा ।
 ८ इसका कारण यह है कि वे मेरे घर का पता नहीं जानते ।

९ इसलिए मुझे कल आठ बजे तक स्टेशन अवश्य पहुंच जाना चाहिए ।

- III. १ मैं रोज़ सुबह घूमने के लिए नेहरू पार्क जाता हूँ ।
 २ नेहरू पार्क एक बहुत बड़ा और प्रसिद्ध पार्क है ।
 ३ वहाँ मेरे बहुत से मित्र घूमने के लिए आते हैं ।
 ४ घूमने के लिए यह पार्क बहुत अच्छी जगह है ।
 ५ साथ ही यह पार्क मेरे घर से बहुत दूर भी नहीं है ।
 ६ यह एक मील से ज्यादा नहीं है ।
 ७ लेकिन आज मैं घूमने न जा सकूँगा ।
 ८ आज मुझे अपने एक मित्र से मिलने जाना है ।
 ९ जिनसे मुझे कुछ ज़रूरी काम है ।
 १० इसलिए आज मैं उनसे मिलने जाऊँगा, घूमने नहीं ।
- IV. १ मैं कानपुर में अजमेरी होटल में ठहरूँगा ।
 २ यह होटल बहुत अच्छा होटल है ।
 ३ इसमें सिंगिल, डबल सभी तरह के कमरे हैं ।
 ४ और इन कमरों में सभी तरह की सुविधाएँ हैं ।
 ५ साथ ही इस होटल में कमरों का किराया भी ज्यादा नहीं है ।
 ६ सिंगिल कमरे का किराया दस रुपए रोज़ और डबल कमरे का पन्द्रह रुपए रोज़ ।
 ७ यह होटल स्टेशन से बहुत दूर भी नहीं है ।
 ८ लगभग एक मील होगा ।
 ९ स्टेशन से होटल तक जाने के लिए बस भी मिलती है ।
 १० इससे ठहरने के लिए यह होटल सबसे अच्छी जगह है ।
- V. १ मैं परसों सुबह आगरे जाना चाहता हूँ ।
 २ लेकिन मैं नहीं जानता कि आगरे के लिए बस कितने बजे छूटती है ।
 ३ इसलिए मुझे आज ही बस स्टेशन जाना चाहिए ।
 ४ और बस छूटने के समय के बारे में जानने की कोशिश करना चाहिए ।

LESSON XIII

Conversation -- Visiting Someone

	JOHN	
श्री	Mr.	
मोहन लाल	Mohan Lal	
जी	particle of respect	
क्या श्री मोहन लाल जी घर पर हैं ?	Is Mr. Mohan Lal in?	
	SERVANT	
दफ्तर	office	
नहीं लौटे	has not come back	
जी नहीं, वे अभी दफ्तर से नहीं लौटे ।	He has not come back from the office yet.	
	JOHN	
लौटना	to return	
वे कब तक लौटेंगे ?	When will he return?	
	SERVANT	
मैं नहीं जानता ।	I don't know.	
आम तौर पर	usually, ordinarily	
साढ़े	plus one half	
आसपास	vicinity	
के आसपास	about, approximately	
वापस	back	
वापस आना	to come back, return	

आम तौर पर वे साढ़े पांच बजे
के आसपास वापस आते हैं ।
क्या आप उनसे मिलना चाहते हैं ? Do you want to see him?

	JOHN	
हां, मुझे उनसे कुछ ज़रूरी काम है ।	Yes, I have some important work with him.	
	SERVANT	
इंतज़ार	waiting	
इंतज़ार करना	to wait for, to expect	
तब क्या आप उनका इंतज़ार करेंगे ?	Will you wait for him then?	
	JOHN	
जी नहीं, अभी तो चार ही बजे हैं ।	No, it's only four o'clock right now.	
डेढ़	one and a half	
अभी तो उनके वापस आने में डेढ़ घंटे की देर है ।	There is still an hour and a half before he comes back. (In his coming back there is a delay...)	
	SERVANT	
पहले	before	
जी हां, लेकिन वे कभी कभी कुछ पहले भी आ जाते हैं ।	Yes sir, but sometimes he comes a little earlier too.	
	JOHN	
कम	little, less	

कम से कम	at least
पढ़ना	to fall, to have to, must
फिर भी मुझे कम से कम एक घंटे रुकना पड़ेगा ।	Even then I'll have to wait for an hour at least.
इस समय मुझे जल्दी है, इसलिए मैं न रुक सकूंगा ।	I'm in a hurry right now, so I won't be able to wait (for him).

SERVANT

फिर	again
तो क्या आप शाम को फिर उनसे मिलने आएंगे ?	Will you come again in the evening to see him?

JOHN

क्या वे शाम को घर पर ही रहेंगे ?	Will he be at home in the evening?
----------------------------------	------------------------------------

SERVANT

कहीं नहीं	nowhere
जी हां, वे शाम को कहीं नहीं जाते ।	Yes sir, he doesn't go anywhere in the evening.

JOHN

तब मैं शाम को उनसे मिलने आऊंगा ।	Then I'll come to see him in the evening.
बता देना	to tell
उन्हें बता देना कि मैं अशोक होटल में रह रहा हूँ ।	Tell him that I'm staying in the Ashok Hotel.
अगर	if

टेलीफोन	telephone
टेलीफोन करना	to call on the phone
अगर वे शाम को खाली न हों, तो मुझे टेलीफोन कर दें ।	If he isn't free in the evening, he should phone me.

SERVANT

कह देना	to tell
बहुत अच्छा, मैं कह दूंगा ।	All right, I'll tell him.

NUMERALS

इक्कीस	(ikkis, ikkiis)	twenty-one
बाइस	(baais, baaiis)	twenty-two
तेइस	(teeis, teeiis)	twenty-three
चौबीस	(caubis, caubiis)	twenty-four
पच्चीस	(paccis, pacciis)	twenty-five
छब्बीस	(chabbis, chabbiis)	twenty-six
सत्ताइस		twenty-seven
अट्ठाइस		twenty-eight
उनतीस	(untis, untiis)	twenty-nine
तीस		thirty

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

सवा	plus one quarter
पौन	three quarters
पौने	less one quarter
ढाई	two and a half
श्रीमान	Mr.
श्रीमती	Mrs.

कुमारी Miss

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

Masc. II

दफ्तर

office

Fem. I

कुमारी

Miss

इंतज़ार

waiting

श्रीमती

Mrs., Miss

आसपास (no pl.) vicinity

टेलीफोन

telephone

श्रीमान्

Mr.

2. New Verbs

लौटना

to return

पड़ना

to fall, to have to, must

2.1. New Compound Verbs

Type I

बता देना

to tell

कह देना

to tell

Type II

इंतज़ार करना

to wait

टेलीफोन करना

to call on the phone

3. New Postpositions

के आसपास

about, approximately

4. Numerical Fractions

The word साढ़े "plus one half" is used with numerals three and above as follows:

साढ़े तीन

three and a half

साढ़े पांच

five and a half

साढ़े दस बजे

at 10:30

Note that "one and a half" and "two and a half" are not expressed by using साढ़े but by special words:

छेढ़

one and a half

ढाई

two and a half

The word सवा when used by itself means "one and a quarter" and, when used with numbers above one, means "plus one quarter."

सवा बजे

at 1:15

सवा तीन बजे

at 3:15

सवा दो

two and a quarter

The word पौन means "three quarters" and also 12:45 when used with बजा or बजे.

पौन बजा है

It is 12:45

पौन बजे हैं

पौन रूपए

three quarters of a rupee

The form पौने means "less one quarter" when used with numbers above one:

पौने दो

one and three quarters

पौने सात

six and three quarters

पौने पांच बजे

at 4:45

The forms साढ़े, सवा, पौन and पौने always precede the numeral.

5. Terms of Address

The form श्री can be used with a person's family name, male or female, married or unmarried, much as in English one used Mr., Mrs., Miss. In this case the

respectful particle जी may also be used or may not be used. If the whole name is used, then जी must precede the last name. The form श्री may also be used with a person's first names, in which case जी must be used.

श्री मोहन लाल जी	Mr. Mohan Lal
श्री शर्मा	} Mr. Sharma
श्री शर्मा जी	
श्री मोहन लाल शर्मा	} Mr. Mohan Lal Sharma
श्री मोहन लाल जी शर्मा	

The forms श्रीमान् "Mr.," श्रीमती "Mrs.," and कुमारी "Miss" may be used as in English:

श्रीमान् मोहन लाल जी	Mr. Mohan Lal
श्रीमती आशा शर्मा	Mrs. Asha Sharma
कुमारी आशा शर्मा	Miss Asha Sharma

The forms श्रीमान्, श्रीमती and कुमारी may be used along with जी but without any name in which case they are roughly equivalent to "sir," "madam," and "miss":

श्रीमान् जी	sir
श्रीमती जी	madam
कुमारी जी	miss

Note that the form श्री followed immediately by जी is not used in Hindi.

6. पड़ना

The Hindi verb पड़ना literally "to fall," has the meaning "to have to, must" when used with a dependent infinitive. In this usage, the subject is in the

dative case. The infinitive may be used in the masculine singular form in which case the form of the verb पड़ना will always be in third person masculine singular. Alternatively both the infinitive and the verb पड़ना may agree in number and gender with the direct object, if the direct object is in the nominative case.

मुझे बाज़ार जाना पड़ेगा । I'll have to go to the bazaar.

मुझे किताबें खरीदना पड़ेगा । } I'll have to buy books.
मुझे किताबें खरीदनी पड़ेंगी । }

मुझे रोज़ बहुत से पत्र लिखना पड़ता है । } I have to write many
letters every day.
मुझे रोज़ बहुत से पत्र लिखने पड़ते हैं । }

7. इंतज़ार करना

The expression इंतज़ार करना means "to wait, to wait for, to expect" and the person waited for is expressed by the का form of the noun or pronoun.

मैं उनका इंतज़ार कर रहा हूँ । I am waiting for him.

वह आज पांच बजे मेरा इंतज़ार करेगा । He will wait for (expect) me today at 5 o'clock.

8. Infinitive

The infinitive may be used as an imperative. When used this way, the infinitive is less polite than the imperative in -iye and more polite than the imperative in -oo. A common situation in which the -naa form would be proper would be the case of an older brother addressing a younger brother who is no longer a child and, therefore, could not properly be addressed by the -oo form and yet to use the -iye form would be formal to the point of impoliteness. The -naa form is less

abrupt than the -oo form. Compare the avoidance of abruptness in English by saying, "why don't you read this letter" or "you ought to read this letter" instead of "read this letter." English is not strictly comparable to Hindi since these English expressions might be used where Hindi would use -iyee.

उन्हें बता देना ।	Why don't you tell him.
यह पत्र पढ़ना ।	You ought to read this letter.
पार्क में न घूमना ।	You shouldn't walk in the park.

9. Conditional Sentence

A conditional sentence referring to an event in the future, may have the verb of the "if" clause in either the future or the optative and will have the verb of the result clause in the future. This is comparable to the English construction with the verb of the "if" clause in the present and the verb of the result clause in the future.

अगर वे आएं तो मैं उन्हें	} If he comes, I'll give him
किताब दूंगा ।	
अगर वे आएं तो मैं उन्हें	
किताब दूंगा ।	} the book.
अगर वह कमरा देखेगा तो	If he sees the room, he'll
वह उसे ले लेगा ।	take it.

Note that the sentence in the conversation doesn't quite follow the pattern discussed above, since it has an optative form of the verb in both clauses.

अगर वे शाम को खाली न	If he isn't free in the
हों तो मुझे टेलीफोन	evening, he might phone
कर दें ।	me.

If the optative is used in the result clause, then the optative must also be used in the "if" clause and the sentence implies probability like English "may" or "might."

अगर वे आएं तो मैं उन्हें	If he comes, I might give
किताब दूंगा ।	him a book.

10. Writing System

10.1. Consonant Combinations

Some symbols that do not lend themselves to the joint writing that has been discussed previously are written separately but with the symbol ळ, called हलन्त underneath the first consonant indicating that there is no vowel between this consonant and the following one. The items, that you have met, which may be written this way are the following:

daftar	दफ्तर	aTThaaais	अट्ठाइस
--------	-------	-----------	---------

10.2 New Consonant Combinations

šr	श्र	šrii	श्री
tt	त्त	sattaaais	सत्ताइस
kk	क्क	ikkiis	इक्कीस
bb	ब्ब	chabbiis	छब्बीस

10.3 Irregular Spellings

šriimaan	श्रीमान्
----------	----------

This word is irregular since it is always written with हलन्त at the end.

10.4 Postpositions

Postpositions, when used with pronouns, are normally written along with the pronoun as a single word.

इसका कमरा his room

When used with nouns, the postposition is normally written as a separate word:

राम का कमरा Ram's room

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. क्या आप ----- इंतज़ार कर रहे हैं ?

for him	for your family
for his brother	for their families
for my parents	for your mother
for your sister	for your friends
for my friend	for our children
for my friends	for your wife
for your elder brother	for Mr. Ram Lal
for your children	for Mr. Mohan Lal Sharma
for his family	

2. वह ----- आ जाएगा ।

at 5:30 p.m.	at 5:45 p.m.	at 10:45 p.m.
at 8:15 p.m.	at 12:30 p.m.	at 10:15 a.m.
at 10:45 a.m.	at 8:45 a.m.	at 1:30 p.m.
at 7:30 p.m.	at 1:15 p.m.	at 4:30 p.m.
at 9:45 a.m.	at 6:15 p.m.	at 2:30 p.m.
at 7:30 a.m.	at 12:45 p.m.	at 1:30 a.m.

3. मैं राम की दुकान से ----- किताबें खरीदना चाहता हूँ ।

some twenty-three

one dozen	twenty-seven
twenty-five	twenty-two
twenty-eight	twenty-six
twenty-one	thirty
twenty-four	at least thirty
twenty-nine	

4. मुझे यहाँ ----- रुकना पड़ेगा ।

for one hour
for at least one hour
for two and a half hours
for about an hour and a half
for about an hour and a quarter
for three and three quarters of an hour
for at least three and a quarter hours
for five and a half hours
for about four and three quarters of an hour
for four and a quarter hours
for at least two and a half hours
for about two and three quarters of an hour

5. अगर वे शाम को ----- तो मुझे टेलीफोन कर दें ।

is free
isn't free
goes out
doesn't go out
goes to the bazaar
doesn't go to the bazaar

goes for a walk
 doesn't go for a walk
 goes to his store
 doesn't go to his store
 goes to the dinner
 doesn't go to the dinner
 goes to the dinner at Ram's house
 doesn't go to the dinner at Ram's house

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes, if necessary:

1. अगर ----- शाम को बाज़ार जायें तो उसे टेलीफोन कर दें ।

they	Mr. Ram Lal
he	Mr. Ram Nath Sharma
you (polite)	Asha
she	your son

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह ये किताबें खरीदेगा । ----- उसे ये किताबें खरीदना पड़ेगा ।

1. मैं अस्पताल से दवा लाऊंगा ।
2. तुम राम को दस रुपय दोगे ।
3. मैं कुछ कमीज़ें खरीदूंगा ।
4. वे ये फल अपने घर ले जाएंगे ।
5. वह ये पत्र लिखेगा ।
6. आप कुछ मोज़े खरीदेंगे ।
7. हम आपको सभी बातें बताएंगे ।
8. मैं बाज़ार से कुछ संतरे लाऊंगा ।

9. मैं यह किताब पढ़ूंगा ।
10. वह मुझे इस शहर के बारे में बताएगा ।
11. मैं हिन्दी पढ़ूंगा ।
12. तुम ये शब्द सीखोगे ।
13. मैं अपने मित्र के लिये दवा ले जाऊंगा ।
14. हम यह घर खरीदेंगे ।
15. मैं यह सिंगिल कमरा लूंगा ।

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

क्या मैं बाज़ार जाऊं ? ----- मुझे बाज़ार जाना चाहिए ।

1. क्या वह पार्क में घूमने जाए ?
2. क्या मैं शाम को आपसे मिलने आऊं ?
3. क्या मैं इसी अस्पताल से दवा लूं ?
4. क्या हम उसके यहां काम करें ?
5. क्या मैं उसे ये बातें बता दूं ?
6. क्या मेरी लड़की हिन्दी लिखना सीखे ?
7. मैं ये दवाएं कहां से खरीदूं ?
8. क्या मैं आपके लिये बस स्टॉप पर रुकूं ?
9. क्या वह बाज़ार से कुछ संतरे लाए ?
10. मैं कितने बजे आपका इंतज़ार करूं ?
11. क्या मैं यह किताबें पढ़ूं ?
12. क्या मैं आपको इस कमरे का किराया बताऊं ?
13. क्या वह उस नगर में रहे ?
14. क्या वे अपने मित्रों से मिलें ?
15. हम आपके यहां कब पहुंचें ?

E. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

मैं राम की दुकान से दवा ----- दुकान, जिसे मैं दवा लेता हूँ,
लेता हूँ । राम की है ।

1. वह मेरी दुकान से कपड़ा खरीदता है ।
2. मैं राम के लड़के से कल मिलूंगा ।
3. मेरी पत्नी उसी शहर में रहेगी ।
4. मेरा भाई इसी बाज़ार से फल खरीदता है ।
5. मैं राम के नौकर का इंतज़ार कर रहा हूँ ।
6. मैं आजकल यही किताब पढ़ रहा हूँ ।
7. राम का परिवार उसी सड़क के किनारे पर है ।
8. उसका मकान इसी सड़क के किनारे पर है ।
9. मैं राम के होटल में ठहरूंगा ।
10. वह उसी गाड़ी से आगे जायेगी ।

F. Translate orally:

1. If I go there, I'll call you on the phone.
2. If you go there, you should tell me.
3. If you go there, you should tell me before.
4. I'll wait for you there.
5. I'll wait for you there at 5 p.m.
6. He will wait there for you till 5 p.m.
7. There is still an hour and a half before he comes back.
8. There is still an hour and a half before he comes back from the office.
9. There is still an hour and a quarter before he comes back from the hospital.
10. I'll have to come again.
11. I'll have to come again to see him.
12. I'll have to come again to see him in the evening.

13. Should I come again to see him in the evening?
14. I should come again to see him in the evening.
15. Tell him that he is staying in the Ashok Hotel.
16. Tell him that I am staying in the Ashok Hotel.
17. Tell him that I will stay in the Ashok Hotel.
18. Tell him that you will stay in the Ashok Hotel.
19. I'll have to wait for him for about an hour.
20. I'll have to wait for him for one hour at least.
21. He will have to wait for me for at least two hours.
22. Should I wait for him for about an hour?
23. Should I wait for him for one hour at least?
24. You should wait for me for about an hour and a half.
25. You should wait for him for an hour and a half at least.

LESSON XIV

Conversation -- Two old friends meet

SHANKAR DAYAL

पहचाना (you) recognized
नमस्ते, कहिये, मुझे पहचाना ? Hello, did you recognize me?

RAM LAL

शंकर दयाल Shankar Dayal
अरे हां, तुम तो शंकर दयाल हो ! Oh yes, you are Shankar
Dayal.

आए (you) came
यहां कब आए ? When did you come here?
से पहले, के पहले before
कभी नहीं never
देखा (I) saw
इससे पहले तो तुम्हें यहां कभी I haven't seen you here
नहीं देखा । before.

SHANKAR DAYAL

शहर city
आया (I) came
हां, मैं कल ही इस शहर में I came to this city yester-
आया । day.
मालूम knowledge, awareness
था was
लेकिन मुझे मालूम न था कि But I didn't know that you
तुम भी इसी शहर में हो । were also in this city.

RAM LAL

मैं आजकल यहीं हूँ । I am here nowadays.
हाल recent time
तबादला transfer
हुआ है has been
हाल ही में यहां मेरा तबादला I have been transferred
हुआ है । here recently.
कैसे what for, how?
तुम यहां कैसे आए ? How did you come here?

SHANKAR DAYAL

कंपनी company
सेल्स मैनेजर sales manager
दौरे पर tour
आया हूँ (I) have come
मैं आजकल एक कंपनी में सेल्स Nowadays, I am a sales
मैनेजर हूँ और यहां दौरे पर manager in a company and
आया हूँ । I've come here on a tour.

RAM LAL

इरादा intention
कब तक रुकने का इरादा है ? How long do you intend to
stay?

SHANKAR DAYAL

और more, else
अभी चार पांच दिन और I'll be staying four or
रहूंगा । five days more.

RAM LAL
कहाँ रह रहे हो ? Where are you staying?

SHANKAR DAYAL
मार्ग road, street
सुभाष मार्ग Subhas Marg, Subhas Road
सुभाष मार्ग पर कानपुर होटल In the Kanpur Hotel on
में । Subhas Marg.

RAM LAL
तब एक दिन शाम हमारे यहाँ Then come to our place some
आजो न ? evening, won't you?
कल शाम खाली हो ? Are you free tomorrow
evening?

SHANKAR DAYAL
पार्टी party
कल शाम तो खाली नहीं हूँ, I'm not free tomorrow
एक पार्टी में जाना है । evening, I have to go to
a party.

RAM LAL
तब परसों ? Then (how about) the day
after tomorrow?

SHANKAR DAYAL
हाँ, परसों ठीक रहेगा । Yes, the day after tomorrow
will be fine.

RAM LAL
तब परसों हमारे यहाँ आजो । Then come to our place the
day after tomorrow.

महात्मा गांधी मार्ग Mahatma Gandhi Marg
कोठी house
महात्मा गांधी मार्ग पर १८ At house number 18 on
नंबर की कोठी पर । Mahatma Gandhi Marg.
प्रतीक्षा waiting
प्रतीक्षा करना to wait for, to expect
में तुम्हारी प्रतीक्षा करूँगा । I'll be expecting you.

SHANKAR DAYAL
मैं साढ़े पांच बजे तक आ I'll be there by 5:30.
जाऊँगा ।

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

Masc. I

Fem. I

तबादला	transfer	कम्पनी	company
दौरा	tour	पार्टी	party
इरादा	intention	कोठी	house

Masc. II

Fem. II

शहर	city	प्रतीक्षा	waiting
मालूम	awareness knowledge		

हाल recent time

सेल्स मैनेजर sales manager

मार्ग road, street

2. New Verbs

पहचानना to recognize

2.1 New Compound Verbs

Type II

प्रतीक्षा करना to wait for, to expect

3. New Postpositions

के पहले
से पहले before

4. Form of the Perfect

The perfect form of a Hindi verb may be formed by adding the inflection -aa, -ee, -ii, -iī to the stem of the verb. The inflection is already known and represents masculine singular, masculine plural, feminine singular, and feminine plural respectively.

Infinitive	देखना	सूरीदना	सुनना
Verb Stem	देख	सूरीद	सुन
Perfect -- Masc. Sg.	देखा	सूरीदा	सुना
Masc. Pl.	देखे	सूरीदे	सुने
Fem. Sg.	देखी	सूरीदी	सुनी
Fem. Pl.	देखीं	सूरीदीं	सुनीं

If the stem of a verb is composed of two or more syllables and ends in vowel -a- followed by a consonant, then this vowel is dropped in pronunciation when the perfect endings are added. This, however, will not be indicated in the writing.

Infinitive	समझना	samajhnaa
Verb Stem	समझ	samajh
Perfect -- Masc. Sg.	समझा	samajhaa
Masc. Pl.	समझे	samajhee
Fem. Sg.	समझी	samajhii
Fem. Pl.	समझीं	samajhiī

If the stem ends in a vowel, then the masculine singular ending is -yaa, always written या, the mascu-

line plural ending is -ee written ए or ऐ, the feminine singular and plural endings are -ii and -iī respectively, usually written ई, ई but occasionally यी and यीं as well.

Infinitive	बताना	आना
Verb stem	बता	आ
Perfect -- Masc. Sg.	बताया	आया
Masc. Pl.	बतार (बताये)	आर (आये)
Fem. Sg.	बताई (बतायी)	आई (आयी)
Fem. Pl.	बताई (बतायीं)	आई (आयीं)

Some verbs have an irregular stem used in the formation of the perfect form. The ones you have met so far are the following:

Infinitive	लेना	देना	करना	होना	जाना
Perfect -- Masc. Sg.	लिया	दिया	किया	हुआ	गया
Masc. Pl.	लिर	दिर	किर	हुर	गर
Fem. Sg.	ली	दी	की	हुई	गई
Fem. Pl.	लीं	दीं	कीं	हुईं	गईं

5. Perfect Tense

The perfect form of the verb is used by itself as a perfect tense. This tense usually equates with the English simple past tense. The negative is expressed by नहीं.

वह बाज़ार गया ।

He went to the bazaar.

वह यहाँ कब आया ?

When did he come here?

मैं हॉटल में रुकी ।

I stayed in the hotel.

बस यहाँ से कूटी ।

The bus left from here.

वह बाज़ार नहीं गया । He did not go to the bazaar.

6. Present Perfect Tense

The present perfect tense is formed by using the perfect form followed by the simple present of the verb होना "to be." This usually equates with the English present perfect ("has gone" etc.).

वह बाज़ार गया है । He has gone to the bazaar.
मैं यहाँ दौरे पर आया हूँ । I have come here on a tour.
वह ये किताबें लाई है । She has brought these books.

The negative is expressed by नहीं and like the present imperfect, usually drops the simple present of the verb होना "to be." This means that the negative of the perfect tense and the negative of the present perfect tense have the same form.

वह बाज़ार नहीं गया । { He didn't go to the bazaar.
He hasn't gone to the bazaar.

वह यहाँ नहीं आया । { He didn't come here
He hasn't come here.

7. Simple Past of the Verb होना "to be "

The simple past of the verb होना "to be" has the following forms:

Masc. Sg.	था
Masc. Pl.	थे
Fem. Sg.	थी
Fem. Pl.	थीं

Just as the verb होना is the only verb in Hindi which has a simple present, so it is the only verb which has a simple past. The simple past of होना is used as a main verb usually equating with the English "was," "were."

मुझे मालूम न था । I didn't know (wasn't aware).
मैं उस समय बाज़ार में थी । At that time, I was in the bazaar.
उसके भाई कल आगरे में थे । His brothers were in Agra yesterday.
ये लड़कियाँ कल कहाँ थीं ? Where were these girls yesterday?

8. "To be to," "to be supposed to"

The Hindi equivalent of the English verb "to be supposed to," "to be to" is the infinitive of the verb dependent upon "to be to," "to be supposed to" along with the verb होना. The subject of the verb is in the dative and as with the verb पढ़ना "must," "have to," the infinitive may be used in the masculine singular form under all conditions or it may alternatively agree with the direct object, if the direct object is in the nominative case.

The difference in meaning between the Hindi infinitive plus होना "to be supposed to" construction and the Hindi infinitive plus पढ़ना "to have to," "must" construction is very close to that indicated by the translations. The infinitive plus होना construction implies that somebody expects you to do something which

you either might or might not do but normally would do. The infinitive plus पढ़ना construction implies greater urgency or necessity involving pressure by some external force, human or otherwise.

मुझे एक पार्टी में जाना है । I am (am supposed) to go to a party.

मुझे यह किताब पढ़ना है । } I'm supposed to read this
मुझे यह किताब पढ़नी है । } book.

राम को कुछ पत्र लिखना है । } Ram is to write some
राम को कुछ पत्र लिखने हैं । } letters.

उसे पांच कमीजें खरीदना है । }
उसे पांच कमीजें खरीदनी हैं । } He is to buy five shirts.

Note that the चाहिए construction, when used with a dependent infinitive equates with an English "should," "ought to." The infinitive plus चाहिए construction, the infinitive plus होना construction and the infinitive plus पढ़ना construction are similar to each other in that the subject of all the three constructions is in the dative case and the infinitive may either be in the masculine singular form or it may agree with the direct object, if the direct object is in the nominative case.

मुझे यह किताब पढ़ना चाहिए । }
मुझे यह किताब पढ़नी चाहिए । } I should read this book.

मुझे यह किताब पढ़ना है । } I'm supposed to read this
मुझे यह किताब पढ़नी है । } book.

मुझे यह किताब पढ़ना पड़ेगा । } I'll have to read this
मुझे यह किताब पढ़नी पड़ेगी । } book.

9. मालूम

The word मालूम "knowledge," "awareness" may be used with the subject in the dative case and with the verb होना "to be" as an alternative of the verb जानना "to know."

मुझे मालूम है कि कल उनके
यहां दावत है । } I know that there is a
मैं जानता हूँ कि कल उनके } dinner at his place
यहां दावत है । } tomorrow.

10. इरादा

The form इरादा "intention" is used in a construction that is similar to the English "it is my intention to go..." with the "to go" expressed by the oblique form of the infinitive plus का. Note the word order of those sentences which state the person involved and those which don't state the person.

मेरा इरादा यह किताब पढ़ने का है । } It is my intention to read
this book (I intend to
read this book).

कब तक रुकने का इरादा है ? } How long do you intend
आपका इरादा कब तक रुकने } to stay?
का है ? }

11. "Four or five"

The Hindi equivalent of the English numeral ex-

pression of the type "one or two," "two or three" etc. doesn't use any word equivalent to the English "or."

चार पांच दिन	four or five days
दो तीन घंटे	two or three hours

12. और

The form और besides having the meaning "and" also means "more," "else."

अभी चार पांच दिन और रुकूंगा ।	I'll stay for four or five days more.
कुछ और चाहिए ? और कुछ चाहिए ?	} Do you need something else?
मुझे एक और चाहिए ।	

13. प्रतीक्षा करना

The form प्रतीक्षा "waiting" is an equivalent of इंतज़ार and will occur in the same constructions as इंतज़ार करना:

मैं तुम्हारी प्रतीक्षा करूंगा । मैं तुम्हारा इंतज़ार करूंगा ।	} I'll wait for (expect) you.
वह राम की प्रतीक्षा कर रहा है । वह राम का इंतज़ार कर रहा है ।	
आज शाम छह बजे मेरी प्रतीक्षा कीजिए । आज शाम छह बजे मेरा इंतज़ार कीजिए ।	} Please wait for (expect) me today at 6 p.m.

14. Writing System

14.1 Consonant Combinations

New consonant combinations in this lesson are:

ls	ल्स	seels	सेल्स
rg	र्ग	maarg	मार्ग
rT	र्ट	paarTii	पार्टी
tm	त्म	mahaatmaa	महात्मा

Combinations of the above type, whose components are obvious, will not be noted in future lessons.

14.2 Irregular Spellings

The symbol च "kṣ" is irregular, since the components are not similar either to "k" क or "ṣ" ष or "ṣ" श .

pratiikṣaa	प्रतीक्षा
------------	-----------

The following spelling is also irregular:

maalum	मालूम
--------	-------

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. मैं कल शाम ----- प्रतीक्षा करूंगा ।

for you (familiar)	for her children
for your father	for Mr. Ram Nath
for your mother	for Mr. Ram Nath Sharma
for his friend	for Mr. Sharma's family
for his parents	for my friends
for her sister	for my friend and his wife
for her elder brother	for my friend and his family

2. मुझे ----- एक पार्टी में जाना है ।
- tomorrow
the day after tomorrow
two days after tomorrow
tomorrow in the evening
tomorrow at 5 p.m.
tomorrow at 5 o'clock in the evening
tomorrow at 8:45 p.m.
tomorrow at 5:30 p.m.
the day after tomorrow at 6:30 p.m.
the day after tomorrow at 7:15 p.m.
the day after tomorrow at 8:30 p.m.
the day after tomorrow at 6:45 p.m.

3. _____ यह बात मालूम न थी ।
- I my wife
he Ram Nath
we Ram Nath's sister
they Asha
she Asha's husband
his parents this man

4. अभी ----- और रहने का इरादा है ?
- how many days seven or eight days
a few days five or six days
some time two or three hours
two days four or five hours
four days seven or eight hours

- four or five days three or four hours
three or four days five or six hours
two or three days

5. तो आपका इरादा कब तक ----- का है ?
- to stay here to go there
to stay in this city to go to the doctor's office
to live in this house to stop at the station
to return from Agra to work
to come here to work in this store

6. यह वही आदमी है ----- ।
- who lives in Agra
who should go to the bazaar
who will buy some Hindi newspapers
who reads English books
who studies Hindi
who brought medicine for me
who has come from Ajmer
who works in the fruit store
who will tell you about that hotel
who was at the bus stop this morning
who should learn to read Hindi
whose daughter learns Hindi
whose son learns Hindi in this school
whose house is near the hospital
whose house is in my neighborhood
whom I will see tomorrow morning
whom you should give these books

whom he will tell about you

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes, if necessary:

1. _____ आज ही इस शहर में आया हूँ ।

I (masc.)	they (masc.)
she	I (fem.)
you (masc., familiar)	you (masc., polite)
we (fem.)	they (fem.)
he	we (masc.)
you (fem., polite)	you (fem., familiar)

2. _____ आज ही यहाँ पहुँचा ।

I (masc.)	they (masc.)
she	I (fem.)
you (masc., polite)	you (masc., familiar)
we (fem.)	they (fem.)
he	we (masc.)
you (fem., familiar)	you (fem., polite)

C. Transform the following simple present tense sentences to simple past tense sentences according to the model given:

वह अपने घर में है । ----- वह अपने घर में था ।

1. क्या डाक्टर दवाखाने में हैं ?
2. मेरी पत्नी घर में है ।
3. मुझे यह बात मालूम है ।
4. क्या तुम घर पर हो ?
5. उसे कुछ जुकाम है ।
6. यह दवा अच्छी नहीं है ।

7. यह कमीज़ अच्छी नहीं है ।

8. इसका दाम पाँच रुपए है ।

9. क्या वे दौरे पर हैं ?

10. आपकी लड़की कहां है ?

D. Transform the following present imperfect tense sentences to perfect tense sentences according to the model given:

वह बाज़ार जाता है । ----- वह बाज़ार गया ।

1. वे दफ्तर से कब लौटते हैं ?
2. राम बाज़ार से दवा लाता है ।
3. गाड़ी वहाँ पाँच बजे पहुँचती है ।
4. वह अपने घर कब आता है ?
5. इसे खरीदने में पाँच रुपए लगते हैं ।
6. ये किताबें कहां मिलती हैं ?
7. बस बस स्टॉप पर रुकती है ।
8. क्या आप इस पार्क में घूमते हैं ?
9. वह फल खरीदने बाज़ार जाता है ।
10. यह बस कहां से कूटती है ?

E. Transform the following present imperfect tense sentences to present perfect tense sentences according to the model given:

वह बाज़ार जाता है । ----- वह बाज़ार गया है ।

1. यह गाड़ी वहाँ से पाँच बजे कूटती है ।
2. ये किताबें उसी दुकान पर मिलती हैं ।
3. आप यह सब कहां से लाते हैं ?
4. वह यहाँ से फल ले जाती है ।
5. क्या आप कभी इस पार्क में भी घूमते हैं ?
6. क्या बस यहाँ केवल पाँच मिनट रुकती है ?

7. इसमें दस रुपए लगते हैं ।
8. वह अशोक होटल में ठहरती है ।
9. राम यह दवा अस्पताल से लाता है ।
10. मेरे भाई बाज़ार जाते हैं ।

F. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह स्टेशन जाता है । ----- उसे स्टेशन जाना है ।

1. वह हिन्दी की किताबें पढ़ता है ।
2. मैं यह बात समझता हूँ ।
3. क्या आप उसी होटल में ठहरते हैं ?
4. मैं इसी कम्पनी में काम करता हूँ ।
5. क्या तुम बाज़ार से समाचार पत्र खरीदते हो ?
6. वह अंग्रेज़ी के इन शब्दों का मतलब जानता है ।
7. मैं हिन्दी बोलना सीखता हूँ ।
8. वह पत्र लिखता है ।
9. क्या वह बस-स्टॉप पर रुकता है ।
10. वह कितने बजे दफ्तर जाता है ?

G. Translate orally:

1. I know that he is in this city.
2. I don't know where he lives in this city.
3. He is a sales manager nowadays.
4. Nowadays, he is a sales manager in a company.
5. Nowadays, I am a doctor in the Ashok Nagar Hospital.
6. I have been transferred to this place.
7. I have been transferred to this place recently.
8. Then come to our place some evening, won't you?

9. You won't go to the hospital tomorrow morning, will you?
10. He is going on a tour, isn't he?
11. He should come to this city tomorrow.
12. Should he come to this city tomorrow?
13. If he comes to this city, he will certainly see me.
14. If they come to this city, they will buy some Hindi books.
15. If I come here on a tour, I'll bring you some books.
16. If we come here, we will stay with you.
17. If she buys some books, she'll buy them from your store.
18. If my parents come here, I'll tell you.
19. If you go there, please tell me.
20. If you are sick, go to Dr. Sharma's office.

LESSON XV

Conversation -- Entering School

PRINCIPAL

कहिए, मैं आपके लिए क्या कर सकती हूँ ?
Hello, what can I do for you?

KELKAR

मर्ती
मैं अपनी छोटी लड़की की मर्ती के बारे में आपके पास आया हूँ ।
admission
I have come to see you about the admission of my younger daughter.

PRINCIPAL

कराना
मर्ती कराना
आप उसे किस दर्जे में मर्ती कराना चाहते हैं ?
to have done, to get done
to have admitted, to get admitted
Which grade do you want to get her admitted to?

KELKAR

आठवां
आठवें दर्जे में ।
eighth
In eighth grade.

PRINCIPAL

पढ़ती थी
अभी तक वह कहाँ पढ़ती थी ?
used to study
Where has she been studying up to now?

KELKAR

पूना
Poona

पूने में ।

पिछला

साल

पिछले साल तक मैं पूने में था और मेरी लड़की वहीं पढ़ती थी ।

अभी हाल में ही मेरा तबादला यहाँ हुआ है ।

स्कूल

यहाँ आने पर मुझे मालूम हुआ कि यह स्कूल इस नगर का सबसे अच्छा स्कूल है ।

रखना

और इसलिए मैं उसे इसी स्कूल में रखना चाहता हूँ ।

PRINCIPAL

भाषा

मातृभाषा

आपकी लड़की की मातृभाषा क्या है ?

In Poona.

last, previous

year

I was in Poona till last year and my daughter was studying there.

I have just recently been transferred here.

school

After coming here, I have learned that this is the best school in the city.

to put

And therefore, I want to put her in this school.

language

native language, mother tongue

What is your daughter's native language?

KELKAR

मराठी

मराठी ।

Marathi

Marathi.

PRINCIPAL

पता

awareness, knowledge

पता होना	to be aware, to know
प्रदेश	state, province
पढ़ाई	instruction, study
आपको तो पता ही होगा कि	You must be aware that in
इस प्रदेश के सभी स्कूलों में	all the schools of this
हिन्दी में पढ़ाई होती है ।	province instruction is
	given in Hindi.

विषय	subject
हमारे स्कूल में भी सभी विषयों	In our school too instruc-
की पढ़ाई हिन्दी में होती	tion in all the subjects
है ।	is given in Hindi.

KELKAR

जानकारी	knowledge, information
जी हां, मुझे इस बात की	Yes, I know about that.
जानकारी है ।	

मेरी लड़की वहां स्कूल में हिन्दी	My daughter studied Hindi
भी पढ़ती थी ।	too in school.

विचार	thought, idea
मेरा विचार है कि उसे हिन्दी	I don't think she will have
में कोई कठिनाई न होगी ।	any difficulty in Hindi

PRINCIPAL

तब तो ठीक है ।	Then it's all right.
सातवां	seventh
पास	pass
पास करना	to pass
सर्टिफिकेट	certificate

आपके पास उसके सातवां दर्जा	You must certainly have her
पास करने का सर्टिफिकेट तो	seventh grade certificate.
होगा ही ।	

KELKAR

जी हां, है ।	Yes, I have.
--------------	--------------

PRINCIPAL

भेज देना	to send
तब आप उसे कल सुबह यहां भेज	Then please send her here
दीजिए ।	tomorrow morning.

लोग	people
-----	--------

नाम	name
-----	------

लिख लेना	to write
----------	----------

नाम लिख लेना	to enroll
--------------	-----------

हम लोग इस स्कूल में उसका नाम	We will enroll her in this
लिख लेंगे ।	school.

KELKAR

बहुत अच्छा, मैं भेज दूंगा ।	O.K., I'll send her.
नमस्ते ।	Good-bye.

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

Masc. I

Fem. I

पूना Poona

मर्ती admission

पता knowledge, awareness

पढ़ाई study, instruction

मराठी Marathi

जानकारी knowledge, information

<u>Masc. II</u>		<u>Fem. II</u>	
साल	year	भाषा	language
स्कूल	school	मातृभाषा	native language
प्रदेश	state, province		
विषय	subject		
विचार	thought, idea		
पास	pass		
सर्टिफिकेट	certificate		
लोग	people		
नाम	name		

2. New Verbs

कराना	to get done, to have done	भेजना	to send
रखना	to put		

2.1 New Compound Verbs

Type I

भेज देना	to send	लिख लेना	to write
----------	---------	----------	----------

Type II

मर्ती कराना	to get admitted, to have
पता होना	to be aware of, to know
नाम लिखना	to enroll

3. New Adjectives in -aa

आठवाँ	eighth	पिछला	last, previous
सातवाँ	seventh		

4. Past Imperfect Tense

The past imperfect form of the verb is composed of

the imperfect form of the verb plus the simple past of the verb होना "to be." Note that although both forms show inflection for gender and number, it is only the simple past of the verb होना "to be" that will show the feminine plural inflection -ii.

Masc. Sg.	देखता था	पढ़ता था	जाता था
Masc. Pl.	देखते थे	पढ़ते थे	जाते थे
Fem. Sg.	देखती थी	पढ़ती थी	जाती थी
Fem. Pl.	देखती थीं	पढ़ती थीं	जाती थीं

This form of the verb will frequently equate with the English "used to" form of the verb.

मैं रोज़ सुबह बाज़ार जाता I used to go to the bazaar
था। every morning.

वह इसी स्कूल में पढ़ती थी। She used to study in this
school.

वह कभी कभी मुझे पत्र लिखता Sometimes, he used to write
था। me letters.

This form of the verb may also be used to refer to events in the past, which continued over a period of time where English is likely to use a form like "was studying," "has been studying":

वह अभी तक कहाँ पढ़ती थी? Where has she been studying
up to now?

5. Causative Verbs

Many verbs in Hindi, besides having a form which will be called here the basic form, will have another form, which will be called the first causative. Thus

the verb करना "to do" is classified as a basic form of the verb, and the verb कराना "to get done," "to have done" is the first causative. The first causative will have a complete inflection paralleling that of the basic verb:

Infinitive	करना	कराना
Imperfect (masc. sg.)	करता	कराता
Present Imperfect (3rd, masc.sg.)	करता है	कराता है
Past Imperfect (3rd, masc.sg.)	करता था	कराता था
Perfect (masc.sg.)	किया	कराया
Present Perfect (3rd, masc.sg.)	किया है	कराया है
Present Progressive (3rd, masc.sg.)	कर रहा है	करा रहा है
Optative (3rd, sg.)	करे	कराए
Future (3rd, masc.sg.)	करेगा	कराएगा
Imperative (familiar)	करो	कराओ
Imperative (polite)	कीजिए	कराइए

For the verb करना "to do" (and for most verbs that are transitive) the basic verb will imply that the subject performs the action, whereas the first causative will imply that the subject gets somebody else, i.e., causes somebody else, to perform the action. This will apply to the verb करना by itself and also to verb phrases with करना such as काम करना "to work," टेलीफोन करना "to call on the phone" etc.

वह क्या कर रहा है ?	What is he doing?
वह क्या करा रहा है ?	What is he getting done?
मैं यह काम कर रहा हूँ ।	I'm doing this work

मैं यह काम करा रहा हूँ ।	I'm getting this work done.
वह मुझे टेलीफोन करेगा ।	He will call me on the phone.
वह मुझे टेलीफोन कराएगा ।	He will have me called up (i.e., he will get his secretary to do it).
वे उसे स्कूल में भर्ती करेंगे ।	He will admit him to the school.
वे उसे स्कूल में भर्ती कराएंगे ।	He will get him admitted to the school.
वह यह नहीं कर सकता ।	He can't do it.
वह यह नहीं करा सकता ।	He can't get it done.
वह यह काम नहीं करना चाहता ।	He doesn't want to do it.
वह यह काम नहीं कराना चाहता ।	He doesn't want to get it done.

The person that one gets to do something is expressed in Hindi by means of the postposition से .

वह मुझे अपने नौकर से टेलीफोन कराएगा ।	He will get his servant to call me up.
--	---

6. Ordinal Numerals

The ordinal numerals first, second, third, and fourth are irregular in formation in Hindi. The inflection is that of a regular adjective in -aa.

पहला	first	तीसरा	third
दूसरा	second	चौथा	fourth

The ordinal number "sixth" has the following variants:

छटवाँ	chaṭwāā
-------	---------

छठवां	chaThwāā
छठा	chaThaa

Other ordinal numerals are formed by adding वां to the cardinal numerals.

पांचवां	pāñcwāā	fifth
सातवां	saatwāā	seventh
बारहवां	baarhwāā	twelfth
पन्द्रहवां	pandrhwāā	fifteenth
बीसवां	biiswāā	twentieth
पच्चीसवां	pacciiswāā	twenty-fifth

All the ordinals ending in वां have the following inflections:

Masc. Sg.	पांचवां
Masc. Pl.	पांचवें
Fem.	पांचवीं

7. विचार

The form विचार "thought," "idea" is frequently used where English uses the verb "think." For English "I think" the Hindi expression is literally "my thought is," मेरा विचार है। Where English has the negative of the verb "to think," i.e., "I don't think he is coming," Hindi uses the negative in the subordinate clause, literally "my thought is that he isn't coming": मेरा विचार है कि वह नहीं आ रहा।

मेरा विचार है कि वह बाज़ार I think he is going to the
जायगा। bazaar.

मेरा विचार है कि वह बाज़ार I don't think he is going
नहीं जायगा। to the bazaar.

8. जानकारी

The form जानकारी "knowledge," "information" may be used in situations where English uses the verb "to know about." The person who knows is in the dative case, and the thing known about is expressed by the का form of the noun or pronoun.

मुझे इस बात की जानकारी I know about that.
है।

क्या उन्हें मेरे आने की Does he know about my
जानकारी है? coming?

9. "Must"

Where English uses "must be" meaning that something is almost sure to be true rather than in the meaning of obligation, Hindi uses the future of the verb होना. Where in English a sentence of this kind frequently has in it "certainly" or "surely," Hindi frequently has जरूर, अवश्य, तो -- ही।

आपके पास उसका सर्टिफिकेट You must certainly have her
तो होगा ही। certificate.

10. Agreement

The का forms, मेरा, उसका etc., are sometimes separated from the noun they modify. Thus in the sentence:

आपके पास उसके सातवां दर्जा You must have her

पास करने का सर्टिफिकेट तो seventh grade certifi-
होगा ही । cate.

theउसके modifies the infinitive करने and is in the
oblique because करने is oblique. This is like the
English "her passing seventh grade."

उनकी कपड़े की दुकान his clothing store

In the above phrase उनकी modifies दुकान and is in
the feminine form.

11. Superlative Construction

Where English uses the superlative form of the
adjective, Hindi uses the positive form of the adject-
ive preceded by सबसे. This type of expression is
identical with the comparative type, discussed in
Lesson XII, in that both use a से construction.

यह स्कूल इस नगर का सबसे This is the best school in
अच्छा स्कूल है । the city.

12. लोग

The word लोग may be used in the meaning "people"
and may also be used after a noun or pronoun merely to
indicate that the preceding noun or pronoun is plural.
This use of लोग with pronoun is quite common and
acceptable in Hindi, but the use of लोग with noun is
generally not considered good Hindi and should there-
fore be avoided.

लोग इसके बारे में क्या What do people say about
कहते हैं ? it?

हम लोग उसका नाम लिख लेंगे । We will enroll her.

इस नगर में डाक्टर लोग The doctors in this city
अच्छे हैं । are good.

13. Writing System

13.1 Irregular Spellings

The following words have an irregular spelling:

wiśai विषय

bhaaśaa भाषा

maatribhaaśaa मातृभाषा

There are many items in Hindi written as if they
should be pronounced -ay at the end, but these are all
pronounced -ai. In the future, these forms will not
be given in the list of irregular spellings.

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi
equivalent of the English given:

1. _____ इस बात की जानकारी न थी ।

I Ram Lal's sister

he Mr. Ram Lal

we that girl

they that boy

she my friend

his brother this woman

2. मुझे _____ किताब दे दीजिए ।

fourth twenty-eighth

eighth seventeenth

tenth	twenty-fifth
twelfth	thirtieth
thirteenth	twenty-second
nineteenth	twenty-fourth
twenty-first	twenty-sixth

3. अगर वह आसगा ----- ।

then I'll see him
 then I'll go with him
 then he will go with me to the bazaar
 then I'll give him these Hindi books
 then he will certainly see me
 then he will be able to study Hindi
 then he will give me a call before he comes
 then I'll give him the medicine
 then he will bring his daughter's certificate

4. मुझे _____ पता न था ।

of this thing	of his being here
of this book	of his going to Agra
of this place	of his coming here
of his return	of his coming here today

5. _____ मैं पूने में था ।

till last year
 till yesterday
 till the day before yesterday
 till two days before yesterday
 till last night

till 8 o'clock last night
 till 3 p.m. yesterday
 till 10 a.m. yesterday

6. मेरे पास ----- किताब नहीं थी ।

his	his brother's
their	your son's
your	your daughter's
Ram Lal's	her younger sister's
John's	her elder brother's
his friends'	that woman's

7. मैं कल उस लड़के से मिला ----- ।

who lives in Agra
 who works in the hospital
 who is your friend
 who is your friend's son
 who studies Hindi
 who studies Hindi in your class
 whose name is Ram Lal
 whose parents live in Kanpur
 whose parents will go to Agra tomorrow
 from whom you got this book

B. Substitute orally in the sentences given below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes, if necessary:

1. _____ कभी कभी हिन्दी की किताबें खरीदता था ।

I (masc.)	we (masc.)
she	I (fem.)

you (masc., polite)	you (masc., familiar)
we (fem.)	they (fem.)
they (masc.)	he
you (fem., familiar)	you (fem., polite)

2. आपके पास ----- तो होगा ही ।

her certificate	a Hindi dictionary
that book	envelopes
a ticket	postcards
some oranges	some five-new-pice stamps
medicines	some handkerchiefs
my address	some undershirts

C. Transform the following present imperfect tense sentences to past imperfect tense sentences according to the model given:

राम बाज़ार जाता है । ----- राम बाज़ार जाता था ।

1. मैं यहीं पढ़ती हूँ ।
2. वह कभी कभी मुझे पत्र लिखता है ।
3. हम अंग्रेज़ी सीखना चाहती हैं ।
4. क्या आप इसी दुकान से कपड़े खरीदते हैं ?
5. वे लड़कियाँ अशोक नगर में रहती हैं ।
6. आप उस स्कूल में हिन्दी सीख सकते हैं ।
7. मैं कुछ कुछ हिन्दी बोल लेता हूँ ।
8. वे औरतें दुकान में काम करती हैं ।
9. क्या तुम आज बाज़ार जाना चाहते हो ?
10. मैं यहीं से हिन्दी की किताबें खरीदती हूँ ।

D. Transform the following present imperfect sentences to perfect tense sentences according to the model given:

वह बाज़ार जाता है । ----- वह बाज़ार गया ।

1. आप दफ्तर से कब लौटते हैं ?
2. मेरा भाई इसी बस-स्टॉप पर रुकता है ।
3. क्या वह पांच बजे घर आता है ?
4. आगरे के लिए गाड़ी सात बजे कूटती है ।
5. हिन्दी की किताबें कहां मिलती हैं ?
6. शब्द कोश खरीदने में दस रुपए लगते हैं ।
7. डाक्टर कितने बजे दवाखाने आते हैं ?
8. मैं अस्पताल से दवा लाता हूँ ।
9. मेरे पिता स्कूल जाते हैं ।
10. हम पांच बजे दफ्तर से वापस आते हैं ।

E. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह स्टेशन जाता है । ----- उसे स्टेशन जाना पड़ा ।

1. वह हिन्दी पढ़ता है ।
2. मैं अशोक होटल में ठहरता हूँ ।
3. मेरा भाई दौरे पर जाता है ।
4. वह राम लाल को टेलीफोन करती है ।
5. मेरा नौकर घर का सब काम करता है ।
6. मैं उसे होटल का पता बताता हूँ ।
7. वह हिन्दी की किताबें खरीदता है ।
8. मेरे मातापिता उसी घर में रहते हैं ।
9. मैं मराठी लिखना सीखता हूँ ।
10. हम इसी स्टेशन पर रुकते हैं ।

F. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

किताब कहां मिलती है ? ----- किताबें कहां मिलती थीं ?

1. यह घोबी कहां काम करता है ?
2. लड़का यह बात जानता है ।
3. बस यहीं से कूटती है ।
4. औरतें राम को कुछ कपड़ा देती हैं ।
5. आगरे का टिकट कहां मिलता है ?
6. क्या नौकर घर का सब काम करता है ?
7. लड़की इसी स्कूल में पढ़ती है ।
8. मैं अस्पताल से दवा लाता हूँ ।
9. गाड़ी इसी प्लेटफार्म से कूटती है ।
10. मेरा भाई उसी शहर में व्यापार करता है ।

G. Translate orally:

1. You certainly must have her certificate.
2. He certainly must have my address.
3. You certainly must have his books.
4. You certainly must have her seventh grade certificate.
5. They certainly must have this hotel's address.
6. I'll get you admitted to the school.
7. I'll get his son admitted to the school.
8. I'll get my friend admitted to the school tomorrow.
9. Can you get my brother admitted to the school tomorrow?
10. Should I get my daughter admitted to this school?
11. He used to study Hindi here.
12. What subjects do you study in this school?
13. What languages do you study in the school?
14. What languages will he study in the school?

15. What languages can I study in this school?
16. This is the best school in the city.
17. This is the best bookstore in this bazaar.
18. I think this is the best book of this year.
19. I think Ram Lal is the best boy in the school.
20. I don't think she used to work here.
21. I don't think she knows how to write Hindi.
22. I don't think his native language is Marathi.
23. I don't think you should see him tomorrow.
24. I don't think he has been transferred here recently.
25. I don't think the instruction is given in Hindi here.

LESSON XVI

Conversation -- An Accident

RAM NATH

यात्रा trip, journey
कहिए, कल आपकी यात्रा कैसी
रही ? Hello, how was your trip
yesterday?

BILL

जब when
लौट रहा था was coming back
मुसीबत trouble
पड़ जाना to get (in), be in-
volved (in)
यात्रा तो अच्छी रही, पर जब
मैं लौट रहा था, उस समय
बड़ी मुसीबत में पड़ गया । The trip was fine but when
I was coming back, I got
in trouble.

RAM NATH

क्यों, क्या हुआ ? Why, what happened?

BILL

मोटर car
दुर्घटना accident
मोटर-दुर्घटना car accident
मोटर-दुर्घटना हो गई । There was a car accident.

RAM NATH

अरे, कैसे ? Oh, how?

BILL

लौटते returning
हो गई थी had happened
कल लौटते समय मुझे शाम हो
गई थी । It got dusk when I was
coming back yesterday
(lit.: at the time of my
returning, the evening
had happened).
पानी water, rain
बरस रहा था was raining
उस समय पानी बरस रहा था । It was raining at that time.
काफ़ी quite, rather, enough
अंधेरा darkness
हो गया था had happened
और काफ़ी अंधेरा हो गया था । And it had gotten quite
dark.

RAM NATH

मौसम weather
ख़राब bad
तब तो मौसम काफ़ी ख़राब
हो गया था । Then the weather had gotten
quite bad.

BILL

सावधानी caution
चलाना to drive
चला रहा था was driving
मैं तो बहुत सावधानी से अपनी
I was driving my car very

मोटर चला रहा था ।
पर
तभी
सामने से
जाने वाला
टकरा जाना
पर तभी सामने से आने वाली एक
मोटर मेरी मोटर से टकरा गई ।

cautiously.
but
just then
from in front
coming
to run into
But just then a car coming
from the opposite
direction (in front of me)
ran into my car.

RAM NATH

तेज़ी
आ रही थी
क्या वह मोटर बहुत तेज़ी से आ
रही थी ?

speed
was coming
Was that car coming very
fast?

BILL

जी हां, वह मोटर बहुत तेज़ी
से आ रही थी ।
लगना
ब्रेक
और लगता है, उसके ब्रेक भी
अच्छे न थे ।
मोटरवाला
कोहरा
वजह
पाना

Yes, it was coming very
fast.
to seem
brake
And, it seems its brakes
weren't good (either).
the driver
fog
reason, cause
to get, to find, to be
possible to

मोटरवाला कोहरे की वजह से
देख नहीं पाया और टकरा
गया ।

The driver couldn't see on
account of the fog and
ran into me.

RAM NATH

चोट
आपको चोट तो नहीं आई ?

injury
You didn't get hurt, did
you?

BILL

बचना
बच जाना
जी नहीं, मैं तो बच गया पर
उसे कुछ चोट आई ।

to be saved
to be saved
No, I was safe, but he got
somewhat hurt.

RAM NATH

सचमुच
पढ़ गए थे
तब तो आप सचमुच मुसीबत में
पढ़ गए थे ।

really, in reality
were involved
Then you really were in-
volved in trouble.

BILL

जी हां, इस वजह से कल रात
मैं काफ़ी देर तक घर न
लौट सका ।

Yes, because of this I
couldn't come home till
quite late last night.

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

<u>Masc. I</u>		<u>Fem. I</u>	
अंधेरा (no pl.)	darkness	सावधानी (no pl.)	caution
कोहरा (no pl.)	fog	तेज़ी (no pl.)	speed
<u>Masc. II</u>		<u>Fem. II</u>	
पानी (no pl.)	water, rain	यात्रा	trip, journey
मौसम	weather	मुसीबत	trouble
ब्रेक	brake	मोटर	car
		दुर्घटना	accident
		वजह	reason, cause
		चोट	injury

2. New Verbs

बरसना	to rain
चलाना	to drive
टकराना	to collide, to run into
लगना	to seem
पाना	to get, to find, to be possible to
बचना	to be saved

Note that in this lesson you have met a new causative verb that pairs off with a basic form like the basic form करना, causative form कराना, discussed in Lesson XV:

<u>Basic form</u>		<u>Causative form</u>	
चलना	to go	चलाना	to drive, to cause to go

2.1 New Compound Verbs

Type I

पढ़ जाना	to get into, to be involved in
टकरा जाना	to collide, to run into
बच जाना	to be saved

Type II

यात्रा करना	to travel, to take a trip
-------------	---------------------------

3. Past Perfect Tense

The past perfect of a verb is formed by using the simple past form of the verb होना along with the perfect form of the verb. If the verb agreement is feminine plural, only the auxiliary will show the inflection for plural, -ii; the main verb will show only the feminine inflection -ii.

Masc. Sg.	देखा था	गया था
Masc. Pl.	देखे थे	गए थे
Fem. Sg.	देखी थी	गई थी
Fem. Pl.	देखी थीं	गई थीं

The past perfect is used in Hindi where English uses the past perfect forms like "had gone," "had written" etc.

वह उस समय तक नहीं लौटा था ।	He hadn't come back by that time.
कल लौटते समय मुझे शाम हो गई थी ।	While I was returning yesterday, evening fell.

The past perfect tense is also used in Hindi where

English will use just the past tense. In stating a series of events in the past, the first is likely to be in the past perfect and the others in the perfect. Many uses of the past perfect derive from this situation in that they will imply that something more is going to be stated.

मैं कल आगरे गया था, वहाँ
 मैं एक मित्र से मिला....
 क्या आप कल आगरे गए थे ?
 वह कल मुझसे मिला था ।

Yesterday I went to Agra,
 I met a friend there...
 Did you go to Agra yesterday?
 He met me yesterday.

4. Past Progressive Tense

The present progressive is formed by using the present perfect of the verb रहना along with the stem of the main verb, e.g., जा रहा है. The past progressive is formed similarly by using the past perfect of the verb रहना along with the stem of the main verb, e.g., जा रहा था. This usually equates with the English past progressive "was reading," "was going" etc.

पानी बरस रहा था ।
 क्या वह मोटर बहुत तेज़ी से
 आ रही थी ?

It was raining.
 Was that car coming very
 fast?

5. Verb Review

The forms of the imperfect, present imperfect and past imperfect are parallel to those of the perfect, present perfect and past perfect.

मिलता	मिला
मिलता है	मिला है
मिलता था	मिला था

6. "When" Clause

Where English uses a "when" clause to express the time at which something was taking place, Hindi may use the word समय preceded by the imperfect form of the verb in the oblique case. Thus where English has "when I was returning," Hindi may have literally "at the time of returning" लौटते समय. The person involved in the action may be expressed in Hindi by the का form, thus उसके लौटते समय, मेरे लौटते समय, राम के लौटते समय although the person is likely to be omitted if the context is clear without it.

कल लौटते समय मुझे शाम हो
 गई थी ।
 पानी बरसते समय मैं बाहर
 नहीं जा सकता ।

It got dusk when I was coming back yesterday.
 I can't go out when it's raining.

The time of the action is simultaneous with that of the main verb, i.e., लौटते समय will mean "when I was returning" if the main verb is past but will mean "when I am returning" if the main verb is present.

(मेरे) बाज़ार जाते समय मोटर
 दुर्घटना हो गई ।

There was a car accident when I was going to the bazaar.

पार्क में उसके घूमते समय मैं

I'll see him when he is

उससे मिल लूंगा ।

taking a walk in the park.

7. वाला

The form वाला is used in two constructions:

1. वाला may be added to the oblique form of the infinitive of a verb. Such a form may be used as a verbal adjective modifying a noun or it may be used as an agentive noun. When used as an adjective, it has the regular inflection, i.e., वाला, वाले and वाली and frequently equates with an English clause introduced by "who," "which," e.g.,

बाज़ार से आनेवाला लड़का	{	The boy coming from the bazaar.
		The boy who is coming from the bazaar.
सामने से आनेवाली एक मोटर मेरी मोटर से टकरा गई ।		A car coming from the opposite direction ran into my car.
हिन्दी बोलने वाला लड़का इसी कमरे में है ।		The boy, who speaks Hindi, is in this room.
रेशमी कपड़े खरीदनेवाली लड़की इसी शहर में रहती है ।		The girl, who is buying the silk clothes, lives in this city.

When used as a noun, the masculine form ends in वाला and has the inflection of a masculine class I noun, and the feminine form ends in वाली and has the inflection of a feminine class I noun. An agentive

noun means a person who performs the action of the infinitive. Thus बोलने वाला "the person speaking" or "the speaker."

बहुत यात्रा करने वाले मुझे पसन्द नहीं हैं ।	I don't like those, who travel a lot.
दवा देने वाला इस समय अस्पताल में नहीं है ।	The dispenser is not in the hospital right now.

2. वाला may be added to a noun or adjective. This form usually makes a noun but in some cases may also be used as an adjective. The inflection will be that mentioned in the preceding section. When used as a noun, it means a person connected in some way with the meaning of the noun to which it is added. Thus मोटर-वाला "a person connected with a car" or "a driver."

Some other useful nouns of this sort are:

दुकानवाला	the storekeeper
फलवाला	the fruit vender
बसवाला	the bus conductor
पानीवाला	the water carrier

Nouns of this pattern are made fairly freely in Hindi but not referring to people of higher social status. When used as an adjective, the construction with वाला simply makes an adjective out of the preceding noun. Thus:

तीन पांच नए पैसे वाले लिफाफे	} Three five-new-pice envelopes
पांच नए पैसे वाले तीन लिफाफे	

पांच बजे वाली बस ।
 पांच बजे की बस ।
 मुझे अच्छी वाली कमीज़ दे
 दीजिए ।

} The five o'clock bus
 Give me the good shirt.

आगरे वाले डाक्टर कानपुर वाले
 डाक्टरों से अच्छे हैं ।

The Agra doctors are better
 than the Kanpur doctors.

8. पाना

The verb पाना "to get," "to find" may be used along with the stem form of another verb in the meaning "to be possible to," "to get a chance to." This construction with पाना may frequently be translated by English "can," "be able to," but it differs from the सकना construction in that it implies the accomplishment of the act, whereas सकना doesn't imply whether an act is accomplished or not.

मोटरवाला कोहरे की वजह से देख नहीं पाया ।	The driver couldn't see (didn't get a chance to see) on account of the fog.
मैं दफ्तर में ही काम कर पाता हूँ, घर में नहीं ।	I can (get to) work in the office but not at home.
मैं बाज़ार जाना चाहता था लेकिन नहीं जा पाया ।	I wanted to go to the ba- zaar but didn't get to go.
मैं कल यह किताब पढ़ सकता हूँ ।	I can read this book to- morrow (with no impli- cation of getting it done).

9. "To rain"

The expression "to rain" in Hindi is पानी बरसना.
 It is not customary to omit पानी unless the context is clear.

10. से

One more adverbial expression like आसानी से is तेज़ी से "fast, quickly."

11. Irregular Spellings

Words in Hindi, which are written as if they end in -ah are usually pronounced -ai.

वजह wajai

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. क्या आप ----- जानते हैं ? (Use a वाला construction)

that boy who lives in Ashok Nagar
 the boy who works in the Kanpur Hotel
 the girl who studies Hindi
 the girl who is buying fruit
 my friend who is going to Agra tomorrow
 Ram's brother who is coming from Kanpur tomorrow
 my son who is learning Hindi in school
 the doctor who works in that hospital
 the boy who studies in the seventh grade
 the woman who works in the clothing store
 the man who takes a walk in the park

2. मोटर दुर्घटना में ----- कुछ चोट आई ।

he	my parents
I	their friends
we	that boy
they	that girl
my wife	the driver
his daughter	that driver

3. मुझे ----- दे दीजिए ।

three five-new-pice stamps
twenty one-new-pice stamps
ten fifteen-new-pice envelopes
twelve five-new-pice postcards
twenty-five ten-new-pice inland letters
thirty two-new-pice stamps
one dozen five-new-pice postcards
one ten-new-pice inland letter
sixteen fifteen-new-pice envelopes
four five-rupee shirts
one dozen good shirts
one two-rupee undershirt
one dozen one-rupee handkerchiefs

4. ----- इस समय यहाँ नहीं है ।

the dispenser
the fruit vender
the bus conductor
the store keeper

the water carrier

the driver

5. कल ----- बहुत देर हो गई थी ।

when I was coming back
when I was coming back from the station
when I was coming back from the hospital
when I was buying clothes from the store
when I was coming back from the party
when I was going to Ram's house
when I was going to see Ram's parents
when I was calling him up on the phone
when I was coming to your house
when I was coming back from their friend's house
when I was taking a walk in the park
when I was going to the doctor's office

6. मैं बहुत सावधानी से ----- चला रहा था ।

my car	my friend's car
his car	my parents' car
their car	his friend's car
the new car	her parents' car
my new car	my wife's parents' car

7. तभी ----- मेरी मोटर से टकरा गई ।

a car
a new car
his car

that man's car
 a car coming from the opposite direction
 a car coming from the left
 a car coming from the right
 John's car coming from the left
 Ram's car coming from the opposite direction
 a new car coming from the right

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes, if necessary:

- उस समय तक घर नहीं पहुँचा था ।
 I (masc.) he
 she we (fem.)
 they (masc.) you (masc., familiar)
 you (fem., familiar) Mr. Ram Lal
 we (masc.) you (masc., familiar)
 they (fem.) you (fem., polite)
 you (masc., polite) Asha
 I (fem.) that woman
- उस समय कपड़े खरीद रहा था ।
 I (masc.) I (fem.)
 she you (masc., familiar)
 you (masc., polite) we (fem.)
 they (fem.) Mr. Mohan Lal
 we (masc.) you (fem., polite)
 you (fem., familiar) he
 they (masc.) that man

C. Transform the following present imperfect tense sentences to past progressive tense sentences:

- वह बाज़ार जाता है । ----- वह बाज़ार जा रहा था ।
- वह इसी होटल में रहता है ।
 - हम इसी दुकान से कपड़े खरीदते हैं ।
 - उसकी बहिन हिन्दी पढ़ती है ।
 - क्या तुम उस समय दफ्तर से आते हो ?
 - क्या आप इसी पार्क में घूमते हैं ?
 - लड़का अस्पताल से दवा लाता है ।
 - क्या आप इसी दुकान से किताबें लेते हैं ?
 - मैं उसे सिंगिल कमरे का किराया बताता हूँ ।
 - क्या तुम मेरी बात नहीं सुनते ?
 - नौकर ये कपड़े धोबी के यहाँ ले जाता है ।
 - मैं इसी होटल में काम करता हूँ ।
 - हम लोग हिन्दी सीखते हैं ।
 - उन दिनों यहाँ पानी बरसता है ।
 - हम लोग उनके दर्जे में हिन्दी में बोलते हैं ।
 - मैं धोबी को कपड़े देता हूँ ।

D. Transform the following present imperfect tense sentences to past perfect tense sentences:

- वह बाज़ार जाता है । ----- वह बाज़ार गया था ।
- राम इसी दुकान से दवा लाता है ।
 - यह बस कितने बजे कूटती है ?
 - वह कुछ फल खरीदने बाज़ार जाता है ।
 - बस इसी बस-स्टॉप पर रुकती है ।
 - ये किताबें इसी दुकान पर मिलती हैं ।
 - इसे खरीदने में बीस रुपए लगते हैं ।
 - आप दफ्तर से कब लौटते हैं ?

8. गाड़ी पांच नम्बर के प्लेटफार्म पर ठहरती है ।
9. मेरे पिता पांच बजे स्कूल से वापस आते हैं ।
10. आप यह सब कहाँ से लाते हैं ?
11. आप वहाँ कितनी देर रुकते हैं ?
12. क्या इसे लेने में पांच रुपए ही लगते हैं ?
13. क्या वह पांच बजे घर लौटता है ?
14. क्या हिन्दी की किताबें यहाँ नहीं मिलतीं ?
15. क्या नौकर आपके कपड़े धोबी के यहाँ ले जाता है ?

E. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह बाज़ार गया । ----- वह बाज़ार नहीं जा पाया ।

1. लड़के यहाँ सात बजे पहुंचे ।
2. उसके भाई कानपुर में दस दिन ठहरे ।
3. लड़की अपने साथ अपना सर्टिफिकेट लाई ।
4. मैं कल अपने मित्र के घर गया ।
5. आशा पांच दिन से ज्यादा इस नगर में रही ।
6. वह आदमी पांच बजे दफ्तर से वापस आया ।
7. हम राम को अपने साथ पार्टी में ले गए ।
8. वह औरत आगरे से परसों लौटी ।
9. मैं कल राम के माता पिता से मिला ।
10. वे अपने साथ अपने परिवार को लाए ।

F. Translate orally:

1. He drives his car very cautiously.
2. I was driving my car very cautiously.
3. He is driving his car very cautiously.
4. Ram will drive his car very cautiously.
5. You should drive your car very cautiously.

6. Was John driving his car very cautiously?
7. Wasn't he driving his car very cautiously?
8. The weather isn't very good today.
9. The weather was very bad here yesterday.
10. The weather had gotten quite bad this morning.
11. The weather was very bad, when I was coming back.
12. It seems the weather had gotten quite bad when you were coming back.
13. He got hurt in the accident.
14. Did the boy get hurt in the accident?
15. He didn't get hurt in the accident, did he?
16. He couldn't see on account of the fog.
17. He couldn't see the car coming from the opposite direction on account of the fog.
18. My car ran into a car coming from the opposite direction.
19. Did his car run into the car coming from the opposite direction?
20. Just then, a car coming from the left ran into my car.
21. My friend got into trouble last night.
22. My brother got into trouble last night on account of the car accident.
23. Did you get into trouble yesterday?
24. How did you get into trouble yesterday?
25. What trouble did you get into yesterday?

REVIEW IV

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. वह आदमी ----- प्रतीक्षा कर रहा है ।

for his wife
for his wife to come
for the car
for good weather
for the office to open
for the rain to stop
for a telephone call
for the bus
for his son
for me to leave the party
for his friend's telephone call
for the servant to bring the newspapers
for his daughter's admission
for his brother's return from the trip
for the bus to stop
for the bus to leave

2. क्या राम को ----- मालूम है ।

about the accident about these books
about the dinner about my telephone call
about my trip about this school
about your trip about yesterday's accident
about your transfer about his birthday

3. क्या ----- इसकी जानकारी है ?

he his friend
they his family
you (polite) their daughter
you (familiar) these children
your servant the boys

4. वह इस समय ----- से मिलने गया है ।

the doctor Mrs. Asha
Mr. Ram Lal Mrs. Asha Sharma
Mr. Mohan Lal Sharma Mrs. Ram Pal
Miss Asha Mrs. Ram Pal Sharma
Miss Asha Sharma

5. ----- कि वह लड़का आज सुबह भी आया था ।

I think her husband thinks
he thinks my brother thinks
Mr. Sharma thinks my sister thinks
my wife thinks my parents think

6. राम का इरादा ----- का है ।

to go to his office
to wait for his wife
to buy a new car
to learn to drive a car
to drive this new car
to go on a tour
to study in this school
to make a trip
to wait till it's dark

to visit his friend
to wait for his phone call
to celebrate his daughter's birthday
to study Hindi here

7. क्या ----- इस दावत के बारे में मालूम है ?

Ram	that woman
he	this girl
they	that boy
you	your father
your sister	your wife
your younger brother	her husband
that man	your elder brother

8. मुझे ----- जानकारी न थी ।

about it
about this school
about these books
about that car accident
about his going
about his returning

9. क्या आप ----- आदमी से मिले हैं ? (use a वाला construction)

who drives this car
who drives this new car
who is learning to drive a car
who lives in that big house
who is going to Agra
who likes sweet fruit

who studies Hindi
who knows how to read Hindi
who enrolls the students in this school
who comes back from Agra tomorrow
who works in the office opposite me
who studies languages

10. क्या आप उस आदमी को जानते हैं, ----- ?

who got hurt in the accident
who speaks Marathi
whose native language is Hindi
who intends to go on tour with you
who knows about the accident
who was driving the car in that bad weather
whose daughter is in the seventh grade in your school
whom we are going to visit tomorrow
who sat near me in the doctor's office
who was driving that car
whose office is near the school
for whom you brought all those books
who has been transferred to Agra recently
who has been waiting for you here for quite some time
who sat opposite you at the party
who has some difficulty in understanding my Hindi

11. ----- हरादा इस शहर से बाहर जाने का है ।

my

his
 our
 their
 that man's
 this boy's
 this doctor's
 my daughter's
 his wife's
 her husband's
 her husband's brother
 her husband's younger brother
 her husband's elder sister
 their parents

12. कल ----- पानी बरस रहा था । (use जाते समय construction)

when I was driving the car
 when the boys were coming back from the dinner
 when I was returning from my trip
 when he was going to the store
 when he was buying those books
 when he was waiting
 when I was working in the office
 when Ram was walking in the park
 when the bus was leaving

13. वह ----- आपकी प्रतीक्षा करेगा ।

at 5:15 p.m. at 12:45 p.m.
 at 2:30 p.m. at 1:30 p.m.

at 6:45 p.m.	at 5:15 p.m.
at 9:15 a.m.	at 11:30 a.m.
at 1:15 p.m.	at 2:45 p.m.
at 3:30 p.m.	at 7:15 a.m.
at 8:45 a.m.	at 10:15 p.m.
at 2:15 p.m.	at 9:45 p.m.

14. इन फलों का दाम ----- है ।

three and a half rupees a dozen
 a rupee and a quarter a dozen
 a rupee and a half a dozen
 two rupees and a quarter a dozen
 two rupees and a half a dozen
 six rupees and a quarter a dozen
 six rupees and a half a dozen
 six rupees and three quarters a dozen
 eight rupees and a half a dozen
 eight rupees and a quarter a dozen
 eight rupees and three quarters a dozen

15. यहां से ----- घर किसका है ?

tenth	eighth
sixth	fourth
third	second
seventh	twentieth
fifth	twenty-fifth
ninth	twelfth
first	eleventh

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes if necessary:

1. ----- शहर से कल सुबह वापस आया है ।

the boy	you (masc., polite)
I (masc.)	you (fem., familiar)
the woman	you (masc., familiar)
they (fem.)	you (fem., polite)
they (masc.)	we (masc.)
I (fem.)	we (fem.)

2. ----- उस समय दफ्तर जा रहा था ।

I (masc.)	you (fem., polite)
they (fem.)	you (masc., polite)
the boy	we (fem.)
I (fem.)	you (masc., polite)
that girl	you (fem., polite)
they (masc.)	we (masc.)

3. ----- पिछले साल इसी स्कूल में पढ़ता था ।

that boy	I (masc.)
I (fem.)	we (fem.)
we (masc.)	you (polite, masc.)
that girl	you (polite, fem.)
these boys	you (familiar, masc.)
those girls	you (familiar, fem.)

4. मुझे ----- देखना है ।

the school	this new car	this state
his house	these books	this town

his office

your store

C. Transform the following present imperfect tense sentences to past perfect tense sentences:

वह शाम को लौटता है । ----- वह शाम को लौटा था ।

1. बस यहां पांच मिनट ठहरती है ।
2. क्या आप इसी दुकान से किताबें खरीदती हैं ?
3. तुम कितने बजे स्कूल जाते हो ?
4. मेरा मित्र पांच बजे वापस आता है ।
5. आप यहां कितने समय रुकते हैं ?
6. वह लड़का किताबें कहां ले जाता है ?
7. वह आदमी इसी कमरे में बैठता है ।
8. बस इसी सड़क पर मिलती है ।
9. गाड़ी सुबह आठ बजे छूटती है ।
10. इसे खरीदने में पन्द्रह रुपय लगते हैं ।
11. ये दवारें यहीं मिलती हैं ।
12. मैं सुबह इसी पार्क में घूमता हूँ ।

D. Transform the following present imperfect tense sentences to past progressive tense sentences:

वह दवा खरीदता है । ----- वह दवा खरीद रहा था ।

1. लड़के हिन्दी सीखते हैं ।
2. वह औरत मोटर चलाती है ।
3. मैं उस समय दफ्तर से वापस आता है ।
4. वह लड़कों को स्कूल के बारे में बताता है ।
5. उन दिनों यहां पानी बरसता है ।
6. मैं भाषाएं सीखती हूँ ।
7. हम इसी मकान में रहते हैं ।
8. बच्चे हिन्दी की किताबें पढ़ते हैं ।

9. क्या आप उनकी बात नहीं सुनते ?
10. मेरी बहिन अस्पताल से दवा लाती है ।

E. Transform the following present imperfect tense sentences to present perfect tense sentences:

वह दफ्तर जाता है । ----- वह दफ्तर गया है ।

1. ये दवारें किस दुकान में मिलती हैं ?
2. गाड़ी क्या यहीं रुकती है ?
3. राम लाल जी इसी दफ्तर में बैठते हैं ।
4. बस पांच बजे से पहले नहीं कूटती ।
5. क्या आपके पिता कभी इस पार्क में घूमते हैं ?
6. क्या तुम यह किताबें स्कूल से लाते हो ?
7. क्या आप कभी इस होटल में भी ठहरते हैं ?
8. मोटर चलाना सीखने में कितने रुपए लगते हैं ?
9. हम पड़ोस के अस्पताल से ही दवा लाते हैं ।
10. वे लड़कियां पांच बजे तक इसी मकान में रहती हैं ।

F. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह बाज़ार जाता है । ----- वह बाज़ार नहीं जा पाया ।

1. लड़के अंग्रेज़ी पढ़ते हैं ।
2. मैं मोटर चलाना सीखता हूँ ।
3. नौकर सब काम करता है ।
4. वह कपड़े खरीदता है ।
5. लड़कियां दवारें लाती हैं ।
6. क्या आप उनकी भाषा समझते हैं ?
7. वह पत्र लिखती है ।
8. मैं मोटर देखता हूँ ।

G. Transform the following sentences according to the

model given:

लड़का बाज़ार जाता है । ----- लड़के को बाज़ार जाना पड़ेगा ।

1. लड़कियां मोटर चलाना सीखती हैं ।
2. नौकर घर का सब काम करता है ।
3. वह बच्चे को इसी स्कूल में भर्ती कराता है ।
4. मेरा छोटा भाई इसी मकान में रहता है ।
5. औरतें कपड़ा खरीदती हैं ।
6. मैं इसी कमरे में बैठता हूँ ।
7. हम सातवें दर्जे में उसका नाम लिखते हैं ।
8. तुम मेरी बात सुनते हो ?
9. तुम मेरी बात नहीं सुनते ।
10. वह लड़का अपने पिता के आने की प्रतीक्षा करता है ।

H. Conversation:

1. A gets a telephone call from the hospital informing him that his wife has had an accident and is in the hospital. A finds out the details and leaves his office hurriedly informing his secretary about it and asking him to take messages for him during his absence.
2. A has recently been transferred to Agra and is new to the town. He looks up his old friend who is in Agra now and asks for his help in finding a place to live, telling him what kind of place he wants.
3. A is asked some advice by B, a new arrival in town, about getting his children admitted into school. A asks for the details, suggests which schools to go to and offers to accompany B personally to the school for getting the children admitted.
4. A has an appointment to see B. B is late for the appointment. He explains that due to bad weather it took him much longer to drive down than he expected and apologizes for the delay.
5. B runs into A, an old friend of his, at a party he is attending. B asks A about his family, parents etc. B invites him out to his place later during the week to meet his family. A asks for the

address of B's house and how to get there, before he leaves the party.

6. A calls on B, who isn't at home. A talks to B's servant who tells him when B will be in and asks A to wait. However, A leaves a message giving his name, the place he is staying, and other details asking B to call him back when he returns.
7. A is an English speaker. The principal of the school, to which A wants his son to be admitted, explains that the medium of instruction is only Hindi and that his son may have some difficulty. A assures the principal that his son knows Hindi because he has studied it for a few years in college in the United States.
8. A hears that B had an accident the previous day. A calls up to find out about the accident, asking B's wife if he can do anything for them.

LESSON XVII

Conversation -- Invitation to a Village

JOHN

हुट्टी	vacation
जगली हुट्टियों में आप क्या करेंगे ?	What are you going to do during the coming vacation?

RAM LAL

गांव	village
जानेवाला हूँ	am about to go
मैं अपने माता पिता से मिलने गांव जानेवाला हूँ।	I am about to go to the village to see my parents.
मैं बहुत दिनों से उनसे नहीं मिला हूँ।	I haven't seen them for a long time.
आप हुट्टियों में क्या करेंगे ?	What are you going to do during the vacation?

JOHN

निश्चय	certainty
जमी निश्चय नहीं है, कहीं घूमने जाने का इरादा है।	It is not certain as yet, I intend to take a trip somewhere.

RAM LAL

देश	country
क्या आपने कभी हमारे देश के गांव देखे हैं ?	Have you ever seen the villages of our country?

JOHN
 भारतीय Indian
 जी नहीं, मैंने भारतीय गांवों No, I have read about Indian
 के बारे में पढ़ा है, villages,
 इच्छा desire
 और तभी से मेरी इच्छा and since then I have
 भारतीय गांव देखने की है। wanted to visit an
 लेकिन Indian village,
 लेकिन अभी तक मैं जा नहीं but
 पाया। go as yet.

RAM LAL
 क्यों why
 तब आप मेरा साथ मेरे गांव Then why don't you come with
 क्यों नहीं चलते? me to my village?
 देख लेना to be able to see
 बीत जाना to pass, to be spent
 आप गांव भी देख लेंगे और You will be able to see a
 आपकी छुट्टियां भी अच्छी village and will enjoy the
 बीत जाएंगी। vacation too (-- and your
 vacation will be spent
 nicely too).

JOHN
 हां, यह है तो अच्छा विचार। Yes, that's a fine idea.
 आपका गांव कितनी दूर है? How far is your village?

RAM LAL
 यही कोई about

अस्सी eighty
 यही कोई अस्सी मील। About eighty miles.

JOHN
 रेलगाड़ी train
 क्या आपके गांव तक रेलगाड़ी Does the train go to your
 जाती है? village?

RAM LAL
 जी हां, लगभग तीन घण्टे Yes, it's about a three
 की यात्रा है। hours' trip.

JOHN
 तब आप कब चलेंगे? When will you leave then?

RAM LAL
 शनिवार Saturday
 बन्द होना to be closed
 शनिवार को दफ्तर बन्द The office will be closed
 होगा। on Saturday.
 चल देना to go, to start off
 उसी दिन शाम को चल देंगे। We will leave that evening.

JOHN
 तब ठीक है, मैं आपके साथ Then it's O.K., I'll go
 चलूंगा। with you.
 असुविधा inconvenience
 आपको कोई असुविधा तो Then it won't be incon-
 नहीं होगी? venient for you?

RAM LAL
 सुशी pleasure, happiness

जी नहीं, मुझे बड़ी खुशी होगी। No, I'll be very glad.

JOHN

अच्छा, अब मैं चूँ। नमस्ते। All right, I should leave
now. Goodbye.

RAM LAL

नमस्ते। Goodbye.

DAYS

इतवार	Sunday
सोमवार	Monday
मंगलवार, मंगल	Tuesday
बुधवार, बुध	Wednesday
बृहस्पतिवार, गुरुवार	Thursday
शुक्रवार, शुक्र	Friday
शनिवार, शनीचर	Saturday
हफ्ता, सप्ताह	week

NUMERALS

इकतीस (iktis, iktiis)	thirty-one
बत्तीस (battis, battiis)	thirty-two
तीतीस (tāītis, tāītiis)	thirty-three
चौतीस (cāūtis, cāūtiis)	thirty-four
पैंतीस (pāītis, pāītiis)	thirty-five
छत्तीस (chattis, chattiis)	thirty-six
सैंतीस (sāītis, sāītiis)	thirty-seven
अड़तीस (aRtis, aRtiis)	thirty-eight
उनतालीस (untaalis, untaaliis)	thirty-nine

चालीस (caalis, caaliis) forty

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

Masc. II

गांव	village
निश्चय	certainty
देश	country

Fem. I

क़ुदती	vacation
रेलगाड़ी	train
खुशी	happiness, pleasure

Fem. II

इच्छा	desire, wish
असुविधा	inconvenience

2. New Verbs

बीतना	to pass, to be spent
-------	----------------------

2.1 New Compound Verbs

Type I

देख लेना	to be able to see
बीत जाना	to pass, to be spent
चल देना	to go, to leave

Type II

बन्द होना	to be closed
-----------	--------------

3. ने Construction

Certain verbs used in any form involving the perfect will express the subject of the verb by using the postposition ने with the subject.

A noun used with the postposition ने is in the oblique case form. Pronouns used with the postposition

ने are irregular, some using the nominative, some using the oblique and some using a special form.

	Sg.		Pl.	
	Nom.	ने Form	Nom.	ने Form
1st Per.	मैं	मैंने	हम	हमने
2nd Per.			तुम	तुमने
			आप	आपने
3rd Per.	वह	उसने	वे	उन्होंने
	यह	इसने	ये	इन्होंने
Rel. Pr.	जो	जिसने	जो	जिन्होंने
Interr. Pr.	कौन, क्या	किसने	कौन	किन्होंने
Indef. Pr.	कोई	किसीने		किन्होंने
	कुछ	कुछने		

The verbs which appear in this construction are all those verbs that are transitive, i.e., take a direct object, with three exceptions:

1. A small number of transitive verbs do not appear in this construction. So far लाना is the only transitive verb of this type you have met.

मैं ये फल लाया ।	I brought this fruit.
वह ये किताबें लाया है ।	He has brought these books.
क्या आप ही ये कपड़े लाए थे?	Did you bring these clothes?

2. Some verbs that may occur with or without an object, are used in the ने construction, when there is an object expressed, and are used without ने when there

is no object expressed. The only verb that you have met so far of this type is समझना ।

मैं समझा ।	I understood.
मैंने आपकी बात समझी ।	I understood you (i.e., what you said).

3. Verbs which take a direct object expressed by the postposition से will normally express the subject by the ने form, when the perfect form of the verb is used. This is true for example of the verb कहना "to say," "to tell" which takes a direct personal object expressed by से .

राम उससे कहता है ।	Ram tells him.
राम ने उससे कहा ।	Ram told him.

However, the verb मिलना "to meet," which also has a direct personal object expressed by the postposition से, does not use the ने construction when the verb is in the perfect form.

मैं उससे दो बजे मिलूंगा ।	I'll see him at two o'clock.
मैं उससे दो बजे मिला ।	I saw him at two o'clock.
लड़की उससे दो बजे मिली ।	The girl saw him at two o'clock.

The agreement of the verb is as follows:

1. If the direct object is in the nominative case, the verb will agree with the direct object in number and gender. The direct object may appear in the nominative case only if it is inanimate.

मैंने वे किताबें पढ़ीं ।	I read those books.
--------------------------	---------------------

मैंने पांच लिफाफे खरीदे । I bought five envelopes.
 उसने अपना काम किया । He did his work.

2. If the direct object is in the को form, then the verb does not agree with either the subject or the object but is arbitrarily used in the masculine singular form. The direct object is always in the को form if the object is animate and is sometimes in the को form if the direct object is inanimate.

उसने लड़के को देखा । { He saw the boy.
 She saw the boy.

क्या आपने मेरे मित्रों को Didn't you recognize my
 नहीं पहचाना था? friends?

क्या राम ने उन किताबों Has Ram read those books?
 को पढ़ा है ?

4. वाला

A new use of वाला with the oblique form of the infinitive is to express an action which is about to take place.

मैं जानेवाला हूँ । I am about to go.
 राम कुछ किताबें खरीदनेवाला Ram is about to buy some
 है । books.
 गाड़ी छूटने वाली है । The train is about to leave.

5. इच्छा

The word इच्छा "desire," "wish" is used with the verb होना where English would use the verb "want to." Where English uses the infinitive with "want," Hindi uses the infinitive with का construction, i.e., the

form की agreeing with इच्छा (feminine). In the following sentences note the word order, when a possessive adjective is used with इच्छा.

हिन्दी पढ़ने की इच्छा the desire to study Hindi
 मेरी इच्छा हिन्दी बोलने I want to speak Hindi.
 की है ।

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. मेरी इच्छा ----- है ।

to go to a village
 to go to an Indian village
 to visit my parents
 to take a trip
 to take a trip somewhere
 to take a trip during the vacation
 to learn Hindi
 to learn to speak Hindi
 to buy some clothes
 to buy some envelopes

2. उसका गांव ----- है ।

how far thirty-seven miles
 thirty miles thirty-three miles
 thirty-eight miles thirty-six miles
 thirty-two miles thirty-one miles
 thirty-nine miles thirty-five miles
 thirty-four miles forty miles

3. क्या आपके दफ्तर में ----- कुट्टी है ?

on Monday	on Thursday
on Saturday	on Friday
on Wednesday	tomorrow
on Tuesday	the day after tomorrow
on Sunday	two days after tomorrow

4. ----- भी अच्छी बीत जायगी ।

his vacation	the night
your holiday	the evening
the morning	

5. ----- कोई असुविधा तो नहीं होगी ।

you (familiar)	your father
he	his family
they	her husband
you (polite)	his sister
your brother	your elder brother

6. ----- यह किताब नहीं पढ़ी ।

I	the boy
he	the girl
we	my friend
they	his sister
she	this man
this woman	that woman

7. मैं ----- उनसे नहीं मिला हूँ ।

for a long time	since last Wednesday
for the last two weeks	since last Monday

for the last three years
for the last so many days
since last Saturday
since last Friday

8. तब मैं आपसे ----- मिलूँगा ।

at 2:30 p.m. on Friday
at 11:30 a.m. on Wednesday
at 7:30 p.m. on Monday
at 5:45 p.m. on Thursday
at 6:15 p.m. on Tuesday
at 8:30 a.m. on Sunday
at 3:45 p.m. on Saturday
at 4:00 p.m. tomorrow
at 3:30 p.m. on Thursday next

9. ----- बड़ी खुशी होगी ।

I	my wife
we	my family
they	our friends
he	my elder brother
my parents	this man

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given making changes, if necessary:

1. ----- अगली कुट्टियों में गांव जानेवाला हूँ ।

I (masc.)	I (fem.)
she	we (masc.)
you (masc., familiar)	you (fem., familiar)

we (fem.)	you (masc., polite)
they (masc.)	they (fem.)
you (fem., polite)	John and his wife
he	this man

C. Transform the following future tense sentences to perfect tense sentences according to the model given:

मैं कल हिन्दी पढ़ूंगा । ----- मैंने कल हिन्दी पढ़ी ।

1. हम उसे यह बात बताएंगे ।
2. क्या आप परसों कपड़े खरीदेंगे ।
3. वह लड़की कल दूजे में हिन्दी बोलेगी ।
4. मैं कल आपका काम करूंगा ।
5. मेरा मित्र कल अंग्रेजी समाचार पत्र पढ़ेगा ।
6. उसकी बहिन कल राम को कुछ रुपए देगी ।
7. क्या तुम परसों कुछ किताबें खरीदोगे ?
8. मैं आपकी बात सुनूंगा ।
9. हम कल एक मकान देखेंगे ।
10. मेरा माई कल शाम पांच बजे मेरी प्रतीक्षा करेगा ।
11. मैं आपकी किताबें भेज दूंगा ।
12. लड़के कल इसी दुकान से दवारं लेंगे ।
13. मैं कल राम को टेलीफोन करूंगा ।
14. हम उसी होटल में दो कमरे लेंगे ।
15. क्या उसकी लड़की इस साल हिन्दी सीखेगी ?

D. Transform the following present progressive tense sentences to perfect tense sentences according to the model given:

वह हिन्दी पढ़ रही है । ----- उसने हिन्दी पढ़ी ।

1. मैं कपड़े खरीद रहा हूँ ।
2. क्या आप उसकी बात सुन रहे हैं ?

3. मैं इस साल हिन्दी सीख रहा हूँ ।
4. उसका माई कुछ लिफाफे खरीद रहा है ।
5. राम धोबी को कपड़े दे रहा है ।
6. क्या तुम मेरी बात सुन रहे हो ?
7. लड़का अस्पताल से दवा ले रहा है ।
8. मैं राम के आने की प्रतीक्षा कर रहा हूँ ।
9. हम डाक्टर शर्मा के दवाखाने से दवा ले रहे हैं ।
10. मैं उसे कुछ किताबें भी भेज रही हूँ ।

E. Transform the following future tense sentences to past perfect tense sentences:

मैं अगले साल हिन्दी पढ़ूंगा । ----- मैंने पिछले साल हिन्दी पढ़ी थी ।

1. क्या तुम अगले साल कुछ किताबें भेज दूंगी ?
2. उसकी बहिन अगले साल कुछ सूती कपड़े खरीदेगी ।
3. लड़का धोबी को कपड़े देगा ।
4. मैं परसों आपकी किताबें भेज दूंगी ।
5. क्या आप इसी दुकान से दवा लेंगे ?
6. हम इसे ये बातें बता देंगे ।
7. लड़की अगले साल हिन्दी सीखेगी ।
8. राम शाम पांच बजे मेरी प्रतीक्षा करेगा ।
9. हम इसी दुकान से संतरे लेंगे ।
10. क्या आप मेरी बात सुनेंगे ?
11. लड़का हिन्दी लिखेगा ।
12. मैं उसे अगले साल कुछ डिक्शनरियां दूंगी ।
13. हम अगले हफ्ते नेहरू पार्क देखेंगे ।
14. क्या आप कल शाम छः बजे मेरा इंतज़ार करेंगे ?
15. क्या आपका नौकर मेरा काम कर देगा ?

F. Translate orally:

1. I intend taking a trip this year.
2. Do you intend to take a trip somewhere during the vacation?
3. Have you seen an Indian village?
4. He wants to visit an Indian village.
5. Does John want to go to see an Indian village?
6. Since then I have wanted to go to India.
7. I have studied about Indian villages.
8. I have studied about Indian people.
9. He must have studied about Indian villages.
10. You must have seen Indian books.
11. You will enjoy your vacation.
12. Did you enjoy your vacation?
13. Why don't you come with me to my village?
14. Why didn't he go to the city with you?
15. Why don't you come to my house with me?
16. Does the train go to your village?
17. Does the bus go to his village?
18. I don't think the bus goes to his village.
19. Do you think the bus goes to Ram's village?
20. The office will be closed on Saturday.
21. The store will be closed at 9 p.m.
22. The office is closed today.
23. The doctor's office was closed when I went there.
24. The clothing store was closed yesterday at 7 p.m.
25. The fruit store was not closed on Friday at 2:30 p.m.

LESSON XVIII

Conversation -- A Hindi Film

RAM PAL

क्या कल शाम आप खाली हैं ? Are you free tomorrow evening?

खास important, special

BILL

कल शाम मुझे कोई खास काम नहीं है । I don't have anything special to do tomorrow evening.

क्यों ? क्या बात है ? Why? What's the matter?

RAM PAL

फ़िल्म film

मैं कल शाम एक हिन्दी फ़िल्म देखने जा रहा हूँ । I'm going to see a Hindi film tomorrow evening.

पसन्द करना to like

क्या आप मेरे साथ चलना पसन्द करेंगे ? Would you like to go with me?

BILL

ज़रूर । Certainly.

आर coming

मुझे भारत आर इतने दिन हो गए लेकिन अभी तक मैंने एक भी हिन्दी फ़िल्म नहीं देखी । It has been a long time since I came to India but I haven't seen a Hindi film yet.

सिनेमा movie
 मैं बड़ी खुशी से आपके साथ I will be glad to go to the
 सिनेमा देखने चलूंगा। movie with you.
 शुरू होना to begin
 फ़िल्म कितने बजे शुरू होती है ? When does the movie begin?

RAM PAL

साढ़े छह बजे। At half past six.

BILL

तब तो फ़िल्म नौ साढ़े नौ Then the movie will last
 बजे तक चलेगी। until nine or nine thirty.

लम्बा long
 मैंने सुना है कि हिन्दी फ़िल्में I have heard that Hindi
 काफी लम्बी होती हैं। films are quite long.

RAM PAL

आम तौर पर generally, ordinarily
 जी हां, आम तौर पर हिन्दी Yes, Hindi films are
 फ़िल्में अंग्रेज़ी फ़िल्मों से usually longer than
 ज्यादा लम्बी होती हैं। English films.
 एक फ़िल्म लगभग ढाई घण्टे A film runs for about two
 चलती है। and a half hours

BILL

सच true
 नाचना to dance
 नाच dance, dancing
 गाना song, singing, to sing
 भरपूर filled with

भरपूर होना to be filled with
 क्या यह सच है कि हिन्दी Is it true that Hindi films
 फ़िल्में नाच-गानों से भरपूर are full of dancing and
 होती हैं ? singing?

RAM PAL

अक्सर often, usually
 कई many

जी हां, अक्सर हिन्दी फ़िल्मों Yes, there are usually eight
 में आठ-दस गाने और कई नाच to ten songs and many
 होते हैं। dances in a Hindi film.

दिलचस्पी interest
 आपको तो नाच-गाने में बहुत You are very much interested
 दिलचस्पी है। in dancing and singing.

सोचना to think
 शायद perhaps

इसीलिए मैंने सोचा कि शायद Therefore, I thought you
 आप हिन्दी फ़िल्म देखना might like to see a Hindi
 पसन्द करें। film.

BILL

जी हां, ज़रूर। Yes, certainly.
 मैं आपके साथ ज़रूर चलूंगा। I'll certainly go with you.

MONTHS

जनवरी January
 फ़रवरी February
 मार्च March
 अप्रैल April

मई	May
जून	June
जुलाई	July
अगस्त	August
सितम्बर	September
अक्टूबर	October
नवम्बर	November
दिसम्बर	December
महीना, मास	month

NUMERALS

इकतालीस	(iktaalis, iktaaliis)	forty-one
बयालीस	(bayaalis, bayaaliis)	forty-two
तित्तालीस	(titaalis, titaaliis)	forty-three
चवालीस	(cawaalis, cawaaliis)	forty-four
पैंतालीस	(pāītaalis, pāītaaliis)	forty-five
क्यालीस	(chayaalis, chayaaliis)	forty-six
सैंतालीस	(sāītaalis, sāītaaliis)	forty-seven
अड़तालीस	(aṛtaalis, aṛtaaliis)	forty-eight
उनचास		forty-nine
पचास		fifty

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

<u>Masc. I</u>	<u>Fem. I</u>
सिनेमा cinema	दिलचस्पी (no pl.) interest
गाना song, singing	
महीना month	

<u>Masc. II</u>	<u>Fem. II</u>
नाच dance, dancing	फिल्म film
मास month	

2. New Verbs

सोचना	to think
नाचना	to dance
गाना	to sing

2.1 New Compound Verbs

Type II

पसन्द करना	to like
शुरू करना	to begin

3. New Adjectives in -aa

लम्बा	long
-------	------

4. Compound Verbs

Many compound verbs formed with करना as the second element of the compound will also form a compound with होना instead of करना as the second element. Some of these compounds with करना will have the same meaning as the compounds with होना but will be used in a different syntactic construction.

Compounds of this type that you have met so far

are:

पसन्द करना	पसन्द होना	to like
इंतज़ार करना	इंतज़ार होना	to wait for
प्रतीक्षा करना	प्रतीक्षा होना	to wait for

इरादा करना	इरादा होना	to intend to
इच्छा करना	इच्छा होना	to want to
विचार करना	विचार होना	to think of

All of these compounds with करना express the subject by the nominative case. Some of these (पसन्द, इंतज़ार, प्रतीक्षा, इच्छा) when compounded with होना express the subject by the dative case, but others (इरादा, इच्छा, विचार) express the subject by the pronominal adjective form.

मैं यह किताब पसन्द करता हूँ ।	}	I like this book.
मुझे यह किताब पसन्द है ।		
मैं उनका इंतज़ार करता हूँ ।	}	I wait for him.
मुझे उनका इंतज़ार है ।		
मैं उनकी प्रतीक्षा करता हूँ ।	}	I wait for him.
मुझे उनकी प्रतीक्षा है ।		
मैं बाज़ार जाने की इच्छा करता हूँ ।	}	I want to go to the bazaar.
मेरी इच्छा बाज़ार जाने की है ।		
मुझे बाज़ार जाने की इच्छा है ।		
मैं बाज़ार जाने का इरादा करता हूँ ।	}	I intend to go to the bazaar.
मेरा इरादा बाज़ार जाने का है ।		
मैं बाज़ार जाने का विचार करता हूँ ।		
मेरा विचार बाज़ार जाने	}	I am thinking of going to the bazaar.

का है ।

Whether the करना construction is present imperfect or present progressive, the equivalent होना construction will be in the simple present. Also whether the करना construction is past imperfect, past progressive or perfect, the equivalent होना construction will be in the simple past.

मैं उनका इंतज़ार करता हूँ ।	}	मुझे उनका इंतज़ार है ।
मैं उनका इंतज़ार कर रहा हूँ ।		
मैं उनकी प्रतीक्षा करता था ।	}	मुझे उनकी प्रतीक्षा थी ।
मैं उनकी प्रतीक्षा कर रहा था ।		
मैंने उनकी प्रतीक्षा की ।		

Of these alternative forms, the constructions with होना occur more frequently than those with करना .

5. शायद

Sentences in which शायद "perhaps," "probably," "maybe" occurs, will have the main verbal form in the optative.

शायद आप हिन्दी फिल्म देखना पसन्द करें ।	Perhaps you might like to see a Hindi film.
शायद कल मैं आपको टेलीफ़ोन करूँ ।	Perhaps I will call you on the phone tomorrow.
शायद वह आज आपसे मिले ।	Perhaps he will see you today.
शायद आज शाम को मैं बाज़ार जाऊँ ।	Maybe I'll go to the bazaar this evening.

6. "Since"

In time statements of the sort "It is a certain time since somebody did something," the clause "since somebody did something" is expressed by using the perfect form of the verb and expressing the subject in the dative case. The verb form does not agree with anything but must necessarily have the ending -ee.

मुझे भारत आर इतने दिन हो गए ।	So many days have passed since I came to India.
मुझे यह किताब पढ़े कई साल हो गए हैं ।	It has been many years since I read this book.
मुझे उससे मिले कई दिन हो गए ।	Many days have passed since I saw him.

Note the word order of the subject and the object in the clause with the perfect form of the verb:

मुझे उसे देखे तीन दिन हो गए ।	It is three days since I saw him.
उसे मुझे देखे तीन दिन हो गए ।	It is three days since he saw me.

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the following sentences the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. शायद आप ----- पसन्द करें ।

- to see a Hindi film
- to buy some books
- to buy some Hindi books
- to visit a village
- to visit an Indian village
- to go to a movie
- to go to an Indian movie

- to go to an Indian movie with me
- to study Hindi
- to learn Hindi
- to talk in Hindi
- to see him
- to see him tomorrow
- to stay in this hotel
- to take a walk in this park
- to buy some sweet oranges

2. क्या ----- हिन्दी फ़िल्म देखना पसन्द है ?

you (polite)	his brother
he	your friends
they	your younger daughter
you (familiar)	his elder sister
this girl	Asha's husband
Ram's wife	this boy

3. मुझे पांच नर पैसे वाले ----- टिकट दे दीजिए ।

forty-six	forty-eight
forty-five	forty-one
forty-two	forty-nine
forty-seven	forty-four
forty-three	fifty

4. ----- बहुत दिन हो गए । (using the perfect form of the verb)

- since he came to India
- since he came back to India
- since I came back from India

since I saw him
 since he saw me
 since I saw a film
 since I saw a good film
 since I saw a good Hindi film
 since I bought these clothes
 since he went to India
 since I read Hindi
 since I read Hindi books and newspapers

5. मैं यहाँ ----- आया था ।

last year	in December	on Monday
last month	in February	on Friday
last week	in June	on Wednesday
in May	in September	on Saturday
in November	in April	on Tuesday
in January	in October	on Sunday
in August	in July	on Thursday
in March		

6. क्या उसे ----- बहुत दिलचस्पी है ?

in dancing
 in singing
 in dancing and singing
 in seeing Hindi movies
 in seeing English movies
 in seeing Indian movies
 in going to India
 in visiting an Indian village

B. Substitute orally in the sentences given below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making changes if necessary:

1. लड़के ने ----- खरीदे ।

some fruit	some woolen cloth
one dozen sweet oranges	some silk clothes
some medicines	one dozen cotton shirts
ten inland letters	a pair of socks
a Hindi newspaper	a bus ticket
some books	fifty books

C. Transform the following sentences with a करना construction to sentences with a होना construction, according to the model given.

मैं यह फ़िल्म पसन्द करता हूँ । ----- मुझे यह फ़िल्म पसन्द है ।

1. मैं यह किताब पसन्द करता हूँ ।
2. वह अपने मित्र के आने की प्रतीक्षा कर रहा है ।
3. क्या आपके भाई इस पार्क में घूमना पसन्द करते हैं ?
4. मैं गाड़ी का इंतज़ार कर रहा हूँ ।
5. लड़की स्कूल खुलने की प्रतीक्षा कर रही है ।
6. मेरा मित्र भारतीय फ़िल्में देखना पसन्द करता है ।
7. क्या आप डाक्टर के आने की प्रतीक्षा कर रहे हैं ?
8. मैं गाड़ी छूटने का इंतज़ार कर रहा हूँ ।
9. वह लड़की हिन्दी पढ़ना पसन्द करती है ।
10. क्या आप अपने भाई के लौटने की प्रतीक्षा कर रहे हैं ?

D. Transform the following sentences with a करना construction to sentences with a होना construction, according to the model given.

वह फल खरीदने की इच्छा ----- उसकी इच्छा फल खरीदने की करता है । है ।

1. क्या आप आज शाम उस पार्टी में जाने का विचार कर रहे हैं ?
2. जान आगरा देखने का इरादा करता है ।
3. वह भारतीय नाच-गाना सीखने की इच्छा करती है ।
4. मैं आज शाम हिन्दी फिल्म देखने का विचार कर रहा हूँ ।
5. वह भारत जाने की इच्छा करता है ।
6. मेरी लड़की अगले साल हिन्दी सीखने का विचार कर रही है ।
7. क्या आप इन क्विट्टर्यों में गांव जाने का इरादा कर रहे हैं ?
8. मेरे मित्र एक हिन्दी फिल्म देखने का इच्छा करते हैं ।
9. क्या आप अपने बीमार भाई को डा० शर्मा के यहां ले जाने का विचार कर रहे हैं ?
10. मैं हाल में ही बाहर जाने का इरादा कर रहा हूँ ।

E. Transform the following present imperfect tense sentences to perfect tense sentences, according to the model given:

वह हिन्दी लिखती है । ----- उसने हिन्दी लिखी ।

1. राम घोबी को कपड़े देता है ।
2. मेरी पत्नी इसी दुकान से फल खरीदती है ।
3. वे लड़कियां इसी स्कूल में पढ़ती हैं ।
4. क्या नौकर आपका सब काम करता है ?
5. वह मुझे अपने दफ्तर के बारे में बताता है ।
6. आप दवाएं कहां से लेते हैं ?
7. लड़कें यहां हिन्दी बोलना सीखते हैं ।
8. वह अपने मित्र को पत्र लिखता है ।
9. मेरे भाई मुझे पांच रुपए देते हैं ।
10. वह अपने मित्र को पत्र भेजता है ।

F. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह बाज़ार जा रहा है । ----- वह बाज़ार जाने वाला है ।

1. मेरी पत्नी अपने लिए कुछ सूती कपड़े खरीद रही है ।
2. वह अपने मित्र को कुछ किताबें भेज रहा है ।
3. मैं राम का नया घर देखने जा रहा हूँ ।
4. क्या तुम घोबी को कपड़े दे रहे हो ?
5. वह आज भारत से वापस आ रहा है ।
6. गाड़ी छूट रही है ।
7. लड़कें हिन्दी पढ़ रहे हैं ।
8. उसका भाई कुछ संतरे ले रहा है ।
9. क्या पानी बरस रहा है ?
10. वह डाक्टर के यहां से आपके लिए दवा ला रहा है ।

G. Translate orally:

1. The movie lasts until nine o'clock.
2. Will the movie last until nine o'clock?
3. Does the movie last until nine o'clock?
4. The movie doesn't last until nine o'clock.
5. I think the movie lasts until nine o'clock.
6. I don't think the movie lasts until nine o'clock.
7. I have heard that Hindi movies are usually very long.
8. Is it true that Hindi movies are usually very long?
9. Is it true that Hindi films are full of dancing and singing?
10. You are very much interested in dancing and singing, aren't you?
11. Is he very much interested in singing and danc-

ing?

12. Are you interested in learning Hindi?
13. My friend is interested in going to India.
14. He should be interested in learning to read and write Hindi.
15. Should he be interested in learning to speak Hindi?
16. When does the movie begin?
17. The school begins at 8 a.m., doesn't it?
18. Hindi films are longer than English films.
19. Hindi films were longer than English films.
20. Hindi films should be longer than English films.
21. English films are better than Hindi films.
22. Hindi films were better than English films.
23. Don't you think that Hindi films were worse than English films?
24. It's true that English films were shorter than Hindi films.
25. I thought that English films were not worse than Hindi films.

LESSON XIX

Conversation -- Building a House

RAM LAL

ख़तम completion, end
ख़तम होना to be finished

कहो, आज काम कहां तक ख़तम Tell me, how far has the
हुआ ? work gone today?

MOHAN

नींव foundation
पूरा full, complete
पूरा होना to be completed

नींव पूरी हो गई है । The foundation has been
completed.

दीवाल wall
बनाना to build, to make
शुरू हो जाना to begin

कल सुबह से दीवाल बनाना By tomorrow, the building
शुरू हो जाएगा । of the walls will begin.

RAM LAL

सामान materials
क्या तुम्हारे पास सभी Have you all the materials?
सामान है ?

MOHAN

ईंट brick
बूना lime

गारा
जी हाँ, ईंटें, बूना, गारा
आदि सभी है ।
ज़रूरत
लेकिन बहुत जल्दी ईंटों की
ज़रूरत पड़ेगी ।

mortar
Yes, we have everything,
bricks, lime, mortar etc.
need
But very soon bricks will
be needed.

RAM LAL

बच रहना
कितनी बच रही हैं ?

to be left
How many are left?

MOHAN

हज़ार
मेरा विचार है कि दस हज़ार
से ज्यादा न होंगी ।
और वे चार पांच दिन में ख़तम
हो जाएंगी ।

thousand
I don't think there are
more than ten thousand
(left).
And they will be used up in
four to five days.

RAM LAL

ख़बर
भेज देना
अच्छा, तब मैं आज ही दुकान
पर ख़बर भेज दूंगा, जिससे
ईंटें समय से आ जाएं ।

information, news
to send
O.K., I'll send a request
to the store today, so
that the bricks will
come on time.

मज़दूर
मज़दूरों का क्या हाल है ?

laborer, workman
What is the situation re-
garding the workmen?

ठीक है, लेकिन अब से हमें
कुछ और मज़दूरों की
ज़रूरत पड़ेगी ।

MOHAN

It is all right, but from
now on we will need some
more laborers.

RAM LAL

कितने ?

How many?

MOHAN

कम से कम
कम से कम एक दर्जन ।

at least
At least a dozen.

RAM LAL

इंतज़ाम
इंतज़ाम करना
ठीक है, मैं उसका इंतज़ाम कर
दूंगा ।
चीज़
और कोई चीज़ चाहिए ?

arrangement
to arrange
O.K., I'll make arrange-
ments.
thing
Do you need anything else?

MOHAN

क़त
इस समय तो नहीं, पर अगले
हफ़्ते क़त बनाने के सामान
की ज़रूरत पड़ेगी ।

roof
Not right now, but materials
for building the roof will
be needed next week.

RAM LAL

लोहा
लकड़ी
सीमेंट
लोहा, लकड़ी और सीमेंट तो

steel, iron
wood
cement
I have enough steel, wood

मेरे पास काफ़ी है । and cement,
इसलिए, कोई कठिनाई नहीं Therefore, there shouldn't
होगी । be any difficulty.

MOHAN
तब ठीक है । Then it's all right.
एक बात और है । There's one more thing.

RAM LAL
क्या ? What?

MOHAN
पैसा money
मुझे कुछ पैसा चाहिए । I need some money.

RAM LAL
मज़दूरी wages
क्यों ? क्या तुम्हें मज़दूरी Why? Didn't you get your
नहीं मिली ? wages?

MOHAN
नहीं, मज़दूरी तो मिल गई है । Yes, I did.
एडवांस advance
पर मुझे कुछ एडवांस चाहिए । But I need an advance.
मेरे बच्चे की तबियत ख़राब My son is not well and
हो गई है और इसलिए मुझे therefore I need money
पैसे की बड़ी ज़रूरत है । badly.

RAM LAL
अच्छा, कितना पैसा चाहिए ? O.K. How much do you want?

MOHAN
इस समय बीस रुपए काफ़ी Twenty rupees will be

होंगे । enough right now.

RAM LAL
अच्छा, ये लो बीस रुपए । O.K., here are twenty
rupees.

MOHAN
मेहरबानी kindness
ठीक है, आपकी बहुत O.K., thank you very much.
मेहरबानी ।

NUMERALS
इक्यावन fifty-one
बावन fifty-two
तिरपन (tirpan, treepan) fifty-three
चउवन, चौवन fifty-four
पचपन fifty-five
छप्पन fifty-six
सत्तावन fifty-seven
अट्ठावन fifty-eight
उनसठ fifty-nine
साठ sixty

GRAMMAR

1. New NounsMasc. I.Fem. I

बूना (no plural)	lime	लकड़ी	wood
गारा (no plural)	mortar	मज़दूरी	wages
लोहा (no plural)	steel, iron	मेहरबानी	kindness

<u>Masc. II</u>		<u>Fem. II</u>	
सामान	materials	नींव	foundation
हज़ार	thousand	दीवार	wall
मज़दूर	workman, laborer	ईंट	brick
इंतज़ाम	arrangement	ज़रूरत	need
एडवांस	advance	ख़बर	information, news
		चीज़	thing
		क़त	roof
		सीमेंट	cement

2. New Verbs

बनाना to build, make

2.1 New Compound Verbs

Type I

बच रहना to be left

भेज देना to send

Type II

ख़तम होना to get finished

इंतज़ाम करना to arrange, to make arrangements

3. New Adjectives in -aa

पूरा full

4. Compound Verbs

Some of the compound verbs that are made with होना and करना as the second element, have a different meaning depending upon whether the compound is with होना or with करना. The compound with होना is likely to

have a passive meaning (something is being done or something gets done), and the compound with करना is likely to have a transitive meaning (somebody does something). The compounds of this type that you have met so far are

बन्द होना to get closed, बन्द करना to close
to be closed

ख़तम होना to get finished, ख़तम करना to finish
to be finished

पूरा होना to get completed, पूरा करना to complete
to be completed

Sometimes the meaning of the compound with होना is intransitive whereas the compound with करना is transitive. So far you have met the following forms:

शुरू होना to begin शुरू करना to begin
(intransitive) (transitive)

Examples of the use of these forms are:

दरवाज़ा बन्द होता है । The door gets closed.

मैं दरवाज़ा बन्द करता हूँ । I close the door

काम ख़तम होता है । The work gets completed.

मैं काम ख़तम करता हूँ । I complete the work.

नींव पूरी होती है । The foundation gets completed.

मैं नींव पूरी करता हूँ । I complete the foundation.

काम शुरू होता है । The work begins.

मैं काम शुरू करता हूँ । I begin the work.

The form बन्द may be used as an ordinary adjective along with the simple present or simple past of होना whereas the forms शुरू, ख़तम, and पूरा may not be used in this way.

दरवाज़ा बन्द है । The door is closed
दरवाज़ा बन्द था । The door was closed.

The forms पूरा and बन्द may be used as adjectives with a following noun:

मैंने पूरे दिन काम किया । I worked the whole day.
यह बन्द दुकान किसकी है ? Whose is this closed store?

Another similar verbal pair is इंतज़ाम होना and इंतज़ाम करना. This pair is similar to the preceding in that the meaning of the form with होना is passive, "arrangements get made" or "are made," and the meaning of the compound with करना is transitive "to make arrangements." This pair is unlike the preceding group in that the thing arranged is expressed by a का construction.

मेरे आगरे जाने का इंतज़ाम Arrangements have been made
हो गया है । for my going to Agra.
मैं आगरे जाने का इंतज़ाम I am making arrangements
कर रहा हूँ । to go to Agra.

5. Time Expressions

Some time expressions are expressed in the oblique case with no postpositions. This is customary with the words दिन, हफ़्ता, महीना, मास, साल, पहर particularly when used with पिछला "last," यह "this," अगला "next."

मैं पिछले साल भारत गया I went to India last year.
था ।

मैं इस महीने भारत जाऊंगा । I will go to India this
month.

वह अगले हफ़्ते भारत He will go to India next
जाएगा । week.

उसने पिछले हफ़्ते यह किताब He read this book last
पढ़ी । week.

मैं तीसरे पहर उनसे मिलूंगा । I will see him in the after-
noon.

With the days of the week the postposition को is used.

वह सोमवार को मुफ़से मिला He saw me on Monday.
था ।

With the names of the months the postposition में is used.

क्या आप नवम्बर में आगरे Did you go to Agra in
गर थे ? November?

Note that the expression "on time" may be समय से, समय पर, वक्त से, वक्त पर.

गाड़ी समय से छूटेगी । The train will leave on time.
सिनेमा समय से शुरू होगा । The movie will begin on time.

6. "Necessity"

Note the following parallel pairs.

ज़रूर अवश्य certainly
ज़रूरी आवश्यक necessary

ज़रूरत	आवश्यकता	necessity, need
आपको बाज़ार ज़रूर (अवश्य) जाना चाहिए ।		You should certainly go to the bazaar.
इस समय अस्पताल जाना बहुत ज़रूरी (आवश्यक) है ।		It is very necessary to go to the hospital now.
हमें ईंटों की ज़रूरत (आवश्यकता) है ।		We need bricks.

7. "Thing"

Both the word चीज़ and the word बात are likely to be translated as "thing" in English. Usually चीज़ will refer to some material object, and usually बात will refer to something somebody says or thinks. Besides this, बात may refer to an incident and be translated by English "affair."

क्या आपको कोई और चीज़ चाहिए ?	Do you need anything else (any material object)?
क्या उसने कोई और बात कही थी ?	Did he say anything else?
इस बाज़ार में सभी चीज़ें मिल जाती हैं ।	All kinds of things are available in this bazaar.

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. अगले हफ्ते मुझे ----- की ज़रूरत पड़ेगी ।
 materials to build a house
 materials to build a road

materials to build a roof
 materials to build the walls
 materials to build the walls of this house
 some money to buy books
 some money to buy clothes
 some money to buy books for my daughter
 some more workmen to build the foundation
 some wood to build this house
 some iron to build this house
 ten thousand bricks to build this house

2. क्या मेरा सामान ----- आ जाएगा ?

by tomorrow	by next Thursday
by the day after tomorrow	by next Tuesday
by next Sunday	by next Friday
by next Saturday	by next month
by next Wednesday	by next year
by next Monday	on time

3. मैं ----- आगरे गया ।

last year	in August
in January	in November
on Wednesday	on Friday
last week	on Tuesday
on Thursday	on Saturday
in April	last month

4. मैं ----- इंतज़ार कर दूंगा ।

for this	for these things
for this thing	for iron

for bricks

for mortars

for lime

for wood

for money

for some workmen

for some more workmen

for your wages

for an advance for you

5. मुझे कल से ----- मज़दूर और चाहिए ।

sixty	fifty-nine
fifty-five	forty-nine
fifty-eight	fifty-seven
fifty-two	forty-four
fifty-four	fifty-one
forty-six	fifty-six
forty-three	forty-eight
fifty-three	fifty

6. ----- इंतज़ाम कर दीजिए ।

for me to stay

for me to stay in that town

for him to stay here

for him to stay here for a week

for me to go to Kanpur

for him to come here tomorrow

to get medicine from the hospital

for her birthday celebration

for her to get admitted to the school

for him to go to see a Hindi movie

7. वह आदमी, -----, यही रहता है । (use a relative clause)

who completed the foundation of this building

who will make arrangements for the building of this house

who gives the wages to the workman

who built this new house

who knows how to sing Hindi songs

who likes Indian movies very much

who told me about your accident

whom my father met the other day in the store

who likes to dance Indian dances

who has been sick for the last few days

who has a clothing store in Agra

whom I have wanted to see for the last one month

B. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given, making other changes if necessary.

1. ----- कहाँ रहता है ? (use a वाला construction)

the man, who works in this store

the girl, who studies Hindi in this school

the man, who sings Indian songs

the workmen, who are building this house

the doctor, who works in this hospital

the boy, who is going to the village tomorrow

your brother, who speaks Hindi

the servant, who works for Ram

2. मैंने ----- ।

read the book

wrote a letter

shut the door

saw your brother

finished your work

began the book

built a house

gave him some money

sent him some books

bought a house

drove a car

got her admitted to the school

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

क्या आप यह किताब पढ़ ----- जी नहीं, मैंने यह किताब पढ़ले रहे हैं ? हफ्ते पढ़ी थी ।

1. क्या आप पत्र लिख रहे हैं ?
2. क्या आप यह मकान बना रहे हैं ?
3. क्या तुम हिन्दी फ़िल्म देख रहे हो ?
4. क्या आप राम को इस शहर के बारे में बता रहे हैं ?
5. क्या तुम राम की मोटर चला रहे हो ?
6. क्या तुम स्कूल का काम कर रही हो ?
7. क्या आप अपने भाई को कपड़े दे रहे हैं ?
8. क्या आप यह दवाएं ख़रीद रहे हैं ?
9. क्या आप यह सामान बाहर भेज रहे हैं ?

10. क्या तुम इस दुकान से फल ले रही हो ?

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

क्या वह बाज़ार जा रहा है ? ----- कल शायद वह बाज़ार जाए ।

1. क्या वह दुकान बन्द कर रहा है ?
2. क्या वह टिकट ले रहा है ?
3. क्या वह पार्क में घूम रहा है ?
4. क्या वह डाक्टर को टेलीफ़ोन कर रहा है ?
5. क्या वे सिनमा देखने जा रहे हैं ?
6. क्या लड़के स्कूल का काम पूरा कर रहे हैं ?
7. क्या वे पूना से वापस आ रहे हैं ?
8. क्या लड़कियाँ पार्टी का इंतज़ाम कर रही हैं ?
9. क्या पानी बरस रहा है ?
10. क्या वे कुछ कपड़े ख़रीद रहे हैं ?

E. Translate orally:

1. I am going to the bazaar.
2. My brother is going to the bazaar.
3. My brother is going to Agra.
4. My brother went to Agra.
5. My brother came to Agra.
6. My brother came from Agra.
7. My brother returned from Agra.
8. My brother returned from India.
9. My brother returned yesterday.
10. My brother was working yesterday.
11. They were working yesterday.

12. They were reading yesterday.
13. They were reading this book.
14. They read this book.
15. They wrote this book.
16. They wrote some books.
17. They bought some books.
18. They bought some Hindi books.
19. They often buy Hindi books.
20. The boys often buy Hindi books.
21. The boys never buy Hindi books.
22. The boys never read Hindi books.
23. The boys never read Hindi.
24. The boys never speak Hindi.
25. We never speak Hindi.

F. Translate orally:

1. He is building a house.
2. He is building a new house.
3. He is beginning to build a new house.
4. He wants to build a new house.
5. They want to build a new house.
6. They are making arrangements to build a new house.
7. They have to build a new house.
8. They have to buy a new house.
9. We have to buy a new house.
10. We have to see a new house.
11. We are waiting to see a new house.

12. We are waiting to see a new film.
13. We saw a new film.
14. He saw a new film.
15. He saw a new car.
16. He drove the new car.
17. He drove to India.
18. He drove to India last year.
19. He returned to India last year.
20. He returned last year.
21. He wanted to return last year.
22. He wanted to work last year.
23. He couldn't work last year.
24. He couldn't work last year because he was sick.

LESSON XX

Conversation -- Seasons

JOHN

गर्मी heat, hot season
पड़ना to be, remain
आजकल यहां बड़ी गर्मी पड़ रही है । It is very hot here nowadays.
ऐसी गर्मी यहां कब तक पड़ती है ? How long will it remain so hot here?

RAM LAL

अभी एक डेढ़ महीने और काफी गर्मी रहेगी । It will be quite hot for a month or a month and a half more.
आखिर end
बरसात rainy season
लेकिन जून के आखिर तक बरसात शुरू हो जायगी । But the rainy season will begin by the end of June.
ऋतु season
जाड़ा cold weather
आप तो जानते ही हैं कि भारत में तीन ऋतुएं होती हैं --- गर्मी, बरसात और जाड़ा । You know that there are three seasons in India -- the hot season, the rainy season, and the cold season.

JOHN

कब से कब तक from when to when

गर्मी कब से कब तक रहती है ? How long does the hot season last?

RAM LAL

आम तौर पर मार्च से जून तक गर्मी की ऋतु रहती है । The hot season usually lasts from March to June.
तेज़ strong, sharp, fast
घूप sunshine
रू hot wind
इस दिनों में बड़ी तेज़ घूप होती है, गर्मी पड़ती है और अक्सर रू भी चलती है । At that time the sun is very strong, it gets very hot and there is often a hot wind.

जून के आखिर से बरसात शुरू हो जाती है । The rainy season begins by the end of June.
बरसना to rain
और सितम्बर तक पानी बरसता रहता है । And it keeps on raining until September.
आसमान sky
बादल cloud
बराबर continuously
झाया gathered
तूफानी stormy
हवा wind, air

बरसात में आसमान पर बादल बराबर छाए रहते हैं, काफी पानी बरसता है और कभी कभी तूफानी हवाएं भी चलती हैं । In the rainy season, the clouds are generally gathered in the sky, it rains a lot, and stormy

ठण्डक winds also blow sometimes.
 ठण्डक cold, cold season
 अक्टूबर से फ़रवरी तक ठण्डक The cold season lasts from
 पड़ती है । October to February.

JOHN

ठण्ड cold, cold season
 क्या यहां बहुत ठण्ड पड़ती है ? Does it get very cold here?

RAM LAL

वैसा --- जैसा as...as
 उत्तरी northern
 भाग part
 जी नहीं, यहां वैसी ठण्ड नहीं No. It does not get as
 पड़ती जैसी आपके देश के cold here as in the north-
 उत्तरी भागों में । ern part of your
 country.

बर्फ़, बरफ़ snow, ice
 साथ ही यहां बर्फ़ भी नहीं It does not snow here
 गिरती । either.

काश्मीर Kashmir
 केवल काश्मीर में तथा कुछ उत्तरी It snows only in Kashmir
 भागों में जाड़े में बर्फ़ गिरती and some northern regions
 है । during the cold season.

JOHN

दक्षिणी southern
 क्या उत्तरी और दक्षिणी Is the time of the hot
 भारत में गर्मी का समय एक season the same in the
 ही होता है ? north as in the south?

312

RAM LAL

अन्तर difference
 जी नहीं, उत्तरी और दक्षिणी No, there is a difference
 भारत में ऋतुओं के समय में in the time of the sea-
 अन्तर है । sons between North India
 and South India.

के अलावा besides
 उत्तर north
 दक्षिण south

इसके अलावा एक अन्तर यह भी Besides this, there is the
 है कि उत्तर में गर्मियों में difference that in the
 ज्यादा गर्मी पड़ती है दक्षिण north, it is hotter in
 में उससे कम । the hot season than it is
 in the south.

मौसम season, weather
 मैं आपको उत्तरी भारत के मौसमों I was telling you only about
 के बारे में ही बता रहा था । the seasons in North India.

DIRECTIONS

उत्तर north
 दक्षिण south
 पूर्व, पूरब east
 पश्चिम west
 उत्तरी northern
 दक्षिणी southern
 पूर्वी eastern
 पश्चिमी western

313

NUMERALS

छकसठ		sixty-one
बासठ		sixty-two
तिरसठ	(tirsath, treesath)	sixty-three
चौंसठ		sixty-four
पैंसठ		sixty-five
छ्याकठ	(chāāchaTh)	sixty-six
सड़सठ	(sarsath, saRsaTh)	sixty-seven
अड़सठ	(arsath, aRsaTh)	sixty-eight
उनहत्तर		sixty-nine
सत्तर		seventy

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

<u>Masc. I</u>		<u>Fem. I</u>	
जाड़ा	cold, cold season	गर्मी	heat, hot season
<u>Masc. II</u>		<u>Fem. II</u>	
आड़िर	end	बरसात	rains, rainy season
आसमान	sky	ऋतु	season
बादल	cloud	धूप	sunshine
भाग	part	हू	hot wind
अन्तर	difference	ठण्ड	cold, cold season
मौसम	season, weather	ठण्डक	cold, cold season
उत्तर	north	बर्फ, बरफ	snow, ice
दक्षिण	south		
पूर्व, पूरब	east		
पश्चिम	west		

2. New Verbs

गिरना to fall

3. New Adjectives in -aa

छाया gathered

वैसा as

जैसा as

4. Compound Postpositions

के अलावा besides

5. Seasons

The year is normally divided into three seasons in Hindi, गर्मी the hot season from March to June, बरसात the rainy season, from the end of June to September, and जाड़ा, ठण्ड or ठण्डक the cold season, from October to February. The word for season is either ऋतु or मौसम. With the words गर्मी, जाड़ा, ठण्ड and ठण्डक the verb पड़ना may be used where English will use the verb "to be," but with the word बरसात the verb होना is used.

गर्मी यहां कब तक पड़ती है ? How long is the hot season here?

बरसात यहां कब तक होती है ? How long is the rainy season here?

The word बर्फ or बरफ can mean either "snow" or "ice" and is treated by some people as a masculine noun and by others as a feminine noun. The word बर्फ or बरफ "snow" is used with the verb गिरना or पड़ना to make a verb "to snow."

कल बर्फ गिरी थी ।	It snowed yesterday.
क्या इस दुकान पर बर्फ मिलता है ?	Is ice available in this store?

6. "To keep on"

Where English uses "to keep on" followed by a verb ending in "ing" as in "to keep on working," Hindi uses the verb रहना for the English "to keep on" plus the imperfect form of a verb. As in English the verb "to keep on" may appear in various tenses, so in Hindi the verb रहना may appear in various tenses, but the subordinate verb is always in the imperfect form. The verb forms agree with the subject except when रहना is in the infinitive form in which case the verb in the imperfect form is always in the -ee form.

वह जाता रहता है ।	He keeps on going.
वह जाती रहती है ।	She keeps on going.
वे जाते रहते थे ।	They kept on going.
वह जाता रहा ।	He kept on going.
वह जाता रहेगा ।	He will keep on going.
सितम्बर तक पानी बरसता रहता है ।	It keeps on raining until September.
वह कल पूरे दिन काम करती रही ।	She kept on working all day yesterday.
राम अगले हफ्ते भी यह किताब पढ़ता रहेगा ।	Ram will keep on reading this book next week too.
राम पिछले सितम्बर तक यहां पढ़ता रहा है ।	Ram (has) studied here until last September.

मुझे यह किताब पढ़ते रहना चाहिए ।	I ought to keep on reading this book.
हिन्दी पढ़ते रहो ।	Keep on studying Hindi.

7. "As...as"

The Hindi equivalent of English "as...as" is either वैसे ----- जैसा or उतना ----- जितना . The construction वैसे ----- जैसा is likely to imply "kinds of" and may be translated variously into English as "as...as," "such...as," "the same way, kind, sort, as."

यहां वैसी ठण्ड नहीं पड़ती जैसी उत्तर में ।	It does not get as cold here as in the North.
यह पार्क वैसा नहीं है, जैसा आपने बताया था ।	This park is not the same as you said (such as you said, or the kind that you said).
यह दुर्घटना वैसी नहीं थी जैसी मैंने सुनी थी ।	This accident was not the same as I had heard.

The उतना ----- जितना construction implies quantity or degree and is likely to be translated into English by "as...as," "as...much as," "as...many as."

वह उतना लम्बा है जितना उसका भाई ।	He is as tall as his brother.
--------------------------------------	----------------------------------

मुझे हिन्दी पढ़ने की उतनी ही इच्छा है जितनी राम को ।	I want to study Hindi as much as Ram does.
---	---

Compare the following sentences.

मेरे पास वैसी किताबें नहीं	I don't have the same kind
----------------------------	----------------------------

हैं, जैसी राम के पास ।	of books as Ram does.
मेरे पास उतनी किताबें नहीं हैं, जितनी राम के पास ।	I don't have as many books as Ram does.
यह शहर उतना बड़ा नहीं है, जितना कानपुर ।	This city is not as big as Kanpur is.
यह शहर वैसा नहीं है, जैसा कानपुर ।	This city is not the same as Kanpur (i.e. not like Kanpur).
यहां उतनी गर्मी नहीं पड़ती जितनी उत्तर में ।	It is not as hot here as in the north.
यहां वैसी गर्मी नहीं पड़ती जैसी उत्तर में ।	They don't have the same kind of heat here as in the north.

8. Time Expressions

In English the expression "at that time" or "at this time" may refer to a point in time or duration of time over a period. In Hindi the expression referring to point of time is इस समय, उस समय or इस वक्त, उस वक्त, and the expression referring to duration of time is इन दिनों में, उन दिनों में or इन दिनों, उन दिनों.

इन दिनों (में) बड़ी तेज़ धूप होती है ।	At this time the sun is very strong (over a period of time).
उन दिनों (में) मैं भारत में था ।	At that time I was in India (over a period of time).
इस समय वह हिन्दी पढ़ रहा है ।	Right now he is studying Hindi (not over a period

of time).

Compare the following sentences:

उस समय वह घर में न था ।	At that time he wasn't at home (at that particular point of time).
उन दिनों (में) वह घर में न था ।	He wasn't home at that time (during that period of time).

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. वह ----- ।

- keeps on going
- keeps on working
- keeps on reading
- keeps on writing
- keeps on speaking
- keeps on driving
- kept on driving
- kept on working
- kept on writing
- kept on reading this book
- will keep on reading this book
- will keep on studying here
- should keep on studying here
- will keep on studying Hindi

has kept on studying Hindi
should keep on studying Hindi
should keep on working

2. ----- बहुत गर्मी पड़ती है ।

here
there
in the North
in the North of India
in the South
in the West
in the West of this country
in the East of this country
in this part of the country
in South India
in North India

3. इसका दाम ----- रूपर है ।

sixty-five	sixty-four
sixty-nine	forty-four
sixty-three	seventy
sixty-six	thirty-three
sixty-eight	fifty-three
sixty-two	twenty-seven
sixty-seven	forty-nine
sixty-one	twenty-eight
fifty-one	fifty
fifty-nine	twenty-five

4. ----- यहां बड़ी गर्मी होगी ।

for a month and a half
for two months
for two months more
for two and a half weeks
for a week more
for how long
tomorrow morning
until tomorrow morning
until next week
until July
until Thursday
until the rainy season
until the cold season
in the hot season

5. मेरे माई ----- आगरे में रहेंगे ।

from March to June
from August to December
from May to November
from Monday to Wednesday
from Tuesday to Sunday
from Friday to Thursday
from the end of February until September
from the beginning of April to the end of May
from the beginning of July to the end of
October

6. ----- काफ़ी अन्तर है ।

between North India and South India

between my brother and his brother

between India and America

between Hindi and English

between the hot season and the rainy season

between the hot season in India and the hot season
in America

between the North and the South

between the houses here and in the South

between a village and a city

B. Complete the following sentences by giving the Hindi equivalent of the English in parentheses:

1. यहाँ वैसी ठण्ड नहीं पड़ती ----- । (as in the North)
2. मेरे पास वैसी किताबें नहीं हैं ----- । (as Ram does)
3. यह गांव वैसा नहीं है ----- । (as you said)
4. यह स्कूल वैसा नहीं है ----- । (as I thought)
5. ये फल वैसे नहीं हैं ----- । (as I wanted)
6. यह लड़का उतना लम्बा नहीं है ----- । (as my brother)
7. ये कमरे उतने छोटे नहीं हैं ----- । (as I thought)
8. उसके पास उतनी किताबें नहीं हैं ----- । (as I do)
9. यह फिल्म उतनी अच्छी नहीं है ----- । (as yesterday's
India)
10. यहाँ उतनी तेज़ धूप नहीं पड़ती ----- । (as in India)

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

बर्फ गिरती है । ----- बर्फ गिरती रहती है ।

1. धूप पड़ती है ।

2. पानी बरसता है ।

3. लू चलती है ।

4. लड़के गाते हैं ।

5. मजदूर काम करते हैं ।

6. हम हिन्दी बोलते हैं ।

7. मैं इसे रूप देती हूँ ।

8. वह भारत के बारे में बताता है ।

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह पढ़ रहा था । ----- वह पढ़ता रहा ।

1. आशा नाच रही थी ।

2. लड़के गा रहे थे ।

3. पानी बरस रहा था ।

4. वे सिनेमा देख रहे थे ।

5. मजदूर मकान बना रहे थे ।

6. बर्फ गिर रही थी ।

7. वह कपड़े का व्यापार कर रहा था ।

8. मेरा माई दवा ले रहा था ।

9. वह हिन्दी सीख रही थी ।

10. औरतें कपड़े भेज रही थीं ।

E. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह हिन्दी पढ़ता है । ----- उसे हिन्दी पढ़ते रहना चाहिए ।

1. वह लड़कों का नाम लिखता है ।

2. लड़की गाना गाती है ।

3. मैं कपड़े भेजता हूँ ।

4. वे आदमी नया मकान बनाते हैं ।

5. मजदूर नींव पूरी करते हैं ।

6. वे औरतें घोड़ी को कपड़े देती हैं ।

7. उसका मित्र भारत के बारे में बताता है ।

8. वह एक नई भाषा सीखते हैं ।

F. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह सिनेमा देखेगा । ----- उसने सिनेमा देखा ।

1. मजदूर दीवाल बनाएंगे ।

2. लड़की गाना गाएगी ।

3. वह दुर्घटना के बारे में बताएगी ।

4. मैं कल सभी चीजें भेजूंगा ।

5. हम समाचार पत्र पढ़ेंगे ।

6. वे औरतें भारतीय नाच नाचेंगी ।

7. क्या आप उसके मित्र को पहचान लेंगे ?

8. मैं उसे मर्ती कराने की कोशिश करूंगी ।

9. वह काम कब शुरू करेंगे ?

10. वह लड़की नई मोटर चलाएगी ।

G. Translate orally:

1. It's very hot here nowadays.

2. It will be very hot here.

3. How long will it be very hot here?

4. How long will it be cold here?

5. It will be cold here for a month.

6. It was cold here for a month.

7. It was cold here until the end of June.

8. It may be cold here until the end of June.

H. Translate orally:

1. It's raining.

2. It will rain tomorrow.

3. It rained yesterday.

4. It snowed yesterday.

5. It was snowing yesterday.

6. It was snowing in Kashmir.

7. It began to snow in Kashmir.

8. It kept on snowing in Kashmir.

9. It kept on snowing till March.

10. It kept on snowing till the beginning of March.

REVIEW V

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. गांव यहाँ से ----- मील है ।

fifty forty-eight

fifty-five thirty-eight

twenty-five thirty-three

fifty-nine twenty-seven

fifty-one sixty-seven

sixty-nine seventy

thirty-one forty-seven

sixty-six forty-five

sixty-three forty-four

fifty-three twenty-four

fifty-six nineteen

sixty-eight

2. ----- यह किताब पढ़ी ।

I	you (familiar)
he	nobody
we	she
who	you (polite)
they	Mr. Sharma
somebody	my brother

3. मेरी इच्छा ----- है ।

to speak Hindi	to return home
to study Hindi	to see a village
to go to Agra	to meet your father
to build a house	to learn Indian dancing
to build a new house	to finish this book

4. मैंने ----- बारे में पढ़ा है ।

that hotel	the schools in Poona
the bazaar in Agra	Indian weather
Nagpur oranges	Indian films
the stores in Kanpur	that accident
the Indian cities	the Indian languages

5. ----- बहुत समय हुआ ।

since I came to India
since he saw a Hindi film
since it has rained
since we finished our work
since they built their house
since we began to speak Hindi
since I lived in Kashmir

since he worked in Agra

6. ----- कि हिन्दी फिल्में लम्बी होती हैं ।

is it true	we have heard
did you know	my sister wrote me
I think	he didn't know
he told me	she didn't tell me

7. मैंने सोचा कि शायद आप ----- ।

might like to see a Hindi film
might like to go to India
might want to go to Poona
might read this book
might stay with me
might drive the car
might want to drive the car
might be able to drive the car

8. हमें ----- की ज़रूरत पड़ेगी ।

some laborers
some more books
how many books
at least a thousand bricks
one more room
some special materials
a long holiday
some writing materials
another Hindi dictionary
sixty rupees more

9. ----- मुझे यह जगह पसन्द नहीं ।

on account of the weather

on account of the cold

on account of the heat

on account of the rains

on account of the darkness

on account of the fog

on account of the people

on account of the roof

10. वह ----- बाहर जाने वाला है ।

on Tuesday for how long

on Friday for a few weeks

in a week for a year

in a month for a month

in an hour during the vacation

in a few hours during the coming vacation

in a few days

11. ----- आप कहाँ जायेंगे ?

during the vacation in the North of India

during the coming vacation in the South of India

next year in the western part of this state

in the eastern part of this state

12. उसे ----- बहुत दिलचस्पी है ।

in seeing Indian movies

in dancing

in singing

in learning Hindi

in learning new languages

in visiting a new country

in going to the North of this country

in meeting new people

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

मैं गांव जा रहा हूँ । ----- मैं गांव जाने वाला हूँ ।

1. वह दरवाजा बन्द कर रहा है ।

2. वह पत्र लिख रही है ।

3. नौकर अपना काम पूरा कर रहा है ।

4. वे लड़कें समाचार पत्र पढ़ रहे हैं ।

5. वह दुकान खोल रहा है ।

6. लड़कियाँ नाचना सीख रही हैं ।

7. पानी बरस रहा है ।

8. वे मकान बनाना शुरू कर रहे हैं ।

9. वह यात्रा के लिए टिकट खरीद रहा है ।

10. वे लड़के गाना गा रहे हैं ।

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

मैंने यह किताब पढ़नी चाही ----- लेकिन मैं अभी तक नहीं पढ़ी । पाया ।

1. उसने एक नया मकान बनाना चाहा था ।

2. उसने उत्तरी भारत की यात्रा करनी चाही थी ।

3. हमने आपकी माँ से मिलना चाहा था ।

4. उन्होंने एक भारतीय गांव देखना चाहा था ।

5. मैंने उसे भारतीय ऋतुओं के बारे में बताना चाहा था ।

6. मैंने भारत लौटना चाहा था ।
7. उसने मोटर चलाना सीखना चाहा था ।
8. उसने भारत के लोगों के बारे में जानना चाहा था ।

E. Transform the following sentences with करना constructions to होना constructions according to the model given:

मैं यह किताब पसन्द करता हूँ ----- मुझे यह किताब पसन्द है ।

1. वह यहां का मौसम पसन्द करता है ।
2. लड़के नाच गाना पसन्द करते हैं ।
3. क्या तुम सुबह घूमना पसन्द करते हो ?
4. क्या आप गांव वालों से मिलना पसन्द नहीं करते ?
5. क्या आपका भाई यहां रहना पसन्द नहीं करता ?
6. क्या आप इस समय अपनी पत्नी का इंतज़ार कर रहे हैं ?
7. वह अपने भाई का इंतज़ार कर रहा था ।
8. उसने कल मेरा इंतज़ार किया ।
9. क्या आप इस समय अपनी पत्नी की प्रतीक्षा कर रहे हैं ?
10. उसने कल मेरी प्रतीक्षा की ।
11. वह अपने भाई की प्रतीक्षा कर रहा था ।
12. हम गांव देखने जाने का इरादा हर रहे हैं ।
13. क्या आप भारत लौटने का इरादा कर रहे हैं ?
14. क्या उसने एक नया मकान बनाने का इरादा किया ?
15. मैं भारत जाने का विचार कर रहा हूँ ।
16. वह इसी मकान में रहने का विचार कर रहा था ।
17. उसने उत्तरी भारत का दौरा करने का विचार किया ।
18. वह गर्मियों में इसी शहर में रुकने का विचार कर रहा है ।

F. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

अगले हफ्ते में फल खरीदूंगा ----- पिछले हफ्ते मैंने फल खरीदे ।

1. अगले हफ्ते डाक्टर नहीं दवाएं देगा ।
2. अगले हफ्ते मैं अपने पत्नी को पत्र लिखूंगा ।
3. अगले हफ्ते मैं यह किताब पढ़ूंगा ।
4. अगले हफ्ते मैं यह किताब पढ़ने की कोशिश करूंगा ।
5. अगले हफ्ते हम कुछ नया सामान लेंगे ।
6. अगले हफ्ते वह अपनी लड़की को स्कूल में मर्ती कराएगा ।
7. अगले हफ्ते वह अपना दफ्तर बन्द करेगा ।
8. अगले हफ्ते मैं दुकान पर खबर भेज दूंगा ।
9. अगले हफ्ते मैं गाड़ी चलाना सीखूंगा ।
10. अगले हफ्ते मैं इसे अपनी यात्रा के बारे में बताऊंगा ।

G. Translate orally:

1. What are you going to do during the coming vacation?
2. What did you do during the vacation?
3. What did you do at that time?
4. What did he do at that time?
5. What did he do on Wednesday?
6. I don't know what he did on Wednesday.
7. I don't know where he is going.
8. I don't know where he went.
9. I don't know what he said.
10. What did he say?
11. What did he say about the vacation?
12. What did they say about the vacation?

H. Translate orally:

1. The office will be closed on Saturday.

2. The office will be closed on Friday.
3. The school will be closed on Friday
4. The school will remain open on Friday
5. The school remained open on Friday.
6. The school remained open in the rainy season.
7. They built the school in the rainy season.
8. Somebody built the school in the rainy season.
9. Who built the school in the rainy season?
10. Will they build a school in the rainy season?
11. Will they keep on building the school in the rainy season?
12. Will they be able to build the school in the rainy season?

I. Translate orally:

1. I haven't seen a Hindi film yet.
2. He hasn't seen a Hindi film yet.
3. He has often seen a Hindi film.
4. He is going to see a Hindi film.
5. He is going to see an Indian village.
6. He intends to see an Indian village.
7. He intends to study Hindi.
8. He intended to study Hindi.
9. He intended to write his wife.
10. He intended to bring his wife.
11. He made arrangements to bring his wife.
12. He will make arrangements to bring his wife.

J. Translate orally:

1. It doesn't get as cold here as in the northern part of your country.
2. It doesn't get as cold here as in the western part of your country.
3. It doesn't get as hot here as in the western part of your country.
4. It doesn't get as hot here as in India.
5. It doesn't rain as much here as in India.
6. It doesn't rain as much here as in the East.
7. It doesn't snow as much here as in the East.
8. It doesn't snow as much here as in the South.
9. The days are not as long here as in the North.
10. The days are not as long here as he said.
11. This book is not as interesting as he said.
12. Hindi is not as easy as he said.

K. Conversation:

1. A declines B's invitation to go to see an Indian movie and explains that he has seen one and didn't like it. A further tells that what he didn't like was that it was very long, was difficult to understand and had a lot of singing and dancing and was not very interesting.
2. A has just returned from a trip to India. B, who has never been to India, asks him about the Indian seasons. A gives a brief description of Indian seasons and tells B how they differ from the seasons in their own country.
3. A plans to take a trip to the northern part of India and asks his friend B, who has been in the North, to give him some helpful tips about the climate, people, speech and such things. B tells A briefly about his experiences in the North and how different and interesting they were.
4. A tells his secretary to make arrangements for a trip he wants to take in South India. The secretary asks when and how he is going, and asks for the details of the trip and the arrangements to be

made and goes off to do what is necessary.

5. A drives out to an Indian village. On his way, he sees that they are putting up a building. Out of curiosity he stops and talks to the man in charge of the construction. A finds out that they are building a school for the children of the neighboring villages and also inquires about the way they are building it, the materials they are using and such things.
6. A visits a village school in India. During the visit he talks to the principal of the school, and they talk about the differences between the Indian and American schools. They discuss the number of children in the schools, the languages of instruction, how far the children come to school, etc.
7. A tells his friend B about how he got held up the night before while returning from Ajmer because of the storm and the rains. B asks some questions and A gives a detailed account of the weather the night before and of his difficulties in coming back.
8. A spends an evening at a party to which he is invited. Next morning he tells his colleague B in the office about the party and how much he enjoyed the dancing, singing and meeting people.

LESSON XXI

Conversation -- Holi

RAM DAS

होली

Holi

क्या आप होली की छुट्टियों में
कहीं बाहर जा रहे हैं ?

Are you going away anywhere
during the Holi vacation?

BILL

अमरीका

America

त्योहार

festival

मैं जब अमरीका में था तो मैंने
भारतीय त्योहारों के बारे
में पढ़ा था ।

When I was in America, I
read about Indian festi-
vals.

रुक कर

staying

मनाना

to observe, celebrate

मनाई जाती है

is observed, is

celebrated

मैं यहां रुक कर देखना चाहता
हूँ कि भारत में होली कैसे
मनाई जाती है ।

I want to stay here and see
how Holi is celebrated in
India.

RAM DAS

यह तो बहुत अच्छा है ।

That is fine.

नगर

city

इस नगर की होली है भी
बहुत प्रसिद्ध ।

The Holi celebration of this
city is very well known.

हां, यह तो मैंने भी सुना है ।	BILL Yes, I have also heard about it.
कृपया कृपया मुझे बताइए कि यहां लोग होली कैसे मनाते हैं ।	kindly Please tell me how people celebrate Holi here.
मुहल्ला हर हर एक इकट्ठा होना जमा रहना	RAM DAS locality every every one, each to gather to be piled up
आम तौर पर होली के दिन, रात को हर एक मुहल्ले में सभी लोग एक जगह इकट्ठा होते हैं, जहां पहले से बहुत सी लकड़ी आदि जमा रहती है ।	Generally, on the day of Holi, all the people in every locality gather at a particular place in the evening where previously a lot of wood, etc. has been piled up.
बजाना	to play (a musical instrument)
शुभ मुहूर्त जलाना	auspicious moment to set fire to, to burn
लोग वहां पहले गाते-बजाते हैं और तब शुभ मुहूर्त में होली जलाते हैं ।	People sing and play musical instruments, and then at an auspicious moment they

set fire to the pile of wood.

NUMERALS

इकहत्तर	(ikhattar, ik-hattar)	seventy-one
बहत्तर	(bahattar)	seventy-two
तिहत्तर	(tihattar)	seventy-three
चौहत्तर	(cauhattar)	seventy-four
पचहत्तर	(pachattar)	seventy-five
छिहत्तर	(chihattar)	seventy-six
सतहत्तर	(sassattar, sat-hattar)	seventy-seven
अठहत्तर	(athattar)	seventy-eight
उन्नासी	} (unnaasii, } } unyaasii }	seventy-nine
उन्यासी		
अस्सी		eighty

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

<u>Masc. I</u>		<u>Fem. I</u>	
मुहल्ला	locality	होली	Holi
<u>Masc. II</u>		<u>Fem. II</u>	
अमरीका	(no pl.) America	मुहूर्त	moment
त्योहार	festival		
नगर	city		
मुहूर्त	moment		

2. New Verbs

मनाना	to observe, to celebrate
बजाना	to play (a musical instrument)

जलाना	to set fire to, to burn
जमाना	to pile up

2.1 New Compound Verbs

Type I

जमा रहना	to be piled up
----------	----------------

Type II

इकट्ठा होना	to gather
-------------	-----------

3. New Adjectives in -aa

इकट्ठा	gathered
--------	----------

4. Passive

Hindi has a complete passive conjugation for transitive verbs. The verb to be conjugated is put in the perfect form and the verb जाना is used as an auxiliary. The auxiliary may appear in any form of the conjugation just as in the English passive the auxiliary "to be" may be in any form. The main verb in the perfect will have the usual agreement of the perfect.

Present	<u>Active:</u>	मैं यह फल खरीदता हूँ ।
Imperfect		I buy this fruit.
	<u>Passive:</u>	यह फल खरीदा जाता है ।
		This fruit is bought.
Past	<u>Active:</u>	मैं यह फल खरीदता था ।
Imperfect		I used to buy this fruit.
	<u>Passive:</u>	यह फल खरीदा जाता था ।
		This fruit used to be bought.

Perfect	<u>Active:</u>	मैंने यह फल खरीदा ।
		I bought this fruit.
	<u>Passive:</u>	यह फल खरीदा गया ।
		This fruit was bought.
Present	<u>Active:</u>	मैंने यह फल खरीदा है ।
Perfect		I have bought this fruit.
	<u>Passive:</u>	यह फल खरीदा गया है ।
		This fruit has been bought.
Past	<u>Active:</u>	मैंने यह फल खरीदा था ।
Perfect		I had bought this fruit.
	<u>Passive:</u>	यह फल खरीदा गया था ।
		This fruit had been bought.
Future	<u>Active:</u>	मैं यह फल खरीदूंगा ।
		I will buy this fruit.
	<u>Passive:</u>	यह फल खरीदा जाएगा ।
		This fruit will be bought.
Optative	<u>Active:</u>	क्या मैं यह फल खरीदूँ ?
		Should I buy this fruit?
	<u>Passive:</u>	क्या यह फल खरीदा जाए ?
		Should this fruit be bought?
Present	<u>Active:</u>	मैं यह फल खरीद रहा हूँ ।
Progressive		I am buying this fruit.
	<u>Passive:</u>	यह फल खरीदा जा रहा है ।
		This fruit is being bought.
Past	<u>Active:</u>	मैं यह फल खरीद रहा था ।
Progressive		I was buying this fruit.

	<u>Passive:</u> यह फल खरीदा जा रहा था ।	This fruit was being bought.
चाहिए	<u>Active:</u> मुझे यह फल खरीदना चाहिए ।	I should buy this fruit.
construction		
	<u>Passive:</u> यह फल खरीदा जाना चाहिए ।	This fruit should be bought.

The passive construction is most likely to be used in the above sentences when the person who performs the action is not stated. In those cases where the passive is used and the performer of the action is stated, the performer is expressed by using the post-position के द्वारा.

मैंने कल फल खरीदे ।	I bought fruit yesterday.
कल फल खरीदे गए ।	The fruit was bought yesterday.
कल मेरे द्वारा फल खरीदे गए ।	The fruit was bought by me yesterday.

The first of these sentences is the most common one when the performer is expressed, although the third is possible. The second is the normal expression when the performer is not expressed.

भारत में होली कैसे मनाई जाती है ?	How is Holi celebrated in India?
यहां क्या काम किया जाता है ?	What kind of work is done here?
हिन्दी कैसे लिखी जाती है ?	How is Hindi written?

कहा गया है कि -----	It has been said that ...
उसके बारे में बहुत सी बातें सुनी गई हैं ।	Many things have been heard about him.
लड़कों को भारत के बारे में बताया जा रहा है ।	The boys are being told about India.
उसे हर महीने कितने रुपए दिए जाते हैं ?	How many rupees are given to him every month? (How much does he earn per month?)
यह कमीज़ इसी दुकान से ली गई थी ।	This shirt was bought from this store.
सुना गया है -----	It has been heard that ...

Note that in compounds of the काम करना type (i.e., those compounds of Type II which have a noun as the first element of the compound), the first element of the compound acts as the subject of the passive construction and the verb agrees with it.

<u>Active:</u> मैं उसकी प्रतीक्षा करता हूँ ।	I am waiting for him.
<u>Passive:</u> उसकी प्रतीक्षा की जाती है ।	He is being waited for (lit.: his waiting for is being done).
<u>Active:</u> मैं उसके ठहरने का इंतज़ाम कर रहा हूँ ।	I am making arrangements for his stay.
<u>Passive:</u> उसके ठहरने का इंतज़ाम किया जा रहा है ।	Arrangements for his stay are being made.

5. Past Participle

Hindi forms the past participle by adding either कर or के to the stem of the verb. The form with कर is the one most frequently used, except that the verb करना always forms the past participle by adding के e.g.,

जा कर	having gone
खरीद कर	having bought
पढ़ कर	having read
कर के	having done

In Hindi this past participle is used to make a clause subordinate to a main verb where the time of the participle is previous to the time of the main verb. It is used where English may use similar constructions, or where English uses two main verbs.

मैं यहाँ रुक कर देखना चाहता हूँ ।	Having stayed here I want to see... (I want to stay .here and see...).
मैं बाज़ार जाकर कुछ कपड़े लाऊंगा ।	Having gone to the bazaar, I will bring some clothes back (I'll go to the store and bring...).
मेरा नया घर देखकर वह बहुत खुश हुआ ।	Having seen my new house, he was very pleased.

The Hindi construction with कर may also equate with an English clause beginning with "after."

आगरे से आकर वह मुझसे	He met me after he returned
----------------------	-----------------------------

मिला ।

from Agra.

6. होली

The word होली in Hindi, besides referring to the celebration of Holi in general, may also refer to any part of the ceremony or activities by themselves.

Thus:

होली मनाना	to celebrate Holi
होली खेलना	to play Holi; i.e., to throw colored water at people in the celebration of Holi.
होली जलाना	to burn Holi; i.e., to burn a bonfire in celebrating Holi.
होली इकट्ठा करना होली जमा करना	} to collect Holi; i.e., to collect the wood for the Holi bonfire.
होली मिलना	to meet Holi; i.e., to embrace people in the celebration of Holi or to visit people on the occasion of Holi.

7. मुहूर्त

In Hindi the word मुहूर्त is used to mean "moment" only in the sense of an auspicious or inauspicious moment determined astrologically.

शुभ मुहूर्त में	}	at an auspicious moment
अच्छे मुहूर्त में		
अशुभ मुहूर्त में	}	at an inauspicious moment
बुरे मुहूर्त में		

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. इसे खरीदने में ----- रुपए लगते हैं ।

seventy-five	seventy-six
fifty-five	thirty-six
seventy-nine	seventy-one
sixty-nine	eighty
seventy-two	seventy
seventy-eight	seventy-three
seventy-seven	sixty-three
sixty-seven	seventeen
seventy-four	fifty-four
forty-four	forty-nine

2. एक नया घर ----- ।

is being built
 was built last year
 was being built last year
 has been built
 will be built next year
 had been built
 may be built

should be built
 has to be built
 can be built

3. होली मार्च में * ----- ।

is celebrated
 will be celebrated
 is being celebrated
 has been celebrated
 was celebrated
 used to be celebrated
 may be celebrated
 should be celebrated

4. मैं ----- घर गया ।

having seen his new house
 having read a book
 having celebrated Holi
 having played Holi
 having written a letter
 having finished the work
 having met my brother at the station
 having waited for an hour
 having stayed for half an hour

5. यह(masc.)----- ।

* According to the Hindu calendar, Holi is on the last full moon day of the Hindu year, which usually falls in the latter part of February or the first three weeks of March.

is celebrated	is said
is read	is understood
is written	is told
is heard	is burnt

6. यह किताब ----- ।

was being read	will be written
was being written	will be read
was being bought	has been read
was being brought	had been written

7. मैं जानना चाहता हूँ कि होली ----- मनाई जाती है ।

how	in what country
where	at what time
when	in which part of India
why	by whom

8. ----- आपने क्या किया ?

after studying	about driving a car
before studying	on account of the fog
besides studying	for your children

B. Transform the following sentences according to the model given, omitting the performer of the action:

लड़का किताब खरीद रहा है । ----- किताब खरीदी जा रही है ।

1. धोबी मेरे कपड़े ला रहा है ।
2. लोग त्योहार मना रहे हैं ।
3. लोग लकड़ी जला रहे हैं ।
4. डाक्टर दवाएं दे रहे हैं ।
5. नौकर काम कर रहा है ।
6. मैं मोटर चला रहा हूँ ।

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given, omitting the performer of the action:

मैंने होली मनाई । ----- होली मनाई गई ।

1. मैंने उसकी बात सुनी ।
2. मैंने कुछ किताबें खरीदीं ।
3. मैं उसके भाई से मिला ।
4. उसने स्कूल में आगरे के बारे में बताया ।
5. उसने क्या कहा ?
6. मैंने उसके भाई को पहचाना ।
7. उन्होंने मुझे एक किताब भेजी ।
8. क्या आपने समाचार पत्र पढ़ा ?

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given, omitting the performer of the action and retaining the tense of the original sentence:

मैंने एक किताब लिखी । ----- एक किताब लिखी गई ।

1. वह किताब पढ़ रहा है ।
2. वह मोटरवाले का इंजिनार कर रहा था ।
3. मुझे उस भारतीय ऋतुओं के बारे में बताना चाहिए ।
4. उन्होंने अक्टूबर में त्योहार मनाया ।
5. लोगों ने होली कैसे मनाई थी ?
6. वे लड़कों को स्कूल में मर्ती कराएंगे ।
7. क्या गर्मियों में मजदूर मकान बनाएं ?
8. हम कुट्टियों का इंतजाम कर रहे हैं ।
9. क्या उसने एक घर बनाया है ?
10. क्या उसने किताब जला दी ?

E. Translate orally:

1. All the people gather where the festival will be celebrated.

आनन्द	joy, pleasure
आम तौर पर बच्चों को रंग खेलने में बड़ा आनन्द मिलता है ।	Generally, the children enjoy throwing colored water very much.
पिचकारी	syringe
भरना	to fill
सारा	whole
खड़ा	standing
डालना	to drop
रंग डालना	to throw or shoot colored water
वे पिचकारियों में रंग भरे सारे दिन सड़कों पर खड़े रहते हैं और लोगों पर रंग डालते हैं ।	They stand on the street all day filling syringes with colored water and shoot it at people.
	BILL
बुरा	bad
मानना	to think, consider
बुरा मानना	to take offense
क्या लोग बुरा नहीं मानते ?	Don't people take offense?
	RAM DAS
डलवाना	to let throw
जी नहीं, लोग बड़ी खुशी से रंग डलवाते हैं ।	No, people allow the children to throw color on them with great pleasure.
प्रेम	love, affection, joy
पुराना	ancient, old

दुश्मनी	enmity
बुराई	grievance
भूलना	to forget
भूल जाना	to forget
होली के इन दो दिनों में लोग एक दूसरे से बड़े प्रेम से मिलते हैं, और पुरानी दुश्मनी और बुराई भूल जाते हैं ।	During these two days of Holi, people are glad to see each other and forget old enmities and grievances.
मेला	fair, gathering of people
आम तौर पर दूसरे या तीसरे दिन शाम को एक जगह बड़ा मेला लगता है ।	Generally on the second or third day there is a gathering of people at a particular place.
गला	neck
गले मिलना	to embrace
वहाँ शहर के सभी लोग इकट्ठा होते हैं और एक दूसरे से गले मिलते हैं ।	There all the people of the city gather and embrace each other.
इस त्योहार को लोग बड़े आनन्द से मनाते हैं ।	People enjoy celebrating this festival.
स्वयं, स्वयं	self
यह आप स्वयं देखेंगे ही ।	You will see it yourself.
	BILL
जी हां, मैं देखूंगा ही नहीं, आप लोगों के साथ होली	Yes, I will not only watch it, I will celebrate Holi

खेलूंगा भी ।

with you (all).

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

काला	black
सफ़ेद	white
बैंगनी	purple
ब्राउन	brown
मूरा	gray
खुद	self

NUMERALS

इक्यासी	eighty-one
बयासी	eighty-two
तिरासी	eighty-three
चौरासी	eighty-four
पचासी	eighty-five
छियासी	eighty-six
सत्तासी	eighty-seven
अट्ठासी	eighty-eight
नवासी	eighty-nine
नब्बे	ninety

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

<u>Masc. I</u>		<u>Fem. I</u>	
मेला	fair, gathering of	पिचकारी	syringe
	people	दुश्मनी	enmity
गला	neck	बुराई	grievance

Masc. II

रंग	color
गुलाल	pink powder
आनन्द	joy, pleasure
प्रेम	love, affection, joy

Fem. II

अबीर	red powder
------	------------

2. New Verbs

खेलना	to play
लगाना	to rub
भरना	to fill
डालना	to drop
मानना	to think, consider
छलवाना	to let throw
मूलना	to forget

2.1 New Compound Verbs

Type I

मूल जाना	to forget
----------	-----------

Type II

बुरा मानना	to take something ill
गले मिलना	to embrace

3. New Adjectives in -aa

हरा	green	खड़ा	standing
पीला	yellow, orange	बुरा	bad
नीला	blue	पुराना	old
सारा	whole	मूरा	gray
काला	black		

4. Perfect Participle

Hindi has a perfect participle which may appear in one of two forms:

1. The perfect form of the verb itself, e.g., किया, किए, की.
2. The perfect form of the verb followed by the perfect form of the verb होना e.g., किया हुआ, किए हुए, की हुई.

The perfect participle may be used as an adjective modifying the following noun and then it agrees with the noun in number and gender.

उसका खरीदा (हुआ) कपड़ा मुझे बहुत पसंद है ।	I like the cloth bought by him very much.
उसके खरीदे (हुर) फल मीठे नहीं हैं ।	The fruit, bought by him, isn't sweet.
उसकी दी (हुई) किताब मैंने पढ़ ली है ।	I have read the book given by him (the book he gave to me).
मैंने राम की लिखी (हुई) किताबें पढ़ी हैं ।	I have read the books written by Ram.

A second usage of the perfect participle is as an adverb, not modifying a following noun, in which case the participle is always in the oblique -ee form.

वे पिचकारियों में रंग मरे (हुर) सारे दिन सड़कों पर खड़े रहते हैं ।	They stand on the street all day filling syringes with colored water.
--	---

वह मेज़ पर बैठे (हुर) पत्र लिख रहा है । He is writing a letter sitting at the table.

लोग अच्छे कपड़े पहने (हुर) होली के मेले में गए । People went to the Holi gathering wearing good clothes. The people, putting on their good clothes, went to the Holi gathering.

The implication of the perfect participle is that although the act expressed by it may have started earlier than the time expressed by the main verb, it continues during the time of the main verb. This may be compared with the use of the past participle which implies an action that is completed before the time of the main verb.

वह अच्छे कपड़े पहन कर होली के मेले में गया ।	Having put on his good clothes, he went to the Holi gathering.
वह अच्छे कपड़े पहने हुए होली के मेले में गया ।	He went to the Holi gathering wearing good clothes.

5. "Oneself"

The Hindi form स्वयं or खुद is used as a reflexive pronoun for all persons and numbers, i.e., they may mean "myself," "yourself," "himself" etc.

यह आप स्वयं देखेंगे ही ।	You will see it yourself.
उसने स्वयं ही यह बताया था ।	He told that himself.

उसने खुद कुछ नहीं खरीदा । He didn't buy anything
himself.

6. "Not only ... but also"

Where English uses the construction "not only ... but also," Hindi uses for the "not only" ही नहीं and for the "but also" either भी or बल्कि ---- भी or वरन् ----- भी. The ही नहीं will always appear at the end of the first clause. In the latter part, if either बल्कि or वरन् is used, it will occur at the beginning of the clause, and भी, whether used by itself or with बल्कि or वरन्, will appear at the end.

मैं भारत जाऊंगा ही नहीं, I will not only go to India,
वहां पढ़ूंगा भी । but I will also study
there.

मैं देखूंगा ही नहीं, (वरन्) आप I will not only watch, but
लोगों के साथ होली खेलूंगा I will celebrate Holi
भी । with you.

मैं कपड़ा देखूंगा ही नहीं, I will not only look at the
(बल्कि) खरीदूंगा भी । cloth, but I will also
buy it.

7. Color Terms

The basic colors of the spectrum are not viewed in Hindi quite the same way as they are in English. Thus the single term पीला is used both for those things which may be called "yellow" in English and for those things which may be called "orange." In Hindi various

shades of brown are likely to be referred to as लाल, पीला or sometimes by the English borrowing ब्राउन

"brown." Other important colors are:

बैंगनी	purple
सफ़ेद	white
काला	black
भूरा	gray

8. "To enjoy"

As an equivalent of the English verb "to enjoy," Hindi may use either आनन्द मिलना or आनन्द आना. With both these verbal expressions, the person who enjoys something is in the dative case.

बच्चों को रंग खेलने में बड़ा आनन्द मिलता है ।	} The children enjoy throwing colored water very much.
बच्चों को रंग खेलने में बड़ा आनन्द आता है ।	
राम को पढ़ने में बहुत आनन्द मिलता है ।	} Ram enjoys reading.
राम को पढ़ने में बहुत आनन्द आता है ।	

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. उसके घर का रंग ----- है ।

green	black
blue	gray
yellow	red
white	brown
purple	

2. आगरा यहां से ----- मील है ।

how many	seventy-four
ninety	eighty-two
eighty-six	forty-two
eighty-three	seventy-two
seventy-three	eighty-five
eighty-eight	fifty
twenty-eight	twenty-five
eighty-nine	seventy-five
sixty-nine	eighty-one
seventy-nine	seventy-one
eighty-seven	fifty-one
twenty-seven	eighty
eighty-four	seventy

3. वह ----- कमीज़ पहने हुए है ।

white	blue
green	gray
black	purple

red

orange

yellow

4. ----- किताबें मुझे पसन्द नहीं हैं । (use the perfect participle form of the verb)

bought by him

told by you

brought by you

written by you

given by you

read by him

5. मैं भारत जाऊंगा ही नहीं ----- ।

but I will also live there

but I will also live there for some time

but I will also study Hindi there

but I will also celebrate Indian festivals

but I will also meet the Indian villagers

but I will also visit Indian villages

but I will also put on Indian clothes

but I will also speak Hindi

but I will also learn Indian singing and dancing

but I will also try to learn an Indian language

6. ----- वह कहाँ गया ? (use the past participle form of the verb)

having put on good clothes

having celebrated Holi

having seen an Indian movie

having burned the wood

having heard Indian songs

having played the musical instruments

having built a new house

7. क्या वह मेरी बात का ----- ?

takes offense

will take offense

can take offense

will not take offense

can't take offense

was taking offense

8. लड़कों को ----- बड़ा आनन्द मिलता है ।

in throwing colored water

in rubbing colored powders

in celebrating Holi

in gathering the wood for Holi

in setting fire to the Holi wood

in going to the fair

in playing musical instruments

in visiting new places

9. वे एक दूसरे से ----- ।

throw colored water

are glad to see

talk in Hindi

talk in their native language

embrace at the fair

learn how to sing

10. ये कपड़े ----- हैं ।

old

new

good

bad

quite new

quite old

B. Transform the following sentences according to the model given, omitting the performer of the action and retaining the tense of the original sentence:

वह घर बनाता है । ----- घर बनाया जाता है ।

1. लड़कों ने गुलाल लगाया ।

2. लोग होली जला रहे हैं ।

3. बच्चे होली पर रंग खेलेंगे ।

4. लड़का पिचकारी भर रहा है ।

5. औरतों ने मेरी बात मान ली है ।

6. क्या वे पैदल जाने वालों पर रंग डालेंगे ?

7. लोग होली जलाते समय गाते-बजाते हैं ।

8. मैं उसकी बात नहीं मूल सकता ।

9. क्या बच्चे नए कपड़े पहनें ?

10. उसे रंगों के नाम जानने चाहिए ।

11. क्या वह मेले के बारे में बता रहा था ?

12. लड़के स्कूल में हिन्दी बोलते थे ।

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

मैं कुछ फल खरीद रहा था । ----- मैंने कुछ फल खरीदे ।

1. बच्चे रंग डाल रहे थे ।

2. क्या आप उनकी बातों का बुरा मान रहे थे ?

3. वे गाने-बजाने की कोशिश कर रहे थे ।

4. लोग होली खेल रहे थे ।

5. सभी लोग खुशी से रंग डलवा रहे थे ।

6. वे सभी लोगों से बड़ी खुशी से बात कर रहे थे ।

7. मैं उन्हें भारतीय त्योहारों के बारे में बता रही थी ।

8. क्या आप उनकी बात समझ रहे थे ?

9. लड़के स्कूल में हिन्दी बोल रहे थे ।

10. क्या आप उसे पहचान रहे थे ?

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

वह अस्पताल गया और दवा ----- वह अस्पताल जाकर दवा लाया ।
लाया ।

1. उसने कुछ कपड़े खरीदे और वह घर वापस आया ।

2. वह बाज़ार गया और राम से मिला ।

3. उन्होंने गाया-बजाया और होली जलाई ।

4. राम ने मेरी बात मानी और कुछ कपड़े खरीदे ।

5. मैंने कपड़े पहने और मेले में गया ।

6. लड़के पार्क गए और खेलने लगे ।

7. राम ने टेलीफोन किया और अपना काम पूरा किया ।

8. उसने मेला देखा और बहुत खुश हुआ ।

E. Translate orally:

1. People throw colored water at each other.
2. People are throwing colored water at each other.
3. People threw colored water at each other.
4. People kept throwing colored water at each other.
5. Colored water was thrown.
6. Colored water was thrown by children.
7. The colored water was being thrown by the children.
8. The children enjoy throwing colored water.
9. Children like to throw colored water.
10. The children intend to throw colored water at each other.

F. Translate orally:

1. They forget old enmities.
2. He forgot the old enmities.
3. He forgot his old friends.
4. He forgets his old friends.
5. He forgets his books.
6. He forgot to bring his books.
7. He forgot to meet his friend.
8. He forgot where he was going.
9. He forgot to write his parents.
10. He forgot when they were coming.

G. Translate orally:

1. He not only went there, but he also stayed there.
2. He not only went there, but he also worked there.
3. He not only lived there, but he also worked there.
4. He not only lives there, but he also works there.
5. He not only lives on the street, but he also works there.
6. He not only reads books, but writes them too.
7. He not only reads Hindi, but he writes Hindi too.
8. He not only writes Hindi, but he speaks Hindi too.
9. He not only speaks English, but he speaks Hindi too.
10. He not only speaks Hindi, but he keeps on speaking Hindi continuously.

H. Translate orally:

1. He reads books.
2. He doesn't read books.
3. He never reads books.
4. Sometimes he reads books.
5. Somebody is reading this book.
6. Nobody is reading this book.
7. Somebody read this book.
8. Who read this book?
9. He reads nothing.
10. Nothing was read in the class.

I. Translate orally:

1. They met each other.
2. They work for each other.
3. They sent letters to each other.
4. They saw each other's houses.
5. They throw colored water at each other.
6. The children played with each other.

LESSON XXIII

Conversation -- Visit to a Historical Site

JOHN

अजन्ता

Ajanta

ऐलौरा

Ellora

अगले हफ्ते में अजन्ता और

I want to visit (to go and

ऐलौरा देखने जाना चाहता

see) Ajanta and Ellora

हूँ।

next week.

बार

times

चुकना

to finish

मैंने सुना है कि आप कई बार

I have heard that you have

ये जगहें देखने जा चुके हैं।

already visited these

places many times.

सहायक

helper, helpful

खास

important, special

कृपया मुझे यात्रा में सहायक

Please tell me anything that

खास खास बातें बताइए।

may be important and help-

ful for the trip.

SHIVA LAL

आप पहले अजन्ता जाना चाहते

Do you want to go to Ajanta

हैं या ऐलौरा ?

first or to Ellora?

JOHN

जहाँ जाने में सुविधा हो।

Wherever it's convenient to

go (first).

अधिक

more, much

मैंने सुना है कि यहां से पहले
ऐलोरा जाने में अधिक
आसानी होती है ।

I have heard that it's
easier to go to Ellora
first from here.

SHIVA LAL

हां, यह सच है ।

Yes, that's true.

औरंगाबाद

Aurangabad

आप यहां से पहले औरंगाबाद
जाएं ।

You should go to Aurangabad
from here first.

औरंगाबाद आप रेल से जा
सकते हैं ।

You can go to Aurangabad by
train.

औरंगाबाद एक बड़ा शहर है ।

Aurangabad is a big city.

खाना

to eat

पीना

to drink

वहां आप को ठहरने और
खाने-पीने की सुविधा
रहेगी ।

You will have (more) facil-
ities for board and
lodging there.

वहीं से आप ऐलोरा जा
सकते हैं ।

From there you can go to
Ellora.

टैक्सी

taxi

आपको बसें भी मिलेंगी और
टैक्सियां भी ।

You will get busses as well
as taxis.

जो भी चाहें, ले लें ।

Take whatever you want.

JOHN

क्या ऐलोरा वहां से बहुत
पास है ?

Is Ellora very near (to
Aurangabad)?

SHIVA LAL

जी हां, केवल सोलह मील

Yes, it's only sixteen

366

है ।

miles

रास्ता

way, road

दौलताबाद

Daulatabad

और हां, जब ऐलोरा जाएं,
तो रास्ते में दौलताबाद में
रुकना न भूलें ।

And moreover, when you go
to Ellora, don't forget
to stop in Daulatabad on
the way.

किला

fort

दौलताबाद में एक बहुत पुराना
किला है ।

There is a very old fort
in Daulatabad.

प्रसन्न

pleased

विश्वास

belief, faith

मुझे विश्वास है कि आप उसे
देखकर प्रसन्न होंगे ।

I believe that you will
enjoy seeing it.

JOHN

उचित

proper

अगर मैं दौलताबाद रुकना
चाहूँ, तब तो शायद टैक्सी
करना ही उचित होगा ।

If I want to stop in
Aurangabad, then it will
be better to take a taxi.

SHIVA LAL

सलाह

advice

जी हां, मेरी सलाह तो टैक्सी
के लिए ही होगी ।

Yes, I would advise you to
take a taxi.

JOHN

महंगा

expensive

क्या टैक्सी बहुत महंगी होगी ?

Will the taxi be very
expensive?

367

SHIVA LAL

विशेष especially
 जी नहीं, विशेष महंगी नहीं No, it won't be especially
 होगी। expensive.
 यदि if
 सरकारी governmental
 निजी private
 सस्ता cheap

यदि आप वहाँ के सरकारी If you hire a taxi from the
 बस-स्टेशन से टैक्सी किराए government bus station
 पर लेंगे, तो वह निजी there, it will certainly
 टैक्सियों से सस्ती ही पड़ेगी। be cheaper than private
 taxis.

JOHN

दौलताबाद में क्या देखने What places are worth
 योग्य है? seeing in Daulatabad?

SHIVA LAL

वास्तव reality
 हिन्दू Hindu
 राजा king
 बनवाना to have made

दौलताबाद में एक किला है, There is a fort in Daulata-
 जो वास्तव में एक हिन्दू bad which a Hindu king
 राजा ने बनवाया था। had really had built.
 शताब्दी century
 यह किला दसवीं शताब्दी में This fort was built in the
 बना था। tenth century.

Devagiri
 to be called

उस समय इस प्रदेश का नाम At that time, this region
 देवगिरि था और यह किला was called Devagiri and
 देवगिरि का किला कहलाता this fort was called
 था। Devagiri fort.
 सदी century
 मुसलमान Muslim
 अधिकार authority

कुछ सदियों बाद इस किले पर A few centuries later, this
 मुसलमानों का अधिकार हो fort came under the
 गया। authority of the Muslims.
 स्थान place
 बदलना to change

उस समय इस स्थान का नाम At that time, the name of
 बदलकर दौलताबाद कर दिया this place was changed to
 गया। Daulatabad.
 कला art
 नमूना example

यह किला हिन्दुओं की किले This fort is a good example
 बनाने की कला का बड़ा of the art of fort-build-
 अच्छा नमूना है। ing of the Hindus.
 ऐतिहासिक historical
 महत्व importance
 मस्जिद mosque
 दर्शनीय worth seeing

इसके अलावा यहाँ एक ऐतिहासिक Besides this, there is a

महत्त्व की मस्जिद भी है, जो दर्शनीय है।

mosque of historical importance here, which is worth seeing.

JOHN

औरंगाबाद से दौलताबाद कितनी दूर है ?

How far is it from Aurangabad to Daulatabad?

SHIVA LAL

यही कोई चार मील के लगभग। दौलताबाद में ये जगहें देखने के बाद आप ऐलौरा जाएं।

Oh, about four miles. After visiting these places in Daulatabad, you should go to Ellora.

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

इक्यानवे	ninety-one
बानवे	ninety-two
तिरानवे	ninety-three
चौरानवे	ninety-four
पच्चानवे (paccaanawee)	} ninety-five
पंचानवे (pācaanawee)	
छानवे	ninety-six
सत्तानवे (sattaanawee, santaanawee)	ninety-seven
अट्ठानवे (aTThaanawee, aNThaanawee)	ninety-eight
निन्यानवे	ninety-nine
सौ	hundred
मन्दिर	temple

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

Masc. I

रास्ता	way, road
किला	fort
राजा	king
नमूना	example

Masc. II

बार NP	times
सहायक	helper
विश्वास	belief, faith
उचित NP	proper
वास्तव NP	reality
राजा	king
हिन्दू	Hindu
मुसलमान	Muslim
अधिकार	authority
महत्त्व NP	importance
मन्दिर	temple

Fem. I

टैक्सी	taxi
शताब्दी	century
सदी	century

Fem. II

सलाह	advice
कला	art
मस्जिद	mosque

2. New Verbs

चुकना	to finish	बनवाना	to have built
खाना	to eat	कहलाना	to be called
पीना	to drink	बदलाना	to change

3. New Adjectives in -aa

महंगा	expensive
सस्ता	cheap

4. Causative Verbs

Many verbs in Hindi will have three separate forms in a set. Each member of the set will have a complete inflection, e.g., बनना "to become," "to be made," बनाना "to make," बनवाना "to cause to make," each with a complete inflection. To have names for each member of the set, the first form will be called the Basic Form, e.g., बनना, the second will be called the First Causative, e.g., बनाना, and the third member of the set will be called the Second Causative, e.g., बनवाना.

4.1 Forms of Causatives

For most verbs, the stem of the First Causative may be formed from the stem of the Basic Form by adding -aa-, and the stem of the Second Causative can be formed from the stem of the Basic Form by adding -waa-.

बनना	bannaa	बनाना	banaanaa	बनवाना	banwaanaa
सुनना	sunnaa	सुनाना	sunanaa	सुनवाना	sunwaanaa
मिलना	milnaa	मिलाना	milaanaa	मिलवाना	milwaanaa
करना	karnaa	कराना	karaanaa	करवाना	karwaanaa
रुकना	ruknaa	रुकाना	rukaanaa	रुकवाना	rukwaanaa
लिखना	likhnaa	लिखाना	likhaanaa	लिखवाना	likhwaanaa
ठहरना	Thahrnaa	ठहराना	Thahraanaa	ठहरवाना	Thahrwaanaa
लगना	lagnaa	लगाना	lagaanaa	लगवाना	lagwaanaa
पहुंचना	pahũcnaa	पहुंचाना	pahũcaanaa	पहुंचवाना	pahũcwaanaa
पढ़ना	paRhnaa	पढ़ाना	paRhaanaa	पढ़वाना	paRhwaanaa

लौटना	lauTnaa	लौटाना	lauTaanaa	लौटवाना	lauTwaanaa
रखना	rakhnaa	रखाना	rakhaanaa	रखवाना	rakhwaanaa
चलना	calnaa	चलाना	calaanaa	चलवाना	calwaanaa
बचना	bacnaa	बचाना	bacaanaa	बचवाना	bacwaanaa
गिरना	girnaa	गिराना	giraanaa	गिरवाना	girwaanaa
बजना	bajnaa	बजाना	bajaanaa	बजवाना	bajwaanaa
जलना	jalnaa	जलाना	jalaanaa	जलवाना	jalwaanaa
जमना	jamnaa	जमाना	jamaanaa	जमवाना	jamwaanaa
भरना	bharnaa	भराना	bharaanaa	भरवाना	bharwaanaa

In a two syllable stem ending in a short vowel -a- followed by a single consonant, the vowel -a- will be lost in the spoken form of the First Causative according to the rules previously discussed in Lesson VIII:11 although the written form will not be affected.

बदलना	बदलाना	बदलवाना
badalnaa	badlaanaa	badalwaanaa
समझना	समझाना	समझवाना
samajhnaa	samjhaanaa	samajhwaanaa

For some verbs besides the addition of -aa- and -waa- to form the causatives, the stem vowel of the Basic Form is also changed as follows:

-ee-	becomes	-i-
-ii-	becomes	-i-
-oo-	becomes	-u-
-uu-	becomes	-u-
-aa-	becomes	-a-

देखना	दिखाना	दिखवाना
deekhnaa	dikhaanaa	dikhwaanaa
खेलना	खिलाना	खिलवाना
kheelnaa	khilaanaa	khilwaanaa
सीखना	सिखाना	सिखवाना
siikhnaa	sikhaanaa	sikhwaanaa
बोलना	बुलाना	बुलवाना
boolnaa	bulaanaa	bulwaanaa
मूलना	मुलाना	मुलवाना
bhuulnaa	bhulaanaa	bhulwaanaa
मानना	मानना	मानवाना
maanna	manaanaa	manwaanaa

Some verbs show an irregular form either of the stem or of the causative suffix.

पीना	पिलाना	पिलवाना
piinaa	pilaanaa	pilwaanaa
खाना	खिलाना	खिलवाना
khaanaa	khilaanaa	khilwaanaa
देना	दिलाना	दिलवाना
deena	dilaanaa	dilwaanaa
छूटना	छोड़ना	छुड़वाना
chuuTnaa	chooRnaa	chuRwaanaa
बैठना	बिठाना	बिठलाना
baiThnaa	biThaanaa	biThlaanaa
देखना	दिखाना	दिखलाना
deekhnaa	dikhaanaa	dikhlaanaa

One verb uses a suppletive form for the causatives:

पड़ना	paRnaa	डालना	Daalnaa	डलवाना	Dalwaanaa
-------	--------	-------	---------	--------	-----------

Some other verbs show only two forms:

कहना	kahnaa	कहलाना	kahlaanaa
लेना	leenaa	लिवाना	liwaanaa
लाना	laanaa	लिवाना	liwaanaa
भेजना	bheejnaa	भिजवाना	bhijwaanaa
नाचना	naacnaa	नचवाना	nacwaanaa
बीतना	biitnaa	बिताना	bitaanaa

The list of the verbs above is not complete but includes the most useful forms from the ones you have met so far.

4.2 Use of Causatives

Many of the Basic Forms above have a meaning that is either intransitive or passive or both. For these verbs the First Causative is always transitive and the Second Causative is causative in meaning. This type of verb set will be referred to as Type A.

बनना	बनाना	बनवाना
to become, to be made	to make	to cause to make
रुकना	रुकाना	रुकवाना
to stop (Intr.)	to stop (Trans.)	to cause to stop
छूटना	छोड़ना	छुड़वाना
to leave (Intr.)	to leave (Trans.)	to cause to leave, to allow to leave
ठहरना	ठहराना	ठहरवाना
to stay (Intr.) to stop "	to stop (Trans.)	to cause to stop
बचना	बचाना	बचवाना
to be saved, to be avoided	to save, to avoid	to cause to save, to cause to avoid

बैठना	बिठाना	बिठलाना
to sit	to set	to cause to set
पहुँचना	पहुँचाना	पहुँचवाना
to reach	to send	to cause to send
लौटना	लौटाना	लौटवाना
to return (Intr.)	to return (Trans.)	to cause to return
चलना	चलाना	चलवाना
to go, to move (Intr.)	to drive, to move (Trans.)	to cause to drive, to cause to move
लगना	लगाना	लगवाना
to cost, to take (time), to be applied	to spend (money), to spend (time), to apply	to cause to spend (money), to cause to spend (time), to cause to apply
गिरना	गिराना	गिरवाना
to fall	to drop	to cause to drop
बजना	बजाना	बजवाना
to be played (music)	to play (music)	to cause to play (music)
बजना	बजाना	बजवाना
to ring (Intr.)	to ring (Trans.)	to cause to ring
जलना	जलाना	जलवाना
to burn (Intr.)	to burn (Trans.)	to cause to burn
जमना	जमाना	जमवाना
to be collected, to freeze (Intr.)	to collect, to freeze (Trans.)	to cause to collect, to cause to freeze

पड़ना	डालना	डलवाना
to fall	to drop	to cause to drop, to allow to drop
बदलना	बदलाना	बदलवाना
to change (Intr.)	to change (Trans.)	to cause to change
Examples:		
यह घर पिछले साल बना था ।		This house was built last year.
उसने पिछले साल अपना घर बनाया ।		He built this house last year (i.e., he built it himself).
उसने पिछले साल अपना घर बनवाया ।		He had his house built last year (i.e., he got somebody else to do it).
मोटर ठीक नहीं चलती ।		The car doesn't run well.
वह मोटर नहीं चलाता ।		He doesn't drive a car.
वह अपने मित्र से मोटर चलवाता है ।		He gets his friend to drive the car.
गाड़ी पांच बजे स्टेशन से छूटी ।		The train left the station at five o'clock.
गाड़ी ने पांच बजे स्टेशन होड़ा ।		The train left the station at five o'clock
उसने अपनी किताबें घर में होड़ीं ।		He left his books in school.
नौकर से घोबी के यहाँ कपड़े छुड़वा दीजिए ।		Please get the servant to leave the clothes at the

dhobi's.

Many verbs have a Basic Form which, unlike those of the preceding list, is transitive in meaning. For these verbs the First Causative has a causative meaning, and the Second Causative form usually has a causative meaning too and is used as an alternative of the First Causative, but may occasionally be used in a double causative meaning. This type of verb-set will be referred to as Type B.

सुनना to hear	सुनाना to tell	सुनवाना to cause to tell
मिलना to meet	मिलाना to introduce	मिलवाना to cause to introduce
देखना to see	दिखाना to show	दिखलाना, दिखवाना to show, to cause to show
देना to give	दिलाना to cause to give	दिलवाना to cause to give
करना to make, to do	कराना to cause to make, to cause to do	करवाना to cause to make, to cause to do
लिखना to write	लिखाना to cause to write	लिखवाना to cause to write
सीखना to learn	सिखाना to teach, to train	सिखवाना to cause to teach, to cause to train
समझना to understand	समझाना to explain	समझवाना to cause to explain

पढ़ना to read, to study, to learn	पढ़ाना to teach	पढ़वाना to cause to teach
बोलना to speak	बुलाना to call, to invite	बुलवाना to cause to call, to cause to invite
रखना to put, to place	रखाना to cause to put, to cause to place	रखवाना to cause to put, to cause to place
मानना to agree to, to consider	मानाना to persuade, to celebrate	मानवाना to cause to persuade, to cause to celebrate
खेलना to play	खिलाना to cause to play, to allow to play	खिलवाना to cause to play, to allow to play
भूलना to forget	भुलाना to cause to forget	भुलवाना to cause to forget
खाना to eat	खिलाना to feed, to serve food	खिलवाना to cause to feed, to cause to serve food
पीना to drink	पिलाना to cause to drink, to water (animals)	पिलवाना to cause to cause to drink, to get somebody to serve somebody else water
भरना to fill	भराना to cause to fill	भरवाना to cause to fill

नाचना	नचाना	नचवाना
to dance	to cause to dance	to cause to dance

Examples:

मैंने वह किला देखा है ।	I have seen that fort.
मेरे मित्र ने मुझे वह किला दिखाया ।	My friend showed me that fort.
मेरे मित्र ने मुझे वह किला दिखाया ।	
मैंने उसकी बात सुनी ।	I heard what he said.
मैंने उसे अपनी यात्रा के बारे में सुनाया ।	I told him about my trip.
मैंने उसे अपने मित्र से अमरीका के बारे में सुनवाया ।	I had my friend tell him about America.
लड़के हिन्दी पढ़ते हैं ।	The students study Hindi.
मैं राम से लड़कों को हिन्दी पढ़वाता हूँ ।	I get Ram to teach the students Hindi.
वह लड़कों को हिन्दी पढ़ाता है ।	He teaches the students Hindi.

Some verbs of this type have only a Basic Form and a First Causative Form that are used with any considerable frequency.

लेना	to take	लिवाना	to cause to take
लाना	to bring	लिवाना	to cause to bring
कहना	to say, to tell	कहलाना	to cause to say, to cause to tell
भेजना	to send	भिजवाना	to cause to send
गाना	to sing	गवाना	to cause to sing

Any of the verbs of either Type A or Type B that is used in a causative sense, i.e., to get somebody to do something, will express the somebody by using either the postposition से or the postposition के द्वारा.

उसने अपने मित्र से (के द्वारा) मोटर चलावाई ।	He got his friend to drive the car.
मैंने उसे अपने मित्र से (के द्वारा) इसके बारे में सुनवाया ।	I had my friend tell him about it.
मैं राम से (के द्वारा) लड़कों को हिन्दी पढ़वाता हूँ ।	I get Ram to teach the students Hindi.

4.3 Compound Causatives

Verbs compounded with होना and करना function like the type listed above where the compound with होना acts as the basic verb, the compound with करना acts as the first causative, and the compound with करवाना or करवाना acts as the second causative.

स्कूल पांच बजे बन्द होता है ।	The school closes at five o'clock.
उसने पांच बजे स्कूल बन्द किया ।	He closed the school at five o'clock.
उसने पांच बजे स्कूल बन्द करवाया ।	He got the school closed at five o'clock.

5. चुकना

The verb चुकना may be used by itself in the meaning "to run out of."

मेरे पैसे चुक गए हैं ।	My money has run out (I
------------------------	-------------------------

have run out of money).

This verb may also be used with a dependent verb in the stem form, in which case it means "to finish doing something" or "to have already done something."

वह यह किताब पढ़ चुका है । He has finished reading this book.
वह यह किताब कब पढ़ चुकेगी ? When will she finish reading this book?
वह इस समय तक खाना खा चुका है । He finishes eating by this time.
आप कई बार ये जगहें देखने जा चुके हैं । You have already visited these places many times.

In English the verb "finish" may take a noun as direct object, "he finished the book," or be used with a dependent verb, "he finished reading the book." In Hindi **चुकना** in the meaning "finish" may be used only with a dependent verb, and **सुतम करना** may be used with a noun as a direct object.

वह किताब पढ़ चुका । }
उसने किताब सुतम की । } He finished the book.

The verb **चुकना** is not used with a **ने** construction.

6. अधिक

The word अधिक "much," "more," may be used in the same constructions in which **ज्यादा** occurs.

यहां से ऐलौरा जाने में अधिक From here it's easier to go (ज्यादा) आसानी होती है । to Ellora.

यह बहुत अधिक (ज्यादा) है । { That's too much.
That's a lot.

7. "Near" and "far"

English uses "near to" but "far from." In Hindi the postposition से is used both with दूर "far" and पास "near."

ऐलौरा औरंगाबाद से पास है । Ellora is near to Aurangabad.

ऐलौरा आगरे से दूर है । Ellora is far from Agra.

8. विश्वास

The form विश्वास "belief," "faith," is used where English uses the verb "to believe." The subject of the English verb is in the dative form in Hindi.

मुझे विश्वास है कि --- I believe that ...

This form is also the equivalent of the English "to have faith in," "to believe in." If the thing believed in is a person or a god, it will be expressed by the postposition पर or में. Otherwise, the thing believed in is expressed by a का construction.

मुझे राम पर (में) विश्वास है । { I have faith in Ram (a person).
I have faith in Ram, the god.
उसे अपनी पत्नी पर (में) विश्वास है । He has faith in his wife.

उसे इस बात का विश्वास He has faith in the fact

है कि ---

that....

उसे मेरी बात का विश्वास
था ।

He had faith in what I
said.

The forms विश्वास होना, विश्वास करना and विश्वास
कराना (करवाना) will form a set of verbs, respectively
Basic, First Causative and Second Causative.

उसने मेरी बात का विश्वास
किया ।

He believed in what I said.

9. उचित

The form उचित होना "to be better" expresses the
person involved in the dative case or by a के लिए con-
struction.

टैक्सी करना उचित होगा ।

It will be better to take
a taxi.

उसके लिए इस स्कूल में पढ़ना
उचित होगा ।

It will be better for him
to study in this school.

10. सलाह

The form सलाह may be used with होना as an equiva-
lent of the English verb "to advise." When followed
by a कि clause, the verb of the कि clause is likely
to be in optative. The person to whom the advice is
given will be in either the dative case or will be
expressed by the postposition के लिए.

(आपको) मेरी सलाह है कि
आप डाक्टर के यहाँ जाएँ ।

I advise you to go to the
doctor.

11. "To hire, to rent"

The expression किराए पर लेना may mean either "to
hire or to rent from somebody."

उसने टैक्सी किराए पर ली ।

He hired a taxi.

मैंने उनसे मकान किराए पर

I rented a house from

लिया ।

him.

The expression किराए पर देना also means "to hire
out" or "to rent to somebody else."

मैंने उनको मकान किराए पर

I rented a house to him.

दिया ।

To express "to hire a taxi, to take a taxi," it is
also possible to use टैक्सी करना .

उसने टैक्सी की ।

He took (hired) a taxi.

मैंने होटल के लिए टैक्सी की ।

I took a taxi to the
hotel.

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi
equivalent of the English given:

1. अजन्ता वहाँ से ----- है ।

very near

ninety-one miles

very far

eighty-one miles

how far

forty-one miles

one hundred miles

ninety-six miles

ninety-three miles

ninety-eight miles

ninety-nine miles

eighty-eight miles

eighty-nine miles

eighty-six miles

ninety-five miles	eighty-seven miles
fifty-five miles	ninety-seven miles
seventy-five miles	ninety miles
eighty-five miles	eighty miles
eighty-four miles	eighty-three miles
ninety-four miles	five hundred miles
ninety-two miles	one thousand miles
eighty-two miles	only seventy-nine miles

2. आप ----- भारत गए हैं ।

how many times	twice
many times	three times
once	

3. शायद वहाँ रुकने में आपको ----- हो ।

convenient	inconvenient
easy	more convenient
difficult	less difficult

4. क्या ये चीज़ें बहुत ----- नहीं हैं ?

good	new
bad	cheap
old	expensive

5. इसके बाद उस देश पर ----- का अधिकार हो गया ।

Hindus	a Hindu king
Muslims	a Muslim king
a king	my parents

6. उसने ----- विश्वास किया ।

in Ram	in what he said
--------	-----------------

in his children	in my work
in his advice	in Hindus

7. ----- राम पर विश्वास है ।

I	he
we	the King
they	the boys

8. क्या वह ----- किराए पर लेगा ?

a taxi	a room in that hotel
a house	a car
a room	an office

9. क्या इस समय ----- देखना मेरे लिए उचित होगा ?

a historical site	a mosque
a village	an old temple
a small village	a new country
a fort	an Indian fair
a temple	

10. वह ----- है ।

is driving a car
is stopping the car
is stopping his car in the road
is returning the car to him

11. उसने उससे कुछ पैसा ----- ।

caused to save	caused to take
caused to give	caused to send

12. मैं लड़कों को ----- ।

will persuade

will invite
will explain Indian dancing
will show the temple
will teach

13. क्या आप ----- ?

finished reading
finished drinking
finished eating
finished singing
finished dancing
finished playing Holi
finished celebrating the festival
finished seeing the temple
finished sending his things
finished buying some clothing
finished taking a trip

B. Transform the following sentences according to the model given, retaining the tense of the original:

लड़का पत्र लिखता है । ----- लड़का पत्र लिखाता है ।

1. उसने मेरी बात सुनी ।
2. क्या आप किला देखेंगे ?
3. मैं यात्रा का इंतज़ाम कर रहा हूँ ।
4. हम भारतीय भाषाएँ सीख रहे थे ।
5. क्या आप अंग्रेज़ी की किताबें समझ सकते हैं ?
6. वह हिन्दी पढ़ता है ।
7. लड़के ने कपड़े कहाँ रखे ?
8. लड़कियाँ स्कूल में नाचती हैं ।

9. वह ऊनी कपड़े ले रहा था ।
10. वह मुझे बीस रुपए भेज रहा है ।

C. Transform the following sentences according to the model given, retaining the tense of the original, and supplying a third person singular subject:

घर बन रहा है । ----- वह घर बना रहा है ।

1. गाड़ी सड़क पर रुकेगी ।
2. मेरी छोटा भाई मोटर में बैठ रहा है ।
3. लकड़ी कहाँ जएगी ?
4. सामान सड़क के किनारे पड़ा है ।
5. मोटर चलती है ।
6. किताब दीवाल से गिरी ।
7. क्या बज रहा है ?
8. होली में लोगों पर गुलाल लगती है ।
9. इसमें कितना पैसा लगता है ?
10. गाड़ी प्लेटफार्म पर ठहरती है ।
11. कितने रुपए बचे थे ?
12. कितना समय बीता ?

D. Transform the following sentences to sentences with चुकना constructions according to the model given:

क्या आपने पत्र लिखा ? ----- जी हाँ, मैं पत्र लिख चुका ।

1. क्या आपने त्यौहार मनाया ?
2. क्या आपने पानी पिया ?
3. क्या आपने नया मकान बनवाया ?
4. क्या आपने सूती कपड़े पहने ?
5. क्या आपने हिन्दी की किताबें जमा कीं ?
6. क्या आप मन्दिर गए ?
7. क्या आपने काश्मीर यात्रा का इंतज़ाम किया ?

8. क्या आपने हिन्दू मन्दिर देखे ?
9. क्या आपने इस काम में बहुत समय लगाया ?
10. क्या आपने होली खेली ?

E. Translate orally:

1. I'm going to Ajanta.
2. Do you want to go to Ajanta too?
3. Do you want to go to Ajanta first or to Ellora?
4. I have to go to Ajanta first.
5. I am thinking of going to Ajanta next week.
6. I have heard that he is going to Ajanta next week.
7. I have heard that maybe he will go to Ajanta.
8. He told me that it's easier to go to Ajanta first.
9. You can go to Aurangabad by train.
10. Aurangabad is near to Ajanta.

F. Translate orally:

1. There is a fort in Daulatabad.
2. The fort was built in the tenth century.
3. The fort was built by a Hindu king.
4. A Hindu king had the fort in Daulatabad built.
5. This fort is called Devagiri fort.
6. This fort used to be called Devagiri fort.
7. Devagiri is the name of a place near the fort.
8. The Muslims changed the name of this place.

G. Translate orally:

1. The car runs.

2. He drives the car.
3. The car is running.
4. He is driving the car.
5. Yesterday the car ran well.
6. Yesterday he drove the car for an hour.
7. The car stopped.
8. He stopped the car.
9. I saw the Agra fort.
10. They showed me the Agra fort.

LESSON XXIV

Conversation -- A Lecture

HARI LAL

कालेज college
क्या अभी कालेज से आ रहे Are you coming from classes
हैं ? right now?

DEVI PRASAD

क्लास class
लाइब्रेरी library
हां, क्लास तो समय से ही ख़तम Yes, the class finished on
हो गया था, पर मैं उसके बाद time, but after that I
लाइब्रेरी चला गया था। went to the library.

निकलना to be published
कुछ हाल में ही निकली किताबें I wanted to get some recent-
लाना चाहता था। ly published books.

पुस्तकालय library
आ गई होंगी must have come
सोचता था कि पुस्तकालय में I thought that they must
आ गई होंगी, पर लगता have arrived at the
है कि अभी नहीं आई। library, but it seems that
they haven't come yet.

बेकार unemployed
बेकार में in vain, uselessly
बरबाद होना to be wasted
बेकार में ही इतना वक़्त बरबाद A lot of time was wasted to
हो गया। no purpose.

जल्दी करना

to hurry

भाषण

speech, lecture

चूकना

to miss

अब मुझे जल्दी करनी होगी, Now I'll have to hurry be-
मैं आज शाम का भाषण cause I don't want to
नहीं चूकना चाहता। miss this afternoon's
lecture.

HARI LAL

कौन सा भाषण ? Which lecture?

DEVI PRASAD

प्रोफेसर professor
प्रोफेसर आप्टे का भाषण। Professor Apte's lecture.
क्या तुम्हें पता नहीं है ? Don't you know about it?
ख़्याल idea, thought
जानते होगा must know
मेरा ख़्याल था कि तुम इसके I thought that you must
बारे में जानते होगे। know about it.

HARI LAL

नहीं, प्रो० आप्टे कौन हैं ? No, who is Professor Apte?

DEVI PRASAD

बम्बई Bombay
विश्वविद्यालय university
राजनीति politics
विज्ञान science
विभाग department
अध्यक्ष head, chairman

माना हुआ
विद्वान
प्रो० आप्टे बम्बई विश्वविद्यालय
में राजनीति विज्ञान विभाग
के अध्यक्ष हैं और एक माने
हुए विद्वान हैं ।

व्याख्यान
वे पिछले वर्ष भी यहाँ व्याख्यान
देने आए थे ।
सुना होगा
तुमने उस समय उनका भाषण
तो सुना ही होगा ।

recognized
scholar
Professor Apte is the Head
of the Political Science
Department at the Univer-
sity of Bombay and is a
recognized scholar.
lecture
He came here last year to
give a lecture.
must have heard
You certainly must have
heard his lecture at that
time.

HARI LAL

नहीं, मैं उस समय बाहर गया
होऊंगा ।
उनका भाषण किस विषय
पर है ?

No, I must have been away
at that time.
What's the subject of his
lecture?

DEVI PRASAD

आम
चुनाव
राजनीतिक
दल
असर
पिछले भारतीय आम चुनाव का
राजनीतिक दलों पर असर ।

general, common
election
political
party, group
influence
The influence of the last
Indian general election

व्याख्यान अच्छा होना चाहिए ।
पुस्तक
हाल में ही उनकी एक नई पुस्तक
भी भारतीय आम चुनावों के
बारे में निकली है ।

जिक्र करना
क्लास में प्रो० शर्मा उसका जिक्र
कर रहे थे ।

on the political parties.
The lecture should be good.
book
Recently, a new book of his
about the Indian general
elections has been
published.
to mention
Professor Sharma mentioned
it in the class.

HARI LAL

क्या प्रो० आप्टे केवल इस भाषण
के लिए ही बम्बई से आने वाले
हैं ?

Is Professor Apte coming
from Bombay just for this
lecture?

DEVI PRASAD

मुझे ठीक ठीक पता नहीं है ।

I don't really know.

HARI LAL

हालांकि
तैयारी
हालांकि मुझे कल के क्लास के
लिए तैयारी करनी थी, पर
मैं भी भाषण सुनने चला
चलूंगा ।
किस समय है यह भाषण ?

although
preparation
Although I had some home
work for tomorrow's class,
nevertheless I'll go with
you to hear the lecture
too.
What time is the lecture?

DEVI PRASAD

यूनियन	Union
हाल	hall
शाम साढ़े सात बजे, यूनियन	At half past seven, in the
हाल में ।	Students' Union.
नहीं तो	otherwise
मीड़	crowd
हमें समय से कुछ पहले चलना	We will have to go a little
होगा, नहीं तो मीड़ की वजह	ahead of time, otherwise
से जगह न मिलेगी ।	we won't get a place on
	account of the crowd.
सफल	impressive, fruitful
वक्ता	speaker
वे बड़े सफल वक्ता हैं ।	He is a very impressive
	speaker.

HARI LAL

चल देना	to set out
ठीक है, तब हम लोग सात बजे	Fine, then we'll start at
चल देंगे ।	seven o'clock.
अच्छा ?	O.K.?

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

दिल्ली, देहली	Delhi	बंगाल	Bengal
मद्रास	Madras	गुजरात	Gujarat
कलकत्ता	Calcutta	महाराष्ट्र	Maharashtra
इतिहास	history	पंजाबी	Panjabi
भूगोल	geography	गुजराती	Gujarati

गणित	mathematics	बंगाली	Bengali
समाज	society	रानी	queen
साहित्य	literature	नौकरानी	female servant
अमरीकन	American	धोबिन	washerwoman
अंग्रेज़	Englishman	मज़दूरिन	female worker
पंजाब	Panjab		

GRAMMAR

1. New Nouns

	<u>Fem. I</u>	<u>Fem. II</u>	
लाइब्रेरी	library	पुस्तक	book
राजनीति	politics	मीड़	crowd
तैयारी	preparation	यूनियन	union
दिल्ली, देहली	Delhi	मज़दूरिन	female worker
रानी	queen	धोबिन	washerwoman
नौकरानी	female ser-		vant
	<u>Masc. I</u>		
वक्ता	speaker		
कलकत्ता	Calcutta		
	<u>Masc. II</u>	<u>Masc. II</u>	
कालेज	college	हाल	hall
क्लास	class	इतिहास	history
पुस्तकालय	library	भूगोल	geography
भाषण	speech, lecture	गणित	mathematics
प्रोफ़ेसर	professor	समाज	society
ख़्याल	idea, thought	साहित्य	literature

विश्वविद्यालय	university	अमरीका	American
विज्ञान	science	अंग्रेज़	Englishman
विभाग	department	बंगाल	Bengal
अध्यक्ष	head, chair- man	पंजाब	Panjab
विद्वान	scholar	गुजरात	Gujarat
व्याख्यान	lecture	महाराष्ट्र	Maharashtra
चुनाव	election	पंजाबी	Panjabi
दल	party, group	गुजराती	Gujarati
असर	influence	बंगाली	Bengali
जिक्र	mention		

2. New Verbs

	<u>1st Causative</u>	<u>2nd Causative</u>
निकलना	निकालना	निकलवाना
to be published, to come out, to go out	to publish, to let go	to cause to publish, to cause to let go
चूकना	चुकाना	
to miss	to cause to miss	

2.1 New Compound Verbs

Type I

चल देना

to set out

Type II

बरबाद होना बरबाद करना

to be wasted to waste

जल्दी होना जल्दी करना

to be in a hurry to hurry

जिक्र होना	जिक्र करना
to be mentioned	to mention
असर होना	असर करना
to influence	to influence
स्थाल होना	स्थाल करना
to think	to think

3. Future

Hindi has a Future Imperfect, Future Perfect, and Future Progressive parallel to the Present and Past Imperfect, Present and Past Perfect, and the Present and Past Progressive. This tense is formed by adding the Future of होना to the Imperfect, Perfect, and Progressive respectively.

	<u>Imperf.</u>	<u>Perf.</u>	<u>Progr.</u>
Pres.	देखता है	देखा है	देख रहा है
Past	देखता था	देखा था	देख रहा था
Future	देखता होगा	देखा होगा	देख रहा होगा

These tenses are classified as Future, since they are formed with the Future of होना. The meaning of these tenses is one of certainty rather than of futurity and is the equivalent of the use of English "must" expressing certainty rather than obligation.

Future Imperf.	देखता होगा	must see
Future Perf.	देखा होगा	must have seen
Future Progr.	देख रहा होगा	must be seeing

किताबें इस समय तक पुस्तकालय The books must have arrived

में आ गई होंगी ।

in the library by this
time.

तुम इसके बारे में जानते
होगे ।

You must know about that.

तुमने उनका भाषण सुना
होगा ।

You must have heard his
lecture.

मैं उस समय बाहर गया
होऊंगा ।

I must have been away at
that time.

अभी वह पुस्तकालय में काम
कर रहा होगा ।

He must be working in the
library right now.

Note the contrast in the following sentences:

वह पुस्तकालय में काम करता
होगा, क्योंकि मैंने उसे
वहां देखा है ।

He must work in the library
because I have seen him
there.

उसे पुस्तकालय में काम करना
पड़ता है (चाहिए, है) ।

He must (has to) work in the
library (i.e., he needs
the money).

4. Vocabulary

4.1 विश्वविद्यालय

The form विद्यालय is used by itself referring to any kind of school. When the form विश्व "all," "universal" is used with विद्यालय, it refers to a university.

4.2 आम and खास

The form आम "general," "common" contrasts in meaning with the form खास "special" and forms a similar adverb as follows:

खास तौर पर

especially

आम तौर पर

generally, usually

5. Adjective Formation

From some nouns adjectives are formed by the addition of -iiy or -ik. In the latter case there is sometimes a change in the stem as follows:

-i, -ii, -ee	changes to	-ai
-u, -uu, -oo	changes to	-au
-a	changes to	-aa

Some adjectives of these two types are the following:

भारत	India	भारतीय	Indian
गणित	mathematics	गणितीय	mathematical
देश	country	देशीय	indigenous
इतिहास	history	ऐतिहासिक	historical
भूगोल	geography	भौगोलिक	geographical
राजनीति	politics	राजनीतिक	political
समाज	society	सामाजिक	social
साहित्य	literature	साहित्यिक	literary
विज्ञान	science	वैज्ञानिक	scientific
दिन	day	दैनिक	daily
सप्ताह	week	साप्ताहिक	weekly
मास	month	मासिक	monthly
वर्ष	year	वार्षिक	yearly

6. Verbs with होना

Note the constructions used with the following verbs compounded with होना and करना:

भाषण में उसके नाम का
जिक्र हुआ ।

His name was mentioned at
the lecture.

प्रो० शर्मा ने उसका जिक्र किया ।	Professor Sharma mentioned him.
लड़कों पर भाषण का असर हुआ ।	The lecture influenced the children.
चुनाव ने राजनीतिक दलों पर असर नहीं किया ।	The election did not influence the political parties.
मेरा समय बरबाद हुआ ।	My time was wasted.
उसने मेरा समय बरबाद किया ।	He wasted my time.
मुझे जाने की जल्दी है ।	I am in a hurry to leave.
लड़के जाने की जल्दी कर रहे हैं ।	The boys are in a hurry to leave.
मेरा ख्याल कलकत्ता जाने का है ।	I am thinking of going to Calcutta.
मैं मद्रास जाने का ख्याल कर रहा हूँ ।	I am thinking of going to Madras.

The form ख्याल may replace विचार in any construction in which the latter occurs, which implies that in negative constructions, where English makes the verb "to think" negative, Hindi puts the negative in the subordinate clause.

मेरा ख्याल है कि उसने यह किताब नहीं लिखी है ।	I don't think he wrote this book.
---	-----------------------------------

7. Professional Names

Many professional names and other group names, such as प्रोफ़ेसर, डाक्टर, विद्वान, नौकर, मज़दूर, हिन्दू, मुसलमान are inflected as Masc. Type II nouns, but may refer to

either a man or a woman; in the latter case, the adjective or verb will show feminine agreement.

डाक्टर शर्मा व्याख्यान दे रही है ।	Doctor Sharma (a woman) is giving a lecture.
नौकर हमारे घर का काम करती है ।	The servant (a woman) does our housework.

This is regularly true of the names of nationalities, e.g.,

मैं बहुत से बंगालियों से मिला हूँ ।	I have met a lot of Bengalis.
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------

Some professional names have a special feminine form, e.g., रानी "queen," घोबिन "washerwoman," नौकरानी "female servant," मज़दूरिन "female worker."

8. Abbreviations

Where in English an abbreviated form is written with a period after the form (Mr., U.S.A., etc.), Hindi uses the symbol ० instead of a period.

प्रो०	professor
डॉ०	doctor

Generally speaking, Hindi forms abbreviations by one of two different systems.

1. A form may be abbreviated by writing the first syllable of the word instead of the whole word. This is comparable to one type of English abbreviation, except that the first syllable, not the first letter, is used.

प्रो०	professor
डा०	doctor
उ० ना० तिवारी	U.N. Tiwari
उदय नारायण तिवारी	
रा० कु० शर्मा	R.K. Sharma
राम कुमार शर्मा	
उ० प्र०	U.P.
उत्तर प्रदेश	
रु०	Rs.
रुपया, रुपए	rupee, rupees
पै०	pice
पैसा, पैसे	
ई०	A.D.
ईसवी	of Jesus
ई० पू०	B.C.
ईसा पूर्व	Before Jesus

2. Basically the second type of abbreviation is based on an English abbreviation which is composed of the first letter of each word. The Hindi abbreviation is then written the way the English abbreviation would be pronounced. A good example of this is the abbreviation for the State of Uttar Pradesh, which is abbreviated in English as U.P. This abbreviation would be spoken in English as "yu pi" (following our transcription) and is then written in Hindi by the symbols you would expect for this pronunciation, यू० पी०

यू० एस० ए० U.S.A.

संयुक्त राज्य अमरीका	
यू० के०	U.K.
संयुक्त राज्य	United Kingdom
यू० एन०	U.N.
संयुक्त राष्ट्रसंघ	United Nations
यू० एस० एस० बा०	U.S.S.R.
सोवियत यूनियन	
बी० ए०	B.A.
एम० ए०	M.A.
पी-एच० डी०	} Ph.D.
पी० एच० डी०	
जी० टी० रोड	G.T. Road
	Grand Trunk Road

EXERCISES

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. क्या आपने ----- के बारे में भी पढ़ा है ?

the Englishmen	the villagers
the Americans	the Indian villagers
the Indians	the ancient Hindu kings
the Bengalis	the old temples
the Gujaratis	the old Indian temples
the Panjabis	the Indian women
the Hindus	the Indian people
the Muslims	this country
the Hindu kings	America

the Muslim kings	Calcutta
the Indian kings	the Indian cities
the Hindu queens	the western countries

2. उनकी ----- जानकारी बहुत अच्छी है ।

historical	mathematical
geographical	social
literary	political
scientific	

3. लड़के इस समय ----- ।

must be studying
must be writing
must be playing
must be celebrating the festival
must be singing
must be working
must be hurrying for the lecture
must be returning from India
must be taking a trip
must be walking

4. मेरा ख्याल था कि आपने इस ----- पत्र के बारे में सुना होगा ।

daily	literary
weekly	political
yearly	social
monthly	scientific

5. इस समय वहाँ ----- ।

must be raining	must be hot
-----------------	-------------

must be snowing	must be cold
-----------------	--------------

6. आप लोगों ने इस के बारे में ----- ।

must have heard	must have known
must have read	must have told him
must have thought	must have explained to him

7. वह कल सुबह ----- ।

must have gone	must have met his son
must have come	must have been here
must have come back	must have stayed here

8. प्रोफेसर को ----- कुछ किताबें चाहिए ।

recently published	recently written
recently arrived	recently bought

9. क्या आप पर ----- का कोई असर हुआ ?

that lecture	that book
that dance	that election
that singing	that speaker

10. क्या आपने भारतीय ----- भी देखे हैं ?

schools	libraries
colleges	cities
universities	villages

11. उस कालेज में ----- काम करते हैं ।

many scholars
many well-known scholars
many literary scholars
many recognized scholars
many recognized literary scholars

many American scholars
some English scholars

12. आप वहाँ ----- पहुँच गए थे ।

a little ahead of time
an hour ahead of time
much ahead of time
how long ahead of time

13. उन्होंने कल ----- का जिक्र किया था ।

you
your book
your recently published book
your books
your trip
your Indian trip
your lecture
your film
your art
your literary books
your ideas

14. मुझे ----- की जल्दी है ।

to leave
to go to Bengal
to visit Delhi
to return to America
to listen to the lecture
to finish building the house

15. उनका भाषण ----- पर है ।

Indian political parties
American literature
American elections
Indian general elections
ancient Indian history
ancient Indian art
history of Indian art
western society
Indian languages
Indian festivals
Indian schools and colleges
Indian cities

B. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

किताबें आईं । ----- किताबें आईं होंगी ।

1. क्लास समय से ख़तम हो गया ।
2. वह मेरे भाई से मिली ।
3. वह यहाँ पिछले साल आया ।
4. मैंने उनका भाषण सुना ।
5. भारत के बारे में एक नई किताब निकली ।
6. उन्होंने कुछ रुपए बचाए ।
7. उन्होंने उनको लाल किला दिखाया ।
8. वह बम्बई में रहा ।

C. Transform the following sentences from the Present Perfect to the Future Imperfect according to the model given:

मैंने यह किताब पढ़ी है । ----- आपको यह किताब पढ़ना चाहिए ।

1. मैंने दिल्ली का लाल किला देखा है ।
2. मैंने नई हिन्दी फ़िल्म देखी है ।
3. मैंने एक नया मकान ख़रीदा है ।
4. मैंने हिन्दी बोलना सीखा है ।
5. मैं उसकी बहिन से मिला हूँ ।
6. मैंने उनका भाषण सुना है ।
7. मैंने उन्हें अजन्ता के बारे में बताया है ।
8. मैं भारत लौटा हूँ ।

D. Translate orally:

1. The Red Fort is in Delhi.
2. When you are in Delhi you should see the Red Fort.
3. Near the Red Fort is the Pearl (मोती) Mosque.
4. The Pearl Mosque is of great historical importance.
5. You should visit the Pearl mosque in Delhi too.
6. Muslims go to mosques.
7. Hindus go to temples.
8. In India there are many temples, especially in South India.

E. Translate orally:

1. You must know about it.
2. He must have known about it.
3. She must have heard the lecture.
4. He must be a recognized scholar.
5. You must have met Professor Apte.
6. They must be studying in the library.
7. We must have read his new book.

8. He must be giving a lecture right now.
9. He must have mentioned your name in the class.
10. You must have done your homework.

F. Translate orally:

1. He speaks English.
2. They were speaking Panjabi.
3. She must speak Marathi.
4. Bengalis usually speak Bengali.
5. Do you speak Gujarati too?
6. People in Maharashtra speak Marathi.
7. Indians speak many Indian languages.
8. I have learnt to speak Hindi.

G. Translate orally:

1. Professor Apte is the head of our department.
2. There are a lot of scholars in this department.
3. Professor Apte teaches Indian history.
4. He has recently published a book on Indian history.
5. The recently published book on Indian literature interests me very much.
6. Many scholars have written about Indian geography.
7. Few Americans have read about Marathi literature.
8. To understand India, you must study Indian history.

REVIEW VI

A. Substitute orally in the sentences below the Hindi equivalent of the English given:

1. इस कमरे का मासिक किराया ----- है ।

how much	hundred rupees
very much	ninety rupees
very little	twenty-five rupees
seventy rupees	fifty rupees
seventy-five rupees	fifty-five rupees
eighty-five rupees	forty-five rupees
eighty rupees	sixty rupees
ninety-five rupees	how many rupees

2. बम्बई यहां से ----- है ।

how far	seventy-nine miles
very far	sixty-nine miles
very near	eighty-seven miles
seventy-two miles	seventy-seven miles
eighty-two miles	seventy-six miles
ninety-two miles	ninety-six miles
ninety-nine miles	eighty-six miles
eighty-nine miles	eighteen miles

3. यह मोटर इस समय तक ----- चल चुकी है ।

seventy-one miles	ninety-four miles
ninety-one miles	seventy-four miles
seventy-three miles	eighty-four miles
eighty-three miles	one hundred miles
ninety-three miles	one thousand miles

eighty-one miles	seven hundred miles
eighty-eight miles	three thousand miles
seventy-eight miles	many thousand miles
ninety-eight miles	how many miles

4. क्या आप की लड़की को ----- कपड़े पसन्द हैं ?

green	black
brown	gray
red	white
yellow	purple
blue	

5. भारत के ----- बहुत से प्रसिद्ध ऐतिहासिक स्थान हैं ।

in the northern part	in the eastern part
in the western part	in the southern part

6. इस देश के ----- कई विश्वविद्यालय हैं ।

in the South	in the West
in the North	in the East

7. ----- के बारे में आपका क्या विचार है ?

Bengalis	Gujaratis
Hindus	Indians
Muslims	Americans
Panjabis	Englishmen

8. वे सारे दिन ----- खड़े रहते हैं ।

on the streets
on the roofs
on the roofs of their houses
in front of their houses

in front of their stores
outside

9. क्या आपने कालेज में ----- के बारे में पढ़ा है ?

Indian elections
Indian villages
Indian festivals
American elections
Indian political parties
ancient Indian history
American literature
Hindu kings
Muslim festivals
the historical sites of India
Indian temples
Muslim mosques
Indian seasons
Indian scholars

10. वे वहाँ जाएंगे ही नहीं ----- ।

but will also study there
but will also give a lecture there
but will also live there for a year
but will also see the historical sites
but will also talk with the professors
but will also visit his old friends
but will also spend all his vacation there
but will also teach American history there
but will also work in the university library
there

but will also celebrate Holi there
but will also play with the children there

11. क्या यह मकान ----- है ?

good expensive
bad private
old governmental
new cheap

12. ----- वह अपने माता-पिता से मिलने गया । (use a past
participle form)

having eaten
having drunk water
having hired a taxi
having put on his best clothes
having returned from the North
having celebrated Holi
having called on the telephone
having seen a movie
having enrolled his son in the school
having closed his store
having walked in the park
having told me about it

13. घोड़ी के यहाँ से कपड़े ----- ।

are brought are being brought
were brought were being brought
have been brought should be brought
had been brought can be brought
will be brought could be brought

14. क्या आप ----- भूल गए ?

how to write Hindi

to stop at Aurangabad

to hire a taxi

to see the temple on your way

to go to hear the lecture

what he said

the time of his lecture

the way to the Union Hall

15. अगर मैं आगरे में रहना चाहूँ, ----- ।

then it will be better to rent a house

then it will be better to stay in a hotel

then it will be better to learn Hindi

then it will be better to study in Agra

then it will be better to work there

then it will be better to take the car with me

16. वे मन्दिर ----- हैं ।

very well-known

worth seeing

from the eighth century

good examples of Hindu art

of historical importance

ancient

17. लड़कों ने स्कूल में ----- ।

must have learnt Hindi

must have talked in Hindi

must have spoken in Hindi

must have written Hindi

must have studied Hindi

must have heard Hindi

must have heard his lecture

must have seen movies

18. लड़के इस समय ----- ।

must be celebrating the festival

must be throwing colored water

must be eating

must be collecting old books

must be making arrangements to go to Bombay

must be studying Indian art

must be hearing a political lecture

must be going to the fair

must be working in the library

must be waiting for the train

B. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

अमरीका में कौन सी भाषा ----- अमरीका में अंग्रेज़ी बोली
बोली जाती है ? जाती है ।

1. भारत में कौन सी भाषाएं बोली जाती हैं ?

2. बंगाल में कौन सी भाषा बोली जाती है ?

3. पंजाब में कौन सी भाषा बोली जाती है ?

4. गुजरात में कौन सी भाषा बोली जाती है ?

5. महाराष्ट्र में कौन सी भाषा बोली जाती है ?

6. बम्बई में कौन सी भाषाएं बोली जाती हैं ?

7. यू० पी० में कौन सी भाषा बोली जाती है ?
8. कलकत्ता में कौन सी भाषा बोली जाती है ?
9. नई दिल्ली में कौन सी भाषाएं बोली जाती हैं ?
10. उत्तरी भारत में कौन सी भाषाएं बोली जाती हैं ?

C. Transform the following sentences from active to passive according to the model given:

लोग यहां बंगाली बोलते हैं । ----- यहां बंगाली बोली जाती है ।

1. वे विश्वविद्यालय में राजनीति पढ़ते थे ।
2. उन्होंने मेरी यात्रा का इंतज़ाम किया ।
3. सरकार ने पिछले साल आम चुनाव कराए ।
4. वे गणित के बारे में बात कर रहे थे ।
5. वे भारतीय त्योहारों के बारे में भाषाण देंगे ।
6. प्रोफ़ेसर ने क्लास में गुजरात का ज़िक्र किया ।
7. हमें होली मनानी चाहिए ।
8. हिन्दुओं ने पांचवीं शताब्दी में बहुत से मन्दिर बनाए ।

D. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

कपड़ा, जो उसने खरीदा, मुझे ----- उसका खरीदा कपड़ा मुझे पसन्द है । पसन्द है ।

1. भाषण, जो उन्होंने कल दिया था, भारतीय राजनीति पर था ।
2. किताब, जो उसने मुझे दी थी, मैंने पढ़ ली है ।
3. पुस्तकें, जो हाल में ही निकली हैं, बहुत सस्ती हैं ।
4. किला, जो आठवीं सदी में बनाया गया था, दिल्ली के पास है ।
5. फल, जो उसने खार, मीठे न थे ।
6. मकान, जो उसने किराए पर लिया, सफ़ेद रंग का है ।

7. नगर, जो मैंने भारत में देखा, बहुत बड़े हैं ।
8. किताबें, जो राम ने लिखी हैं, बहुत मुश्किल हैं ।

E. Transform the following sentences according to the model given, retaining the tense of the original:

वह कल पांच बजे खाना खाएगा ----- वह कल पांच बजे खाना खा चुकेगा ।

1. वह कल एक हिन्दू मन्दिर देखेगी ।
2. उसने पिछले साल हिन्दी में एक किताब लिखी थी ।
3. वह आम तौर पर सात बजे खाना खाता है ।
4. वह दो बजे अपना व्याख्यान खतम करता था ।
5. प्रोफ़ेसर ने भूगोल पर किताब लिखी है ।
6. आप ने इस समय तक अपना काम किया होगा ।
7. वह अपनी यात्रा के बारे में जल्दी बताएगा ।
8. उसने घर खरीदने के लिए पैसे बचाए ।

F. Transform the following sentences according to the model given:

उसने लाल किला देखा है । ----- उसने लाल किला देखा होगा ।

1. उसने होली का त्योहार मनाया है ।
2. आपने भारतीय चुनावों के बारे में पढ़ा है ।
3. प्रोफ़ेसर हिन्दी साहित्य के बारे में बता रहे हैं ।
4. वे लोग बंगाली बोल रहे हैं ।
5. उसने अजन्ता जाने के लिए टैक्सी किराए पर की है ।
6. उनके व्याख्यान ने लड़कों पर बड़ा असर किया है ।
7. लड़के वहां अपना समय बरबाद कर रहे हैं ।
8. वह पिछले हफ़्ते बम्बई गया था ।

G. Translate orally:

1. I went to the library.

2. After that I went to the library.
3. I went to the library before class.
4. I went to the library to get a book.
5. I went to the library to read a book.
6. I went to the library to do some homework for class.
7. I went to the library to do some homework for Monday's class.
8. I should go to the library to read some books.

H. Translate orally:

1. He came here last year to give a lecture.
2. He comes here every year to give a lecture.
3. He will come here to give the annual lecture.
4. He will come tomorrow to give the weekly lecture.
5. Have you heard his lecture?
6. You must hear his lecture tomorrow evening.
7. You must have heard his lecture last month.
8. I have heard that his lecture is good.

I. Translate orally:

1. Will the lecture be on time?
2. He came on time.
3. They came a little ahead of time.
4. They will have to go a little ahead of time.
5. They will have to go a little ahead of time, otherwise they will not get a seat.
6. They will have to go a little ahead of time, otherwise they will miss their train.
7. I will have to go a little ahead of time, otherwise the train may leave.

8. She will have to go much ahead of time in order to get a seat.

J. Conversation:

1. A wants to visit the Red Fort in Delhi. His friend B takes him around and tells him various important details about the Fort, viz., when it was built, by whom, etc. A thanks B for showing him around.
2. A has just returned from a trip to Ajanta and Ellora. His elder brother B has never been to either one of these places and asks him about how he travelled, where he stayed, what places he went to, and what he saw. A gives his brother a short account of his trip and tells him all the historical facts he knows about the places he visited.
3. A and B are students in an Indian university and are classmates. On their way back home from the school, they discuss their classes, fields of study, professors, and other things of mutual interest.
4. A is in a book store and sees a recent publication about Indian elections. He asks B, who is with him, if he knows anything about the book or its author. B tells A that the book was mentioned in his class and that he has read other books by the same author and that it should be good. A decides to buy the book.
5. A goes to India and visits his old classmate B in Delhi. B tells his friend A about the various languages, nationalities and states in India, differences of climate in the various parts of the country, and other things of general interest about the people.
6. A has recently come back from a trip to some big Indian cities like Calcutta, Bombay, Madras, Kanpur, and Delhi, etc., and tells his wife about the trip, the things and places he liked and he didn't like.
7. A wants to find out about a lecture to be held that evening. He asks his roommate B if he knows about the lecture. B has all the information and tells A about the place, time and topic of the lecture, and also what he knows about the speaker.

2. After that I went to the library.
3. I went to the library before class.
4. I went to the library to get a book.
5. I went to the library to read a book.
6. I went to the library to do some homework for class.
7. I went to the library to do some homework for Monday's class.
8. I should go to the library to read some books.

H. Translate orally:

1. He came here last year to give a lecture.
2. He comes here every year to give a lecture.
3. He will come here to give the annual lecture.
4. He will come tomorrow to give the weekly lecture.
5. Have you heard his lecture?
6. You must hear his lecture tomorrow evening.
7. You must have heard his lecture last month.
8. I have heard that his lecture is good.

I. Translate orally:

1. Will the lecture be on time?
2. He came on time.
3. They came a little ahead of time.
4. They will have to go a little ahead of time.
5. They will have to go a little ahead of time, otherwise they will not get a seat.
6. They will have to go a little ahead of time, otherwise they will miss their train.
7. I will have to go a little ahead of time, otherwise the train may leave.

8. She will have to go much ahead of time in order to get a seat.

J. Conversation:

1. A wants to visit the Red Fort in Delhi. His friend B takes him around and tells him various important details about the Fort, viz., when it was built, by whom, etc. A thanks B for showing him around.
2. A has just returned from a trip to Ajanta and Ellora. His elder brother B has never been to either one of these places and asks him about how he travelled, where he stayed, what places he went to, and what he saw. A gives his brother a short account of his trip and tells him all the historical facts he knows about the places he visited.
3. A and B are students in an Indian university and are classmates. On their way back home from the school, they discuss their classes, fields of study, professors, and other things of mutual interest.
4. A is in a book store and sees a recent publication about Indian elections. He asks B, who is with him, if he knows anything about the book or its author. B tells A that the book was mentioned in his class and that he has read other books by the same author and that it should be good. A decides to buy the book.
5. A goes to India and visits his old classmate B in Delhi. B tells his friend A about the various languages, nationalities and states in India, differences of climate in the various parts of the country, and other things of general interest about the people.
6. A has recently come back from a trip to some big Indian cities like Calcutta, Bombay, Madras, Kanpur, and Delhi, etc., and tells his wife about the trip, the things and places he liked and he didn't like.
7. A wants to find out about a lecture to be held that evening. He asks his roommate B if he knows about the lecture. B has all the information and tells A about the place, time and topic of the lecture, and also what he knows about the speaker.

8. A, an American, is a student at an Indian university. Before the Holi vacation, he asks his Indian friend B about the Holi festival. B gives a full account of how Holi is celebrated by Hindus in North India.
9. A, an American, goes to see B, a professor in an Indian university, and tells him that he has been sent to him by his teacher in the United States. B asks A about when he came to India, what he has studied in the United States, what he is interested in studying while in India, and where he is staying. B also asks A, if he can do anything for him. A thanks B and leaves.
10. A goes to a book store in Delhi and asks for some books on Indian literature and history. The clerk at the store shows him some books he thinks are good and some books which have recently been published. A looks them over and buys some of them. A pays for the books, tells his address to the clerk, and asks him to send them to his house.

APPENDIX

1. Nouns

Nouns may be subdivided into two classes, masculine and feminine, on the basis of adjective and verb agreement with the nouns. Nouns are inflected for two cases and two numbers, nominative singular, oblique singular, nominative plural and oblique plural.

Masculine nouns are subdivided into two classes on the basis of their inflection as follows:

<u>Masc. Type I</u>	<u>Masc. Type II</u>
Nom. Sg. लड़का	घर
Obl. Sg. लड़के	घर
Nom. Pl. लड़के	घर
Obl. Pl. लड़कों	घरों

All Masculine Type I nouns end in -aa, but not all nouns that end in -aa belong to this class, although the majority do.

Feminine nouns may likewise be subdivided into two classes by inflection as follows:

<u>Fem. Type I</u>	<u>Fem. Type II</u>
Nom. Sg. लड़की	चीज़
Obl. Sg. लड़की	चीज़
Nom. Pl. लड़कियां	चीज़ें
Obl. Pl. लड़कियों	चीज़ों

All Feminine Type I nouns end in -ii or in -i, although the latter are few in number, and most nouns that end in -ii or -i are Fem. Type I. In Fem. Type I nouns, an -ii is always replaced by -iy before the endings -āā and -ōō. In Fem. Type II a -uu is always replaced by -uv before the endings -ēē and -ōō.

All Hindi nouns belong to one of the four inflectional types listed above, and there are no irregular forms from the point of view of the written form. There are a few irregularities from the point of view of the spoken form. Thus the oblique plural form

गांवों is normally pronounced the same way as the nominative singular form गांव although it may be distinguished from the nominative form in very careful speech as gāāvōō.

2. Adjectives

Adjectives may be subdivided into two groups, those that end in -aa or -āā and all others. Those that do not end in -aa or -āā are not inflected at all. Those that end in -aa or -āā are inflected for case, number and gender as follows:

	<u>Masc.</u>	<u>Fem.</u>
Nom. Sg.	बड़ा	बड़ी
Obl. Sg.	बड़े	बड़ी
Nom. Pl.	बड़े	बड़ी
Obl. Pl.	बड़े	बड़ी

Adjectives may be used as nouns. When so used, adjectives in -aa or -āā have the inflection of Masc. Type I nouns when referring to masculine things, and the inflection of Fem. Type I nouns when referring to feminine things, thus अच्छे "the good (men)" and अच्छियाँ "the good (women)." In this use adjectives that do not end in -aa or -āā have the inflection of Masc. Type II nouns and Fem. Type II nouns respectively.

3. Pronouns

For the most part, pronouns have a fuller inflection than nouns, since some have four oblique forms, and some have three oblique forms as well as a nominative form. One oblique form is used with the postposition nee and is called here the nee-form. A second is used where a noun would be used with the postposition koo and is called the dative or the koo-form. A third is used where a noun would be used with the postposition

kaa and is called the kaa-form. The fourth is used with any other postposition and is called the see-form.

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are the pronouns having five forms as follows:

	<u>1st Per.Sg.</u>	<u>1st Per.Pl.</u>	<u>2nd Per.Pl.</u>
Nom.	मैं	हम	तुम
<u>nee</u> -form	मैंने	हमने	तुमने
<u>koo</u> -form	मुझे, मुझको	हमें, हमको	तुम्हें, तुमको
<u>see</u> -form	मुझसे	हमसे	तुमसे
<u>kaa</u> -form	मेरा	हमारा	तुम्हारा

The pronouns that have four forms do not distinguish the see-form and the kaa-form, i.e., the same form is used with any following postposition except nee or koo. The following pronouns, given with a following postposition, belong to this group:

	<u>3rd Per.Sg. proximate</u>	<u>3rd Per.Pl. proximate</u>
Nom.	यह	ये
<u>nee</u> -form	इसने	इन्होंने
<u>koo</u> -form	इसे, इसको	इन्हें, इनको
<u>see</u> -form	इससे	इनसे
	<u>3rd Per.Sg. distant</u>	<u>3rd Per. Pl. distant</u>
Nom.	वह	वे
<u>nee</u> -form	उसने	उन्होंने
<u>koo</u> -form	उसे, उसको	उन्हें, उनको
<u>see</u> -form	उससे	उनसे
	<u>relative pron. Sg.</u>	<u>relative pron. Pl.</u>
Nom.	जो	जो
<u>nee</u> -form	जिसने	जिन्होंने
<u>koo</u> -form	जिसे, जिसको	जिन्हें, जिनको

<u>see</u> -form	जिससे	जिनसे
	<u>interrog. pron. Sg.</u>	<u>interrog. pron. Pl.</u>
Nom.	कौन	कौन
<u>nee</u> -form	किसने	किन्होंने
<u>koo</u> -form	किससे, किसको	किन्हें, किनको
<u>see</u> -form	किससे	किनसे

The pronouns in this group यह, वह, जो and कौन may be used as adjectives, in which case they have only two forms, a nominative and an oblique. The nominative of the adjective is always the same as the nominative of the pronoun, and the oblique of the adjective is always the same as the see-form of the pronoun, as follows:

Nom.	यह	ये	वह	वे	जो	जो	कौन	कौन
Obl.	इस	इन	उस	उन	जिस	जिन	किस	किन

The pronouns क्या "what," and कोई "someone" have only two forms, nominative and oblique:

Nom.	क्या	कोई
Obl.	किस	किसी

The oblique forms are used with all postpositions although since क्या is inanimate in reference, it is not ever used with को.

The pronouns आप "you (polite)" and कुछ "some" have only a single form used as nominative and also used with any following postposition.

4. Verbs

The verb होना is the only verb in Hindi that has a simple present form and a simple past form. Their inflection is as follows:

	<u>Simple Present</u>	<u>Simple Past</u>
1st Per Sg.	हूँ	Masc. Sg. था
3rd Per. Sg.	है	Masc. Pl. थे
1st,3rd Per.Pl.	हैं	Fem. Sg. थी
2nd Per. Pl.	हो	Fem. Pl. थीं

As examples of verb inflection two verbs are given, होना because it has a number of irregular forms, and देखना because it is completely regular. In the following table the forms of these verbs are cited in the 3rd Per. Sg. Masc. form to illustrate the system of tense forms.

Infin.	होना	देखना
Stem	हो	देख
Imper. (familiar)	हो	देखो
Imper. (polite)	होइए	देखिए
Past Participle	हो कर	देख कर
Perfect Participle	हुआ	देखा हुआ
Optative	हो	देखे
Future	होगा	देखेगा
Imperfect	होता	देखता
Pres. Imperf.	होता है	देखता है
Past Imperf.	होता था	देखता था
Future Imperf.	होता होगा	देखता होगा

Perfect	हुआ	देखा
Pres. Perfect	हुआ है	देखा है
Past Perfect	हुआ था	देखा था
Future Perfect	हुआ होगा	देखा होगा
Pres. Progressive	हो रहा है	देख रहा है
Past Progressive	हो रहा था	देख रहा था
Future Progressive	हो रहा होगा	देख रहा होगा

The imperative forms हो and होइए exist but are replaced by the imperative forms of रहना, रहो and रहिए .

4.1 Inflection

The infinitive, the imperfect and the perfect forms show the following adjective type of inflection:

Infinitive	Masc. Sg. Nom.	होना	देखना
	Masc. Sg. Obl.	होने	देखने
	Masc. Pl.	होने	देखने
	Fem. Sg.	होनी	देखनी
	Fem. Pl.	होनीं	देखनीं
	Imperfect	Masc. Sg.	होता
Masc. Pl.		होते	देखते
Fem. Sg.		होती	देखती
Fem. Pl.		होतीं	देखतीं
Perfect	Masc. Sg.	हुआ	देखा
	Masc. Pl.	हुए	देखे
	Fem. Sg.	हुई	देखी
	Fem. Pl.	हुईं	देखीं

The Fem. Pl. form is always replaced by the Fem. Sg. form if some other part of the verb phrase indicates plurality. The result of this restriction is that the Imperfect and Perfect, when used with the Present, Past and Future auxiliaries, will never be used in the Fem. Pl. form. The particle गी shows the same adjectives inflection but, since it never occurs alone, never shows a Fem. Pl. form.

Masc. Sg.	गा
Masc. Pl.	गे
Fem. Sg.	गी

The optative shows the following inflection:

1st Per. Sg.	होऊं, हूँ	देखूँ
3rd Per. Sg.	हो	देखे
1st, 3rd Per. Pl.	हों, होएं	देखें
2nd Per. Pl.	हो	देखो

All other tense forms are combinations of the forms whose inflection is given above. It may be noted that all the perfect tense forms of those transitive verbs that take a subject expressed by ने will occur only in the third person.

4.2 Irregularities

Relatively few verbs in Hindi have irregular forms. Apart from the verb होना, the forms of which are given above, most irregularities are restricted to the verbs देना, लेना, जाना and करना .

The following irregularities occur:

	<u>Infin.</u>	<u>Imper. (polite)</u>	
Imperative (polite)	देना	दीजिये or दीजिए	
	लेना	लीजिये or लीजिए	
	करना	कीजिये or कीजिए	
	पीना	पीजिये or पीजिए	

	<u>Infin.</u>	<u>Optative</u>	
Optative	देना	दूं दे दैं दो	
	लेना	लूं ले लैं लो	

	<u>Infin.</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	
Perfect	देना	दिया दिये, दिए दी दीं	
	लेना	लिया लिये, लिए ली लीं	
	जाना	गया गये, गए गयी, गई गयीं, गईं	
	करना	किया किये, किए की कीं	
	पीना	पिया पिये, पिए पी पीं	

The last verb illustrates two consistent irregularities:

1. All verbs with a stem ending in -ii will not add an extra -ii to form the feminine of the perfect, and the stem will end in -i in the Masc. Sg. and Masc. Pl.
2. All verbs with a stem ending in -a, -aa, or -ii will add -y before an ending -aa; thus गया, गयी and पिया . Those with a stem ending in -a or -aa will have alternative spellings for the Masc. Pl., Fem. Sg., and Fem. Pl. of the Perfect, and those with a stem ending in -ii will have alternative spellings for the Masc. Pl. of the Perfect.

4.3 Passive

Hindi has a complete passive inflection using the verb जाना as an auxiliary with the perfect form of the verb that is passive. The passive forms of the

verb देkhना in the 3rd Per. Sg. Masc. are as follows:

Infinitive	देखा जाना
Stem	देखा जा
Optative	देखा जाए
Future	देखा जाएगा
Imperfect	देखा जाता
Pres. Imperf.	देखा जाता है
Past Imperf.	देखा जाता था
Future Imperf.	देखा जाता होगा
Perfect	देखा गया
Pres. Perfect	देखा गया है
Past Perfect	देखा गया था
Future Perfect	देखा गया होगा
Pres. Progressive	देखा जा रहा है
Past Progressive	देखा जा रहा था
Future Progr.	देखा जा रहा होगा

The imperative and participle forms have been omitted from the list because they would only very rarely occur. Their form is, however, regular.

4.4 Continuative

Hindi has a complete continuative inflection using the verb रहना as an auxiliary and the Imperfect of the verb being inflected. Without giving the complete system, a couple of forms will illustrate the system.

Infinitive	देखते रहना	to keep on seeing
Pres. Imperf.	देखता रहता है	(he) keeps on seeing
Pres. Perf.	देखता रहा है	(he) has kept on "

Note that when the Imperfect is followed by the Infinitive of रहना, it is invariably in the oblique form देखते, but otherwise it is regularly inflected.

VOCABULARY

In the vocabulary the gender of nouns is indicated. The inflection of nouns and the conjugation of verbs can be more readily found in the appendix and therefore are omitted from the vocabulary.

The Hindi-English section of the vocabulary is alphabetized according to the standard Hindi order. This should cause no difficulty to the student, except for the following three cases:

1. A long nasalized vowel.

A long nasalized vowel is alphabetized immediately after the equivalent long vowel when this vowel is not followed by anything, but before the long vowel when it is followed by any other vowel or consonant. Thus मा will occur before मां- but मां- will occur before माह- or माक-.

2. A short vowel followed by a nasal consonant plus consonant.

As mentioned in the text, all such words may be written either with an anusvāra (ँ) or with a nasal consonant joined to the following consonant. In the vocabulary, for the sake of consistency all such forms will be written with anusvāra. For these forms the

principle of alphabetization is the same as for the long nasalized vowels, i.e., म will occur before मन्द-, but मन्द- will occur before मह- or मक-.

3. Consonant clusters that are written in देवनागरी with separate consonant symbols but excluding those that are written with a हलन्त under the first consonant and also excluding those written with a vowel symbol joined to the consonant. These combinations are alphabetized as if the first consonant were followed by the vowel a even though there is no a vowel in the pronunciation. Thus बनना will occur before बनाना.

HINDI-ENGLISH

अ	अजंता Ajanta
अंग्रेज Englishman	अजमेरी of Ajmer
अंग्रेजी f., English	अट्ठाइस twenty-eight
अंतर m., difference	अठ्ठानवे ninety-eight
अंतर्देशीय inland	अठ्ठावन fifty-eight
अंतर्देशीय पत्र inland letter	अठ्ठासी eighty-eight
अंदर in, inside	अठारह eighteen
अंधेरा m., darkness	अठहत्तर seventy-eight
अकेला alone	अड़तालीस forty-eight
अक्टूबर October	अड़तीस thirty-eight
अक्सर often, usually	अड़सठ sixty-eight
अगर if	अधिक more, much
अगला next	अधिकार m., authority
अगस्त August	अध्यक्ष m., head, chairman
अच्छा good; O.K., alright	अपना one's

कपड़े clothes	कारण m., reason
कब when	कार्ड m., card, postcard
कभी sometimes	काला black
कभी नहीं never	कालेज m., college
कम little, less	काश्मीर Kashmir
कम से कम at least	कि that
कमरा m., room	कितना how, how much
कमीज़ f., shirt	किताब f., book
करना to do, make	किधर where
करवाना to cause to make	किनारा m., edge, bank
कराना to get done, made	किराया m., rent; fare
कल yesterday, tomorrow	किला m., fort
कलकत्ता Calcutta	कुछ some
कला f., art	कुमारी Miss
कष्ट m., trouble,	कुल in all
inconvenience	कृपया kindly
कहना to say, tell	कृपा f., kindness
कह देना to tell	के अलावा besides
कहलाना to be called	के द्वारा by
कहाँ where	के पहले before
कहीं somewhere	के पास at, which
कहीं नहीं nowhere	के बाद after
का of	के बारे में about, concerning
कानपुर Kanpur	के बाहर outside of
काफ़ी enough, quite	के लिए for
काम m., work	केवल only
काम करना to work	के साथ with

के सामने in front of	खिलवाना to cause to feed;
कैसा what kind; how	to cause, allow to play
को to	खिलाना to feed, serve food;
कोई any, some	to cause, allow to play
कोठी f., house	खुद self
कोशिश f., attempt	खुला open
कोशिश करना to try	खुला रहना to be open,
कोहरा m., fog	remain open
कौन who, what, which	खुशी f., pleasure, happiness
कौन सा what kind of	खेलना to play
क्या what, interrogative	ख्याल m., idea, thought
particle	ग
क्यों why	गणित m., mathematics
क्लास m., class	गणितीय mathematical
ख	गर्मी f., heat, hot season
खड़ा standing	गला m., neck
ख़तम end	गले मिलना to embrace
ख़तम करना to finish	गवाना to cause to sing
ख़तम होना to be finished	गांव m., village
ख़बर f., news, information	गाड़ी f., train
ख़राब bad	गाना m., song, singing
ख़रीदना to buy	गाना to sing
खाना to eat	गारा m., mortar
ख़ाली empty	गिरना to fall
ख़ास special, important	बरफ़ गिरना to snow
ख़ास तौर पर specially	गिरवाना to cause to drop
खिड़की f., window	गिराना to drop

कपड़े clothes	कारण m., reason
कब when	कार्ड m., card, postcard
कभी sometimes	काला black
कभी नहीं never	कालेज m., college
कम little, less	काश्मीर Kashmir
कम से कम at least	कि that
कमरा m., room	कितना how, how much
कमीज़ f., shirt	किताब f., book
करना to do, make	किधर where
करवाना to cause to make	किनारा m., edge, bank
कराना to get done, made	किराया m., rent; fare
कल yesterday, tomorrow	किला m., fort
कलकत्ता Calcutta	कुछ some
कला f., art	कुमारी Miss
कष्ट m., trouble,	कुल in all
inconvenience	कृपया kindly
कहना to say, tell	कृपा f., kindness
कह देना to tell	के अलावा besides
कहलाना to be called	के द्वारा by
कहाँ where	के पहले before
कहीं somewhere	के पास at, which
कहीं नहीं nowhere	के बाद after
का of	के बारे में about, concerning
कानपुर Kanpur	के बाहर outside of
काफ़ी enough, quite	के लिए for
काम m., work	केवल only
काम करना to work	के साथ with

के सामने in front of	खिलवाना to cause to feed;
कैसा what kind; how	to cause, allow to play
को to	खिलाना to feed, serve food;
कोई any, some	to cause, allow to play
कोठी f., house	खुद self
कोशिश f., attempt	खुला open
कोशिश करना to try	खुला रहना to be open,
कोहरा m., fog	remain open
कौन who, what, which	खुशी f., pleasure, happiness
कौन सा what kind of	खेलना to play
क्या what, interrogative	ख्याल m., idea, thought
particle	ग
क्यों why	गणित m., mathematics
क्लास m., class	गणितीय mathematical
स	गर्मी f., heat, hot season
सड़ा standing	गला m., neck
सूतम end	गले मिलना to embrace
सूतम करना to finish	गवाना to cause to sing
सूतम होना to be finished	गांव m., village
सूबर f., news, information	गाड़ी f., train
सूराब bad	गाना m., song, singing
सूरीदना to buy	गाना to sing
साना to eat	गारा m., mortar
ख़ाली empty	गिरना to fall
ख़ास special, important	बरफ़ गिरना to snow
ख़ास तौर पर specially	गिरवाना to cause to drop
खिड़की f., window	गिराना to drop

गुजरात Gujarat
गुजराती Gujarati
गुरुवार Thursday
गुलाल m., pink powder
ग्यारह eleven
घ
घंटा m., hour
घर m., house
घूमना to walk
च
चउवन fifty-four
चतुर skillful
चलना to go
चल देना to start off
चलवाना to cause to drive
चलाना to drive
चले जाना to go away
चवालीस forty-four
चार four
चालीस forty
चाहना to want
चाहिए should
चीज़ f., thing
चुकना to finish
चुकाना to cause to miss
चुनाव m., election
चूकना to miss

चूना m., lime
चोट f., injury
चौतीस thirty-four
चौंसठ sixty-four
चौथा fourth
चौदह fourteen
चौबीस twenty-four
चौरानवे ninety-four
चौरासी eighty-four
चौवन fifty-four
चौहत्तर seventy-four
छ
छत f., roof
छत्तीस thirty-six
छप्पन fifty-six
छब्बीस twenty-six
छयालीस forty-six
छह six
छानवे ninety-six
छाया gathered
छियासी eighty-six
छिहत्तर seventy-six
छुट्टी f., vacation
छुड़वाना to cause to leave
छूटना to leave (intr.)
छोटा little, younger
छोड़ना to leave (trans.)

छ्यासठ sixty-six
ज
जगह f., place
जनवरी January
जब when
जमना to be collected
जमवाना to cause to collect
जमाना to pile up, collect
जमा रहना to be piled up
जरा a little
जरूर certainly
जरूरत f., need, necessity
जरूरी important
जलना to burn (intr.)
जलवाना to cause to burn
जलाना to bury (trans.),
set fire to
जल्दी soon
जल्दी करना to be in a hurry
जल्दी होना to be in a hurry
जाड़ा m., cold season
जानकारी f., knowledge
information
जानना to know
जाना to go
आ जाना to come
चले जाना to go away
ले जाना to take
जिक्र करना to mention
जिक्र होना to be mentioned
जितना as
जी particle of respect
जी नहीं no
जी हाँ yes
जुकाम m., cold
जुलाई July
जून June
जैसा as
जो which
जोड़े pair
ज्यादा much, more
ट
टकराना to run into
टकरा जाना to run into
टिकट m., stamp; ticket
टेलीफोन m., telephone
टेलीफोन करना to call on
the telephone
टैक्सी f., taxi
ठ
ठंड f., cold season
ठंडक f., cold season
ठहरना to wait, stay;
to stop (intr.)

ठहरवाना to cause to stop	तिहत्तर seventy-three
ठहराना to stop (trans.)	तीन three
ठीक right	तीस thirty
ड	तीसरा third
डबल double	तीसरा पहर late afternoon
डलवाना to let throw	तुम्हारा your (familiar)
डाक्टर m., doctor	तुम्हीं you (emphatic)
डालना to throw	तूफानी stormy
डिक्शनरी f., dictionary	तेइस twenty-three
डेढ़ one and a half	तेज strong, sharp, fast
ढ	तेजी f., speed
ढाई two and a half	तेजी से fast
ढ	तेरह thirteen
तक to, as far as; until	तेँतीस thirty-three
तथा and	तेयार ready
तब then	तेयारी f., preparation
तब तो then	त्योहार m., festival
तबादला m., transfer	थ
तबियत f., condition, health	थोड़ा little
तभी just then	द
तरफ f., side, direction	दक्षिण south
तरह f., kind, sort	दक्षिणी southern
तितालीस forty-three	दफतर m., office
तिरपन fifty-three	दर्जन m., dozen
तिरसठ sixty-three	दर्जा m., class, grade
तिरानवे ninety-three	दर्शनीय worth seeing
तिरासी eighty-three	दल m., party, group

दवा f., medicine	देश m., country
दवाखाना m., doctor's office	देशीय indigenous
दस ten	देहली Delhi
दाई right (direction)	दैनिक daily
दाम m., price	दो two
दावत f., dinner	दोपहर f., noon
दिललाना to show	दौरा m., tour
दिलवाना to show	दौलताबाद Daulatabad
दिलाना to show	घ
दिन m., day	घन्यवाद thanks, thank you
दिलचस्पी f., interest	घूप f., sunshine
दिलवाना to cause to give	घोबिन f., washerwoman
दिलाना to cause to give	घोबी m., washerman
दिल्ली Delhi	न
दिसम्बर December	नंबर m., number
दीवाल f., wall	न not; isn't it
दुकान f., shop, store	नगर m., town, city
दुर्घटना f., accident	नचवाना to cause to dance
दुश्मनी f., enmity	नचाना to cause to dance
दूर far	नब्बे ninety
दूसरा second	नमस्ते hello! Hindu greeting
देखना to see, look at	नमूना m., example
देख लेना to take a look	नया new
देना to give	नरसों two days before yesterday, two days after tomorrow
दे देना to give	नवम्बर November
देर f., delay, duration	नवासी eighty-nine
देवगिरि Devagiri	

नहीं not	पंद्रह fifteen
नहीं तो otherwise	पचपन fifty-five
नागपुर Nagpur	पचहत्तर seventy-five
नागपुरी from Nagpur	पचास fifty
नाच m., dance	पचासी eighty-five
नाचना to dance	पचानवे, पच्चानवे ninety-five
नाम m., name	पच्चीस twenty-five
नाम लिखाना to enroll	पड़ना to fall; to have to,
निकलना to be published	must; to be, remain
निकलवाना to cause to	पड़ जाना to get involved in
publish	
निकालना to publish; to	पड़ोस m., neighborhood
let go	पढ़ना to read, study
निजी private	पढ़वाना to cause to teach
निन्यानवे ninety-nine	पढ़ाई f., study, instruction
निश्चय m., certainty	पढ़ाना to teach
नींव f., foundation	पता m., address
नीला blue	पता m., knowledge, aware-
ने subject marker with	ness
perfect forms of	पता होना to know, be
transitive verbs	aware
नौ nine	पति m., husband
नौकर m., servant	पत्नी f., wife
नौकरानी f., female servant	पत्र m., letter
प	अंतर्देशीय पत्र inland letter
पंजाब Panjab	हवाई पत्र air letter
पंजाबी Panjabi	पर on, at; but

परसों the day before	के पास at, with; near
yesterday, the day	पास m., pass
after tomorrow	पास करना to pass
परिवार m., family	पिछकारी f., syringe
पश्चिम m., west	पिछला last, previous
पश्चिमी western	पिता m., father
पसंद pleasing	पिलवाना to cause to drink
पसंद करना to like	पिलाना to cause to drink
पसंद होना to like	पीना to drink
पहचानना to recognize	पीला yellow, orange
पहनना to put on	पुराना old, ancient
पहर m., part of day	पुस्तक f., book
पहला first	पुस्तकालय m., library
पहले early, earlier	पूना Poona
के पहले before	पूरा full, complete
से पहले before	पूरा करना to complete
पहुंचना to reach, arrive	पूरा होना to be completed
पहुंच जाना to reach,	पूर्व, पूरब m., east
arrive	पूर्वी eastern
पहुंचवाना to cause to send	पैंट trousers
पहुंचाना to send	पैंतालीस forty-five
पांच fine	पैंतीस thirty-five
पाना to find; to get to	पैंसठ sixty-five
पानी m., water	पैदल on foot
पार्क m., park	पैसा m., pice; money
पार्टी f., party	पोस्टकार्ड m., postcard
पास near	पौन three quarters

पौने less one quarter	बचवाना to cause to save
प्रतीक्षा f., waiting	बचाना to save
प्रतीक्षा करना to wait for	बच्चा m., child
प्रतीक्षा होना to wait for	बजा m., o'clock
प्रदेश m., state, province	बजना to be played; to ring (intr.)
प्रसन्न pleased	बजवाना to cause to play, cause to ring
प्रसिद्ध famous	बजाना to play (an instru- ment); to ring (trans.)
प्रार्थना f., request	बड़ा big; older
प्रेम m., love, affection	बताना to tell
प्रोफ़ेसर m., professor	बता देना to tell
प्लेटफ़ार्म m., platform	बत्तीस thirty-two
फ	बदलना to change (intr.)
फ़रवरी February	बदलवाना to cause to change
फल pl., fruit	बदलाना to change (trans.)
फिर then; again	बनना to be made, done; to become
फिर भी however	बनवाना to get made
फ़िल्म f., film	बनाना to make, build
ब	बनियान f., undershirt
बंगाल Bengal	बयालीस forty-two
बंगाली Bengali	बयासी eighty-two
बंद करना to close	बर्बाद करना to waste
बंद होना to be closed	बर्बाद होना to be wasted
बंबई Bombay	बरसना to rain
बचना to be saved	
बच जाना to be saved	
बचना to be left	
बच रहना to be left	

बरसात f., rainy season	बीमार sick, ill
बराबर continuously	बीस twenty
बर्फ़, बरफ़ f., snow, ice	बुखार m., fever
बल्कि but	बुधवार Wednesday
बस f., bus	बुरा bad
बस-स्टॉप m., bus stop	बुरा मानना to take offense
बहत्तर seventy-two	बुराई f. grievance
बहिन f., sister	बुलवाना to cause to call
बहुत very	बुलाना to call
बाइस twenty-two	बृहस्पतिवार Thursday
बाई left (direction)	बेकार unemployed
बाज़ार m., bazaar	बेकार में in vain, uselessly
बात f., thing, affair	बेंगनी purple
बाद after	बैठना to sit down
बादल m., cloud	बोलना to speak
बानवे ninety-two	ब्राउन brown
बाप m., father	ब्रेक m., brake
बार m., times	भ
बारह twelve	भरना to fill
बावन fifty-two	भरपूर filled
बासठ sixty-two	भरवाना to cause to fill
बाहर out, outside	भराना to cause to fill
बिठलाना to cause to set	भर्ती f., admission
बिठाना to set	भर्ती कराना to get admitted
बीतना to pass, be spent	भाई m., brother
बीत जाना to pass, be spent	भाग m., part
	भारत m., India

भारतीय Indian	celebrate
भाषण m., speech, lecture	मनीआर्डर m., money order
भाषा f., language	मराठी f., Marathi
भिजवाना to cause to send	मशहूर famous
भी too, also	महंगा expensive
भीड़ f., crowd	महत्त्व m., importance
भूगोल m., geography	महाराष्ट्र Maharashtra
भूरा gray	महीना m., month
भूलना to forget	मां f., mother
भूल जाना to forget	माता f., mother
भूलवाना to cause to forget	मातृभाषा f., mother tongue
भूलाना to cause to forget	मानना to think, consider
भेजना to send	मार्ग m., road, street
भेज देना to send	मार्च March
भौगोलिक geographical	मालूम m., awareness,
म	knowledge
मंगलवार Tuesday	मालूम होना to know
मई May	मास m., month
मकान m., house	मासिक monthly
मजदूर m., worker, laborer	मित्र m., friend
मजदूरिन f., female worker	मिनट f., minute
मजदूरी f., wages	मिलना to be available,
मतलब m., meaning	get; meet
मद्रास Madras	मिलवाना to cause to intro-
मनवाना to cause to	duce
celebrate	मिलाना to introduce
मनाना to observe,	मीठा sweet

मील m., mile	ये these
मुसलमान m., Muslim	योग्य competent
मुश्किल difficult	र
मुसीबत f., trouble	रंग m., color
मुहल्ला m., locality	रंग खेला to throw colored
मुहूर्त f., moment	water
में in	रंग डालना to throw colored
मेरा my	water
मेला m., fair,	रखना to put
gathering of people	रखवाना to cause to put
मेहरबानी f., kindness;	रखाना to cause to put
thank you	रहना to stay, live; to be;
में I	to keep on
मोज़ा m., sock	रहा here is
मोटर f., car	राजनीति f., politics,
मोटरवाला m., driver	political science
मौसम m., weather, season	राजनीतिक political
य	राजा m., king
यदि if	रात f., night
यह this	रानी f., queen
यही this (emphatic)	रास्ता m., way, road
यही कोई about	रुकना to stop (intr.);
यहां here	to stay, wait
यहीं here (emphatic)	रुकवाना to cause to stop
या or	रुकाना to stop (trans.)
यात्रा f., trip	रुपया m., rupee
यूनियन f., union	रुमाल m., handkerchief

रेलगाड़ी f., train	लोग m., people
रेशमी silk	लोहा m., iron, steel
रोज़ m., day	लौटना to return (intr.)
ल	लौटवाना to cause to return
लंबा long	लौटाना to return (trans.)
लकड़ी f., wood	व
लगना to cost; to seem	वक्त m., time
लगभग about, approximately	वक्त से (पर) on time
लगवाना to cause to spend	वक्ता m., speaker
लगाना to rub; to spend	वजह f., reason, cause
लड़का m., boy, son	की वजह से on account of
लड़की f., girl, daughter	वरन but
लाइब्रेरी f., library	वर्ष m., year
लाना to bring	वर्षगांठ f., birthday
लाल red	वह he, she, it, that
लिखना to write	वही that (emphatic)
लिख लेना to write down	वहां there
लिखवाना to cause to write	वहीं there (emphatic)
लिखाना to cause to write	वापस back
लिफाफ़ा m., envelope	वापस आना to come back
लिवाना to cause to take,	वार्षिक yearly
bring	वाला of, connected with
लू f., hot wind	वास्तव m., reality
लेकिन but	विचार m., thought, idea
लेना to take; buy	विचार करना to think of
ले लेना to take	विचार होना to think of
ले जाना to take	विज्ञान m., science

विद्यालय m., school	श्री Mr.
विद्वान m., scholar	श्रीमती Mrs.
विभाग m., department	श्रीमान् Mr.
विशेष especially	स
विश्व all, universal	संतरा m., orange
विश्वविद्यालय m., university	सकना to be able
विश्वास m., belief, faith	सच true
विषय m., subject	सचमुच really
वैज्ञानिक scientific	सड़क f., street, road
वैसा as	सड़सठ sixty-seven
व्याख्यान m., lecture	सतहतर seventy-seven
व्यापार m., business	सतर seventy
श	सत्ताइस twenty-seven
शताब्दी f., century	सत्तानवे ninety-seven
शनीचर Saturday	सत्तावन fifty-seven
शनिवार Saturday	सत्तासी eighty-seven
शब्द m., word	सत्रह seventeen
शब्दकोष m., dictionary	सदी f., century
शर्मा Sharma	सप्ताह m., week
शहर m., city	सफल impressive; fruitful
शाम f., evening	सफ़ेद white
शायद perhaps	सब all
शुक्रवार Friday	सभी all
शुभ auspicious	समझना to understand
शुरू beginning	समझवाना to cause to
शुरू करना to begin	explain
शुरू होना to begin	समझाना to explain

समय m., time	साहित्य m., literature
समय से (पर) on time	साहित्यिक literary
समाचार m., news	सिंगिल single
समाचार पत्र m., newspaper	सिखवाना to cause to teach
समाज m., society	सिखाना to teach
सरकारी governmental	सितम्बर September
सरल easy, simple	सिनेमा m., movie
सर्टिफिकेट m., certificate	सीखना to learn
सलाह f., advice	सीधे straight ahead
सवा plus one quarter	सीमेंट f., cement
सस्ता cheap	सुनना to hear, listen
सहायक m., helper, helpful	सुनवाना to cause to tell
साठ sixty	सुनाना to tell
साढ़े plus one half	सुबह f., morning
सात seven	सुविधा f., convenience
सातवां seventh	सूती cotton
साथ along	से from, with; than
साथ देना to accompany	से पहले before
साप्ताहिक weekly	सेल्स मैनेजर m., sales manager
सामने in front	सैंतालीस forty-seven
सामने से from in front	सैंतीस thirty-seven
सामाजिक social	सोचना to think
सामान m., materials	सोमवार Monday
सारा whole	सोलह sixteen
साल m., year	सौ hundred
सावधानी f., caution	स्कूल m., school
साहब m., sir, gentleman	स्टेशन m., station

स्थान m., place	हाल m., recent time;
स्वयम्, स्वयं self	situation
ह	हाल में recently
हज़ार m., thousand	हाल m., hall
हफ़ता m., week	हालचाल m., welfare
हमारा our	हालांकि although
हमेशा always	हिंदी f., Hindi
हर every	हिंदू m., Hindu
हर एक each	ही (emphatic particle)
हरा green	होटल m., hotel
हवा f., wind, air	होना to be, become
हवाई air	होली f., Holi, a Hindu
हवाई पत्र air letter	festival

ENGLISH - HINDI

A	affair, f. बात
(be) able सकना	affection, m. प्रेम
about के आसपास, के बारे में,	after बाद, के बाद
यही कोई, लगभग	afternoon, m. तीसरा पहर
accident, f. दुर्घटना	again फिर
accompany साथ देना	Agra, m. आगरा
(on) account of की वजह से	air हवाई
address, m. पता	air letter हवाई पत्र
admission, f. भर्ती	Ajanta अजंता
(get) admitted भर्ती कराना	alone अकेला
advance, m. एडवांस	all सब, सभी, विश्व
advice, f. सलाह	in all कुल

along साथ	awareness, m. पता, मालूम
alright अच्छा	B
also भी	back वापस
although हालांकि	come back वापस आना
always हमेशा	bad बुरा, ख़राब
America, m. अमरीका	bank, m. किनारा
American अमरीकन	bazaar, m. बाज़ार
ancient पुराना	be होना, रहना
and और, तथा	become होना, बनना
any कोई	before के पहले, से पहले
approximately के आसपास,	begin शुरू करना, शुरू होना
लगभग	beginning शुरू
April अप्रैल	belief, m. विश्वास
arrange इंतज़ाम करना	Bengal बंगाल
be arranged इंतज़ाम होना	Bengali बंगाली
arrangement, m. इंतज़ाम	besides के अलावा
arrive पहुंचना, पहुंच जाना	big बड़ा
art, f. कला	birthday, f. वर्षगांठ
as वैसा, जैसा, उतना, जितना	black काला
at पर, के पास, में	blue नीला
attempt, f. कोशिश	Bombay बंबई
August अगस्त	book, f. किताब, पुस्तक
Aurangabad औरंगाबाद	boy, m. लड़का
auspicious शुभ	brake, m. ब्रेक
authority, m. अधिकार	brick, f. ईंट
(be) available मिलना	bring लाना
(be) aware पता होना	cause to bring लिवाना

brother, m. भाई	certainty, m. निश्चय
brown ब्राउन	certificate, m. सर्टिफ़िकेट
build बनाना	chairman, m. अध्यक्ष
burn (intr.) जलना	change (intr.) बदलना
(trans.) जलाना	(trans.) बदलाना
cause to burn जलवाना	cause to change बदलवाना
bus, f. बस	cheap सस्ता
bus stop, m. बस स्टॉप	child, m. बच्चा
business, m. व्यापार	city, m. नगर, शहर
but लेकिन, बल्कि, वरन, पर	class, m. दर्जा, क्लास
buy ख़रीदना, लेना	close बंद करना
by के द्वारा	be closed बंद होना
C	cloth, m. कपड़ा
Calcutta कलकत्ता	clothes कपड़े
call बुलाना	cloud, m. बादल
be called कहलाना	cold, m. जुकाम
cause to call बुलवाना	cold season, m. जाड़ा,
car, f. मोटर	f. ठंड, ठंडक
card, m. कार्ड	collect जमाना
cause, f. वजह	be collected जमना
caution, f. सावधानी	cause to collect जमवाना
celebrate मनाना	college, m. कालेज
cause to celebrate	color, m. रंग
मनवाना	come आना, आ जाना
cement, f. सीमेंट	come back वापस आना
century, f. शताब्दी, सदी	common आम
certainly अवश्य, ज़रूर	company, f. कंपनी

competent योग्य
 complete पूरा करना
 be completed पूरा होना
 complete पूरा
 concerning के बारे में
 condition, f. तबियत
 connected with वाला
 consider मानना
 continuously बराबर
 convenience, f. सुविधा
 cost लगना
 cotton सूती
 country, m. देश
 crowd, f. भीड़
 D
 daily दैनिक
 dance, m. नाच
 dance नाचना
 cause to dance नचाना,
 नचवाना
 darkness, m. अंधेरा
 daughter, f. लड़की
 Daulatabad दौलताबाद
 day, m. दिन, रोज़
 December दिसंबर
 delay, f. देर
 Delhi दिल्ली, देहली

department, m. विभाग
 desire, f. इच्छा
 Devagiri देवगिरि
 dictionary, m. शब्दकोश,
 डिक्शनरी
 difference, m. अंतर
 difficult मुश्किल, कठिन
 difficulty, f. कठिनाई
 dinner, f. दावत
 direction, f. तरफ़, ओर
 do करना
 cause to do करवाना
 get done कराना
 doctor, m. डाक्टर
 doctor's office, m. दवाखाना
 double डबल
 dozen, m. दर्जन
 drink पीना
 cause to drink पिलाना,
 पिलवाना
 drive चलाना
 cause to drive चलवाना
 driver, m. मोटरवाला
 drop गिराना
 cause to drop गिरवाना
 duration, f. देर

E
 each हर एक
 early पहले
 ease, f. आसानी
 east, m. पूरब, पूर्व
 eastern पूर्वी
 easy सरल
 eat खाना
 edge, m. किनारा
 eight आठ
 eighteen अठारह
 eighth आठवाँ
 eighty अस्सी
 81 इक्यासी
 82 बयासी
 83 तिरासी
 84 चौरासी
 85 पचासी
 86 क्रियासी
 87 सत्तासी
 88 अट्ठासी
 89 नवासी
 election, m. चुनाव
 eleven ग्यारह
 Ellora ऐलोरा
 else और
 embrace गले मिलना

empty ख़ाली
 end, m. आखिर, ख़तम
 English अंग्रेज़ी
 Englishman अंग्रेज़
 enjoy आनंद आना, आनंद मिलना
 enmity, f. दुश्मनी
 enough काफ़ी
 enroll नाम लिखना
 envelope, m. लिफ़ाफ़ा
 especially विशेष
 et cetera आदि
 evening, f. शाम
 every हर
 example, m. नमूना
 expensive महंगा
 explain समझाना
 cause to explain
 समझवाना
 F
 fair, m. मेला
 faith, m. विश्वास
 fall पड़ना, गिरना
 family, m. परिवार
 famous प्रसिद्ध, मशहूर
 far दूर
 as far as तक
 fare, m. किराया

fast तेज़ी से	five पांच
father, m. पिता, बाप	fog, m. कोहरा
February फ़रवरी	(on) foot पैदल
feed खिलाना	for के लिए, को
cause to feed खिलवाना	forget भूलना
festival, m. त्योहार	cause to forget भुलवाना,
fever, m. बुखार	भुलाना
fifteen पंद्रह	fort, m. किला
fifty पचास	forty चालीस
51 इक्यावन	41 इकतालीस
52 बावन	42 बयालीस
53 तिरपन	43 तितालीस
54 चौवन, चउवन	44 चवालीस
55 पचपन	45 पैतालीस
56 छप्पन	46 छयालीस
57 सत्तान	47 सैंतालीस
58 अट्ठावन	48 अड़तालीस
59 उनसठ	49 उनचास
fill भरना	foundation, f. नींव
cause to fill भरवाना	four चार
भराना	fourteen चौदह
filled भरपूर	fourth चौथा
film, f. फ़िल्म	Friday शुक्रवार
find पाना	friend, m. मित्र
finish ख़तम करना, चुकना	from से
be finished ख़तम होना	(in) front सामने
first पहला	from in front सामने से

fruit, pl. फल	H
fruitful सफल	(plus one) half साढ़े
full पूरा	hall, m. हॉल
G	handkerchief, m. रुमाल
gathered इकट्ठा, क़ायम	happiness, f. खुशी
general आम	have to पड़ना, होना
generally आम तौर पर	he वह
gentleman, m. साहब	health, f. तबियत
geographical भौगोलिक	hear सुनना
geography, m. भूगोल	heat, f. गर्मी
get मिलना	hello! नमस्ते
girl, f. लड़की	helper, m. सहायक
give देना, दे देना	helpful सहायक
cause to give दिलाना,	here यहाँ, यहीं, इधर
दिलवाना	here is रहा
go जाना	Hindi हिन्दी
go away चले जाना	Hindu, m. हिन्दू
good अच्छा	historical ऐतिहासिक
governmental सरकारी	history, m. इतिहास
grade, m. दर्जा	Holi, (a Hindu festival)
gray भूरा	f. होली
green हरा	hope, f. आशा
grievance, f. बुराई	hospital, m. अस्पताल
group, m. दल	hot गरम
Gujarat गुजरात	hot season, f. गर्मी
Gujarati गुजराती	hotel, m. होटल
	hour, m. घंटा

house, m. घर, मकान,
f. कोठी
how कितना, कैसा
how much कितना
however फिर भी
hundred सौ
hurry जल्दी करना, जल्दी
होना
husband, m. पति
I
I में
ice, f. बरफ़, बर्फ़
idea, m. ख्याल, विचार
if यदि, अगर
ill बीमार
importance, m. महत्व
important खास, ज़रूरी
impressive सफल
in में, अंदर
inconvenience, m. कष्ट
f. असुविधा
India, m. भारत
Indian भारतीय
indigenous देशीय
influence, m. असर
influence असर करना,
असर होना

information, m. ख़बर
f. जानकारी
injury, f. चोट
inland अंतर्देशीय
inland letter अंतर्देशीय पत्र
inside अंदर
instruction, f. पढ़ाई
intend इरादा करना, इरादा
होना
intention, m. इरादा
interest, f. दिलचस्पी
introduce मिलाना
cause to introduce
मिलवाना
(get) involved पड़ जाना
iron, m. लोहा
J
January जनवरी
joy, m. आनंद
July जुलाई
June जून
K
Kanpur कानपुर
Kashmir काश्मीर
keep on रहना
kind, f. तरह
kindly कृपया

kindness, f. मेहरबानी,
कृपा
king, m. राजा
know जानना, पता होना,
मालूम होना
knowledge, f. जानकारी
m. पता, मालूम
L
laborer, m. मज़दूर
language, f. भाषा
last पिछला
learn सीखना
leave (intr.) छूटना
(trans.) छोड़ना
cause to leave छोड़वाना
lecture, m. भाषण, व्याख्यान
left (direction) बाईं
to be left बच रहना,
बचना
less कम
letter, m. पत्र
air letter हवाई पत्र
inland letter अंतर्देशीय
पत्र
library, m. पुस्तकालय
f. लाइब्रेरी
like पसंद करना, पसंद होना
lime, m. चूना
listen सुनना
literary साहित्यिक
literature, m. साहित्य
little कम, थोड़ा, छोटा
a little ज़रा
live रहना
locality, m. मुहल्ला
long लंबा
look at देखना
take a look देख लेना
love, m. प्रेम
M
Madras मद्रास
Maharashtra महाराष्ट्र
make करना, बनाना
cause to make करवाना
get made कराना, बनवाना
be made बनना
man, m. आदमी
many कई
Marathi, f. मराठी
March मार्च
materials, m. सामान
mathematical गणितीय
mathematics, m. गणित
May मई

meaning, m. मतलब
 medicine, f. दवा
 meet मिलना
 mention जिक्र करना
 to be mentioned जिक्र
 होना
 mile, m. मील
 minute, f. मिनट
 Miss कुमारी
 miss चुकना
 cause to miss चुकाना
 moment, f. मुहूर्त
 Monday सोमवार
 money पैसे, रुपए
 money order, m. मनीआर्डर
 month, m. महीना, मास
 monthly मासिक
 more ज्यादा, अधिक
 morning, f. सुबह
 mortar, m., गारा
 mother, f. माता, मां
 mother tongue, f. मातृभाषा
 movie, m. सिनेमा
 Mr. श्री, श्रीमान्
 Mrs. श्रीमती
 much ज्यादा, अधिक
 Muslim, m. मुसलमान

must पड़ना
 my मेरा
 N
 Nagpur नागपुर
 from Nagpur नागपुरी
 name, m. नाम
 near पास, के पास
 necessary आवश्यक, ज़रूरी
 necessity, f. आवश्यकता,
 ज़रूरत
 neck, m. गला
 need, f. आवश्यकता, ज़रूरत
 neighborhood, m. पड़ोस
 never कभी नहीं
 new नया
 news, f. ख़बर m. समाचार
 newspaper, m. समाचार पत्र
 next अगला
 night, f. रात
 nine नौ
 nineteen उन्नीस
 ninety नब्बे
 91 इक्यानवे
 92 बानवे
 93 तिरानवे
 94 चौरानवे
 95 पचवानवे, पंचानवे

96 हानवे
 97 सत्तानवे
 98 अट्ठानवे
 99 निन्यानवे
 noon, f. दोपहर
 north, m. उत्तर
 northern उत्तरी
 not न, नहीं
 November नवम्बर
 now अब, अभी
 nowadays आजकल
 nowhere कहीं नहीं
 number, m. नंबर
 O
 observe मनाना
 o'clock, m. बजा
 October अक्टूबर
 of का
 (take) offense बुरा मानना
 office, m. दफ़्तर
 often अक्सर
 oh! अरे
 old पुराना
 older बड़ा
 on पर
 one एक
 one's अपना

only केवल
 open खुला
 be open खुला रहना
 or या
 orange, m. संतरा
 orange (color) पीला
 otherwise नहीं तो
 our हमारा
 out बाहर
 outside बाहर
 P
 pair जोड़े
 Panjab पंजाब
 Panjabi पंजाबी
 park, m. पार्क
 part, m. भाग
 party, f. पार्टी m. दल
 pass, m. पास
 pass पास करना
 pass (time) बीतना, बीत जाना
 people, m. लोग
 perhaps शायद
 permission, f. आज्ञा
 pice, m. पैसा
 pink powder, m. गुलाल
 place, f. जगह m. स्थान
 platform, m. प्लेटफ़ार्म

play खेलना
 cause to play खिलाना
 खिलवाना
 play (instrument) बजाना
 be played बजना
 cause to play बजवाना
 pleased प्रसन्न
 pleasing पसंद
 pleasure, m. आनंद
 f. खुशी
 political राजनीतिक
 political science
 f. राजनीति
 politics, f. राजनीति
 Poona पूना
 postcard, m. पोस्टकार्ड,
 कार्ड
 preparation, f. तैयारी
 previous पिछला
 price, m. दाम
 private निजी
 professor, m. प्रोफेसर
 proper उचित
 province, m. प्रदेश
 publish निकालना
 be published निकलना
 cause to publish
 निकलवाना

purple बैंगनी
 put रखना
 cause to put रखाना, रखवाना
 put on पहनना
 २
 (three) quarters पौन
 less one quarter पौने
 plus one quarter सवा
 queen, f. रानी
 quite काफ़ी
 R
 rain बरसना
 rainy season, f. बरसात
 reach पहुंचना, पहुंच जाना
 read पढ़ना, पढ़ लेना
 ready तैयार
 reality, m. वास्तव
 really सचमुच
 reason, f. वजह m. कारण
 recently हाल में
 recent time, m. हाल
 recognize पहचानना
 red लाल
 red powder, m. अबीर
 rent, m. किराया
 request, f. प्रार्थना
 return (intr.) लौटाना

(trans.) लौटाना
 cause to return लौटवाना
 right ठीक, (direction) दाईं
 ring (intr.) बजना
 (trans.) बजाना
 cause to ring बजवाना
 road, m. रास्ता, मार्ग
 f. सड़क
 roof, f. छत
 room, m. कमरा
 rub लगाना
 run into टकराना, टकरा
 जाना
 rupee, m. रुपया
 S
 sales manager, m. सेल्स मैनेजर
 same एक ही
 Saturday शनीचर, शनिवार
 save बचाना
 be saved बचना, बच जाना
 cause to save बचवाना
 say कहना
 scholar, m. विद्वान
 school, m. स्कूल, विद्यालय
 science, m. विज्ञान
 scientific वैज्ञानिक
 season, m. मौसम f. ऋतु

second दूसरा
 see देखना
 seem लगना
 self खुद, स्वयम्, स्वयं
 send भेजना, भेज देना, पहुंचाना
 cause to send भिजवाना,
 पहुंचवाना
 September सितम्बर
 servant, m. नौकर
 female servant, f. नौकरानी
 set बिठाना
 cause to set बिठलाना
 seven सात
 seventeen सत्रह
 seventh सातवां
 seventy सत्तर
 71 एकहत्तर
 72 बहत्तर
 73 तिहत्तर
 74 चौहत्तर
 75 पचहत्तर
 76 छिहत्तर
 77 सतहत्तर
 78 अठहत्तर
 79 उन्यासी
 Sharma शर्मा
 she वह

shirt, f. कमीज़
shop, f. दुकान
should चाहिए
show दिखाना, दिखलाना,
दिखवाना
sick बीमार
side, f. तरफ़
silk रेशमी
simple सरल
sing गाना
cause to sing गवाना
single सिंगिल
sir, m. साहब
sister, f. बहिन
sit down बैठना
situation, m. हाल
six छह
sixteen सोलह
sixty साठ
61 इकसठ
62 बासठ
63 तिरसठ
64 चौंसठ
65 पैंसठ
66 छ्यासठ
67 सड़सठ
68 अड़सठ

69 उनहत्तर
skillful चतुर
sky, m. आसमान
snow, f. बर्फ़, बरफ़
snow बरफ़ गिरना
so ऐसा
social सामाजिक
society, m. समाज
sock, m. मोज़ा
some कुछ, कोई
something else और कुछ
sometimes कभी
somewhere कहीं
son, m. लड़का
song, m. गाना
soon जल्दी
sorrow, m. अफ़सोस
sort, f. तरह
south, m. दक्षिण
southern दक्षिणी
speak बोलना
speaker, m. वक्ता
special खास
specially खास तौर पर
speech, m. भाषण
speed, f. तेज़ी
spend लगाना

be spent (time) बीतना,
बीत जाना
cause to spend लगवाना
stamp, m. टिकट
standing खड़ा
start off चल देना
state, m. प्रदेश
station, m. स्टेशन
stay ठहरना, रहना, रुकना
steel, m. लोहा
stop (intr.) ठहरना, रुकना
(trans.) ठहराना, रुकाना
cause to stop ठहरवाना,
रुकवाना
store, f. दुकान
stormy तूफ़ानी
straight ahead सीधे
street, m. मार्ग f. सड़क
strong तेज़
study पढ़ना
study, f. पढ़ाई
subject, m. विषय
such ऐसा
Sunday इतवार
sunshine, f. धूप
sweet मीठा
syringe, f. पिछकारी

T
take लेना, ले लेना, लेजाना
cause to take लिवाना
taxi, f. टैक्सी
teach पढ़ाना, सिखाना
cause to teach पढ़वाना,
सिखवाना
telephone, m. टेलीफ़ोन
call on the telephone
टेलीफ़ोन करना
tell कहना, कह देना, बताना,
बता देना, सुनाना
cause to tell सुनवाना
ten दस
than से
thank you! मेहरबानी, धन्यवाद
that वह, कि
then तब, तब तो, फिर
just then तभी
there वहाँ, वहीं
therefore इसलिए
thing, f. चीज़, बात
think सोचना, मानना
think of विचार करना,
विचार होना
third तीसरा
thirteen तेरह

thirty तीस	too भी
31 इक्कीस	tour, m. दौरा
32 बत्तीस	town, m. नगर
33 तैंतीस	train, f. गाड़ी, रेलगाड़ी
34 चौंतीस	transfer, m. तबादला
35 पैंतीस	trip, f. यात्रा
36 छत्तीस	trouble, f. मुसीबत
37 सैंतीस	m. कष्ट
38 अड़तीस	trousers, m. पैंट
39 उनतालीस	true सच
this यह, यही	try कोशिश करना
thought, m. ख्याल, विचार	Tuesday मंगलवार
thousand, m. हजार	twelve बारह
three तीन	twenty बीस
throw डालना	21 इक्कीस
allow to throw डलवाना	22 बाइस
throw colored water	23 तेइस
रंग खेलना, रंग डालना	24 चौबीस
Thursday गुरुवार, बृहस्पतिवार	25 पच्चीस
ticket, m. टिकट	26 छब्बीस
time, m. समय, वक्त	27 सत्ताइस
on time समय से (पर),	28 अट्ठाइस
वक्त से (पर)	29 उनतीस
times, m. बार	two दो
to तक, को	two and a half टाई
today आज	U
tomorrow कल	undershirt, f. बनियाइन

understand समझना	washerwoman, f. धोबिन
unemployed बेकार	waste बरबाद करना
union, f. यूनियन	be wasted बरबाद होना
universal विश्व	water, m. पानी
university, m. विश्वविद्यालय	way, m. रास्ता
until तक	weather, m. मौसम
uselessly बेकार में	Wednesday बुधवार
usually आम तौर पर,	week, m. सप्ताह, हफ्ता
अक्सर	weekly साप्ताहिक
V	welfare, m. हालचाल
vacation, f. छुट्टी	west, m. पश्चिम
(in) vain बेकार में	western पश्चिमी
very बहुत	what क्या, कौन
vicinity, m. आसपास	what kind of कौन सा,
village, m. गांव	कैसा
W	when कब, जब
wages, f. मजदूरी	where कहां, किधर
wait इंतज़ार करना, इंतज़ार	which कौन, जो
होना, प्रतीक्षा करना, प्रतीक्षा	white सफ़ेद
होना, रुकना	who कौन, जो
waiting, f. प्रतीक्षा	whole सारा
m. इंतज़ार	why क्यों
walk घूमना	wife, f. पत्नी
wall, f. दीवाल	wind, f. हवा
want इच्छा करना, इच्छा	hot wind, f. लू
होना, चाहना	window, f. सिड़की
washerman, m. धोबी	with के साथ, के पास, से

woman, f. औरत

wood, f. लकड़ी

woolen ऊनी

word, m. शब्द

work, m. काम

work काम करना

worker, m. मजदूर

female worker, f.

मजदूरिन

worth seeing दर्शनीय

write लिखना

write down लिख लेना

cause to write लिखाना,

लिखवाना

Y

year, m. साल, वर्ष

yearly वार्षिक

yellow पीला

yes हां, जी हां

yesterday कल

you तुम, आप

younger छोटा

your तुम्हारा, आपका